The Twentieth Century Latin-Book

SENFTNER

Class PA2087
Book .S476
Copyright No. 1903

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

THE

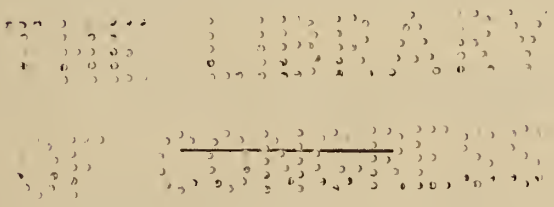
TWENTIETH CENTURY LATIN-BOOK

FOR

REGENTS' SCHOOLS, HIGH SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES

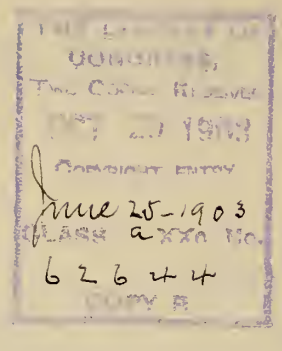
BY

ALEXIS E. SENFTNER, A.M., B.D.
ROBERT E. C. SENFTNER, PH.B.
HERMAN F. SENFTNER, A.B., M.D.



CLINTON HALL, 13 ASTOR PLACE
NEW YORK, N. Y.

PA2087
.S476
1903



39
1041

Copyright, 1903,

BY

ALEXIS E. SENFTNER, ROBERT E. C. SENFTNER

AND

HERMAN F. SENFTNER.

All Rights Reserved.

PREFACE.

In submitting The Twentieth Century Latin-Book to the attention of the public, the aim of the authors has been to edit a work of practical utility, representative of the latest and most approved methods of teaching the first year of Latin.

This text book is the outcome of fifteen years of practical experience in teaching Latin. During these fifteen years the authors have prepared nearly three thousand students for the entrance examinations in Latin held by the various Universities —Columbia, Harvard, Yale, Princeton, New York University, etc.,—and for the examinations in Latin held under the auspices of the Regents of the University of the State of New York.

The time intervening between the completion of a course in English Grammar and the beginning of a course in Latin has made it desirable to incorporate in the book a brief summary of the essentials of English Grammar necessary to the study of the first year of Latin. This feature of the book will prove to be of value to the student.

As a beginner's progress is measured by the rapidity with which he acquires a sufficiently large vocabulary, and also by the facility with which he is able to analyze sentence-construction, a large and varied vocabulary has been used throughout the book, together with sentences calling for a generous use of these vocabularies.

The vocabularies, as well as the sentences based thereon, have been made to conform as closely as possible to the text of Cæsar.

For the convenience of the teacher and for the further improvement of the student, many review exercises both on vocabulary and sentence-construction have been inserted.

It is well known to teachers that the third declension presents many difficulties to the student. For this reason, the authors have given unusual time and care to its presentation and arrangement. The manner in which nouns of the third declension may change from the nominative to the genitive case is

shown in tabular form (page 70). With this table as a basis, the declension of the nouns is given in four groups according to their nominative endings (pages 72, 76, 80, 84). The vocabularies of third-declension nouns are systematically arranged so that each group contains only those nouns which are declined in a similar manner.

Each conjugation, regular or irregular, is followed by two pages of practice on verb forms. This will be especially helpful to the teacher. In connection with each of the five regular conjugations, there is also one page giving a list of the most important verbs of that conjugation, together with their principal parts.

A list of the prepositions has been inserted at an early stage of the book to enable the student to handle a greater variety of sentences and to make more frequent use of the different cases.

Furthermore, for the saving of time and for easier reference the rules of syntactical construction have been grouped together under one head (page 32), and throughout the book will be found special exercises based on some one or other of these rules.

The chief uses of the subjunctive mood have been tabulated and have been made the basis for the practice work on the subjunctive mood.

The index at the end of the book has been drawn up as completely as possible, and will serve as a ready reference to any and all parts of the book.

In conclusion, attention is directed to the series of questions placed toward the end of the book. The authors believe that these questions will prove an excellent test of the student's progress from time to time.

THE AUTHORS.

NEW YORK, June 25, 1903.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
English Grammar	i–v
Introduction	1–6
First Declension (feminine nouns)	7–11
Second Declension (nouns in **us** and **um**)	12–15
Second Declension (nouns in **er**)	16–19
Adjectives (First and Second Declension)	20–21
First Declension (masculine nouns)	22
The Verb **Sum**	23–27
Prepositions	28–29
Review Vocabularies	30–31
Rules of Syntax	32–39
Introduction to the Verbs	40–41
First Conjugation	42–53
Second Conjugation	54–65
Review Vocabularies	66–67
Third Declension (nouns)	68–87
Review Vocabularies	88–89
Third Declension (adjectives)	90–93
Third Conjugation	94–105
Fourth Conjugation	106–115
Fourth Declension	116–117
Fifth Declension	118–119
Third Conjugation (**io** verbs)	120–129
Review Vocabularies	130–131
Irregular Adjectives	132–133

Comparison of Adjectives 134–136
Formation and Comparison of Adverbs 137–139
Pronouns, personal 140–141
" possessive 142–143
" **suī, ipse, hīc** 144–145
" **iste, ille, is** 146–147
" rel., interrog., indef 148–149
Deponent Verbs 150–153
Numerals 154–156
Review Vocabularies 157–158
The Verb **Fero** 159–163
The Verbs **Eo** and **Fio** 164–167
The Infinitive 168–169
Volo, Nolo, Malo 170–173
Possum, Prosum 174–179
Participles 180–181
Ablative Absolute 182–183
The Gerund and the Gerundive 184–185
The Periphrastic Conjugations 186–187
Impersonal Verbs 188–189
Review Vocabularies 190–191
The Supines 192
The Subjunctive Mood 193–206
Selections for Translation 207–214
Questions 215–228
Vocabularies 229–288
Index 289–296

A Brief Review of the Essentials of Elementary English Grammar Necessary to the Study of the First Year of Latin.

There are Eight Parts of Speech:

1. Nouns.
2. Pronouns.
3. Adjectives.
4. Verbs.
5. Adverbs.
6. Prepositions.
7. Conjunctions.
8. Interjections.

NOUNS.

A noun is a word used as the name of something: *tree, book, house, Henry, apples.*

A noun may be of the

1. **Singular** number: *tree, book, etc.*
   or **Plural** number: *trees, books, etc.*
2. **Masculine** gender: *boy, James, etc.*
   or **Feminine** gender: *girl, Edith, etc.*
   or **Neuter** gender: *table, book, etc.*

A noun may be used:

1. As the **Subject** of a verb:
   The **boy** *has a book.*
2. As the **Direct Object** of a verb:
   The man struck the **boy.**
3. As the **Indirect Object** of a verb:
   The man gives [to] *the* **girl** *an apple.*
4. **After a preposition:**
   The boy placed the book **upon the table.**

PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun is a word used in place of a noun: *I*, *he*, *we*, *you*, *etc.*

PRONOUNS HAVE THE SAME USES AS NOUNS.

Pronouns are divided into five classes:

1. **Personal**—*I*, *thou*, *he*, *we*, *you*, *they*, *etc.*
2. **Demonstrative**—*this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, *etc.*
3. **Relative**—*who*, *which*, *what*, *that.*
4. **Interrogative**—*who? which? what?*
5. **Indefinite**—*anyone*, *someone*, *each*, *etc.*

ADJECTIVES.

An Adjective is a word used to limit or to qualify the meaning of a noun or pronoun:

A **beautiful** *horse.*

An adjective has three degrees of comparison.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
rich	richer	richest
old	older	oldest

VERBS.

A Verb is a word that denotes " to be," " to act," or " to be acted upon."

to be—*I am*, *I was*, *etc.*

to act—*I strike*, *I eat*, *etc.*

to be acted upon—*I was thrown*, *etc.*

Verbs are classified as follows:

1. **Active Transitive.**
2. **Active Intransitive.**
3. **Passive.**
4. **Neuter.**

An **Active Transitive Verb** is a verb whose action passes over from the subject to the object. *The man* **struck** *the boy.*

An **Active Intransitive Verb** is a verb whose action does not pass over from the subject to an object. *The man* **laughed.**

A **Passive Verb** is a verb whose action passes back upon the subject. *The boy* **is taught** *by the teacher.*

A **Neuter Verb** is a verb which expresses simply "being." *I* **am** , *thou* **art**, *he* **is**, *etc.*

To express various relations of condition, time and person, a verb is inflected.

A Verb has mood, tense, voice, number and person.

Moods:

The **Indicative** mood states a fact.
The boy buys a large book.
The **Subjunctive** mood expresses doubt.
If the boy bought a large book, etc.
The **Imperative** mood expresses command.
Give the boy a large book.
The **Infinitive** mood expresses an abstract idea.
to give, to have, etc.

Tenses (Indicative mood):

Present: *I work, I am working, I do work.*
Imperfect: *I worked, I was working, I did work.*
Future: *I shall work, (thou wilt work, etc.)*
Perfect: *I have worked (or I worked).*
Pluperfect: *I had worked, etc.*
Future Perfect: *I shall have worked, etc.*

Voices:

The **Active Voice** denotes that the subject does the act:

He loves.

The **Passive Voice** denotes that the subject is being acted upon:

He is loved.

Numbers:

The **Singular** number denotes one:

I love, thou lovest, he loves.

The **Plural** number denotes more than one:

We love, you love, they love.

Persons:

The **First Person** denotes the speaker: *I, we.*

The **Second Person** denotes the person spoken to: *thou, you.*

The Third Person denotes the person spoken of: *he, they.*

ADVERBS.

An Adverb is a word used to limit or to qualify a verb, a participle, an adjective or another adverb.

The boy runs **quickly.**

An adverb has three degrees of comparison.

Positive	**Comparative**	**Superlative**
quickly	more quickly	most quickly
pleasantly	more pleasantly	most pleasantly

PREPOSITIONS.

A Preposition is a word placed before a noun (or a pronoun) to show the latter's connection with some other word:

There are children **in** *the street.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

A Conjunction is a word used to connect or to separate words, ideas or sentences:

William **and** *Henry are in the room* **but** *John is not there.*

INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is a word used to express a strong or sudden emotion of the mind:

Oh! Ah! Hurrah!

A **Phrase** is a brief expression not containing a subject and a predicate:

They are **in the street.**

A **Clause** is a group of words containing a subject and a predicate:

I shall go *when* **he comes home.**

By **Inflection** is meant any change in the form of a word to indicate a change in meaning or use.

DECLENSION means all the changes that a noun or an adjective may undergo.

CONJUGATION means all the changes that a verb may undergo.

The Twentieth Century Latin-Book.

THE LATIN ALPHABET.

1. The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English alphabet, but has no **w.**

2. The **vowels** are: **a, e, i, o, u.**
They may be long **ā ē ī ō ū** (indicated thus —)
They may be short **ă ĕ ĭ ŏ ŭ.** (indicated thus —)

3. The long vowels are pronounced just like the short vowels but take twice as long to pronounce.

4. The other letters of the alphabet are **consonants.**

5. Two vowels pronounced as one make a diphthong.
The **diphthongs** are:
ae, au, ei, eu, oe, ui.

6. PRONUNCIATION.

(Following the Roman method).

Vowels:

Pronounce **ā** as in *father*
ă " *idea.*
ē " *obey.*
ĕ " *error.*
ī " *machine.*
ĭ " *prettiest.*
ō " *bowl.*
ŏ " *open.*
ū " *rude.*
ŭ " *put.*

Diphthongs:

Pronounce **ae** as in *aye.*
au " *out.*
ei " *sleigh.*
eu " *feud.*
oe " *coil.*
ui " *suite.*

Consonants:

Pronounce **c** as in *cake.*
g " *go.*
j " *yet.*
s " *so.*
t " *take.*
v " *well.*
ch " *chasm.*

Other consonants are pronounced as in English.

7. QUANTITY.

RULES.*

1. A diphthong is long.
2. A vowel representing a diphthong is long.
3. A vowel standing for two vowels contracted is long.
4. A vowel before **nf, ns, j,** or **gn** is long.
5. A vowel before another vowel is short.
6. A vowel before **h** is short.
7. A vowel before **nt** or **nd** is short.

8. EXERCISES.

As far as possible the student should mark the quantity of the vowels and of the diphthongs in the following words:

1. contra	13. nihil	25. fuerunt
2. gentem	14. servant	26. aedes
3. gratiam	15. frumentum	27. amandus
4. patienter	16. poema	28. contentus
5. excludo	17. via	29. confero
6. frondosus	18. amant	30. ignoro
7. iniquum	19. foedus	31. nil
8. ignis	20. mensa	32. hujus
9. tenendus	21. fili	33. filia
10. consul	22. cogit	34. proelium
11. magnus	23. educo	35. evenio
12. deinde	24. praesentem	36. sapiens

*There are exceptions to rules 4 and 7.

9. SYLLABLES.

1. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **au-ge-ban-tur.**

2. A single consonant between two vowels belongs with the second vowel: **re-gi-na.**

3. When two or more consonants occur between two vowels, join as many consonants with the second vowel as can be pronounced: **a-gri-co-la-rum, gen-tem.**

4. In a compound word first separate the component parts and then divide the parts according to rules: **abibam,** (**ab,** *away;* **ibam,** *I went*) **ab-i-bam.**

10. ACCENT.

The last syllable of a word is called the ultima; the second from the end, the penult; the third from the end, the antepenult.

1. The **ultima** is never accented.

2. The **penult** is accented when long.

3. The **antepenult** is accented when the penult is short.

Hence words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable.

NOTE:—A vowel in the penult followed by two consonants (except a mute followed by **l** or **r**) constitutes a long syllable and is accented.

4. A word having an enclitic* at the end is accented on the syllable preceding the enclitic: **monétne,** *does he advise?*

* An enclitic is a word that cannot stand by itself, but is joined to the word preceding: e. g. **que,** *and;* **ne,** the sign of a question.

11. PRACTICE.

Divide into syllables and accent the following words:

1. neglego
2. sinister
3. mītissime
4. nēquāquam
5. egestātem
6. contrōversia
7. negōtium
8. sīgnificātio
9. infidēlis
10. proficiscor
11. aderāmus
12. omnis
13. indulgentia
14. conventus
15. urbānus
16. gracilis
17. stultitia
18. occāsus
19. paenitentia
20. trāicio
21. dēturbātus
22. clāmor
23. oppidum
24. prōicio
25. innocentia
26. omnīno
27. noster
28. clausus
29. proelium
30. cōpia
31. singuli
32. creatōrum
33. usque
34. indūtiae
35. exercitus
36. gladiātor

12. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

1. Nouns denoting males are masculine: **rex,** *king*; **Brutus,** *Brutus;* **nauta,** *sailor.*

2. Nouns denoting females are feminine: **regina,** *queen;* **Cornelia,** *Cornelia;* **puella,** *girl.*

3. Names of rivers, winds and months are masculine: **Rhenus,** *Rhine;* **Auster,** *South-wind;* **Martius,** *March.*

4. Names of countries, towns, islands and trees are feminine: **Italia,** *Italy;* **Roma,** *Rome;* **Samos,** *Samos;* **abies,** *fir-tree.*

5. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: **nihil,** *nothing;* **opus,** *necessity.*

13. NUMBER AND CASE.

Nouns and adjectives may be singular or plural.
Pronouns and participles may be singular or plural.

THE SIX CASES ARE AS FOLLOWS:

Latin.		*English.*
Nominative	equals	subject.
Genitive	"	of ——
Dative	"	to —— or for ——
Accusative	"	direct object.
Ablative	(used after many prepositions).	
Vocative	equals	case of address.

ORDER OF WORDS
in a Latin Sentence.

1. Place the **Subject** first.

2. Place the **Verb** last.

(The verb, **sum,** *I am*, in any of its forms, takes the same position as in English.)

3. Place the **Direct Object** before the verb.

4. Place the **Indirect Object** before a direct object.

5. Place **Adjectives** after their nouns.

NOTE: These rules may be disregarded when, for the sake of emphasis, a word takes some other position.

FIRST DECLENSION.

14. The stem ends in **a**.

15. Gender—Feminine.

16. NOTE.—To decline a word add the case endings to the base of that word. The **base** is the stem minus its final vowel.

17. **DECLENSION.**

Case Endings		Example	
Singular		*Singular*	
N.V.	**a**	pūgn**a**	*a battle*
G.	**ae**	pūgn**ae**	*of a battle*
D.	**ae**	pūgn**ae**	*to, for a battle*
Ac.	**am**	pūgn**am**	*a battle*
Ab.	**ā**	pūgn**ā**	.....
Plural		*Plural*	
N.V.	**ae**	pūgn**ae**	*battles*
G.	**ārum**	pūgn**ārum**	*of battles*
D.	**īs**	pūgn**īs**	*to, for battles*
Ac.	**ās**	pūgn**ās**	*battles*
Ab.	**īs**	pūgn**īs**	.....

18. **RULES OF SYNTAX.**

Before attempting to translate the exercises the student should learn the following rules of syntax.

1. **The Subject of a Verb.** See Rule 1, page 32.
2. **A Noun in the Predicate.** See Rule 3, page 32.
3. **Possession.** See Rule 5, page 33.
4. **Direct Object of a Verb.** See Rule 17, page 35.
5. **Adjectives** (agreement). See Rule 34, page 39.
6. **Verbs** (agreement). See Rule 35, page 39.

19. VOCABULARY.

Nouns.

aqua, *water.*
Aquītānia, *Aquitania.*
colōnia, *colony.*
cōpia, *supply.*
esseda, *war-chariot.*
fēmina, *woman.*
fīlia,* *daughter.*
Gallia, *Gaul.*
māteria, *wood.*
porta, *gate.*
praeda, *booty.*
prōvincia, *province.*
pugna, *battle.*
Rōma, *Rome.*
sagitta, *arrow.*
terra, *earth.*
tuba, *trumpet.*
via, *road.*

Adjectives.

(Feminine form.)
alta, *high.*
bona, *good.*
longa, *long.*
magna, *large.*
multa, *many.*
nova, *new.*
parva, *small.*
plāna, *level.*

Verbs.

est, (*he, she, it*) *is.*
sunt, (*they*) *are.*
habet, (*he, she, it*) *has.*
habent, (*they*) *have.*
portat, (*he, she, it*) *carries.*
portant, (*they*) *carry.*

---

et, *and;* **nōn,** *not.*

20. AIDS FOR THE STUDENT.

1. Put the **subject** in the **nominative** case.
2. Put the **direct object** in the **accusative** case.
3. Put **of** + **a noun** in the **genitive** case.
4. Put **to** + **a noun** (indirect object) in the **dative** case.
5. Put **for** + **a noun** (indirect object) in the **dative** case.

21. The words **the** and **a** cannot be translated into Latin

* **Fīlia,** *daughter,* sometimes has a dative and ablative plural in **- ābus.**

EXERCISES.

22. 1. Aquitania est provincia. 2. Filia sagittas habet. 3. Essedae praedam habent. 4. Terra aquam habet. 5. Roma portas habet. 6. Pugna est. 7. Coloniae vias habent. 8. Filiae materiam habent. 9. Gallia provincias habet. 10. Sunt tubae.

23. 1. The women have daughters. 2. Gaul has the booty. 3. Aquitania has war-chariots. 4. The daughters have arrows. 5. It is a trumpet. 6. The land has wood. 7. Rome has colonies. 8. It is a war-chariot. 9. The colonies have gates. 10. Gaul has roads.

EXERCISES.

24. 1. Aquitania est provincia Galliae. 2. Filia feminae sagittas portat. 3. Essedae Romae praedam provinciae portant. 4. Terra Aquitaniae aquam habet. 5. Coloniae Romae portas habent. 6. Feminae praedam pugnae portant. 7. Provincia Aquitaniae vias habet. 8. Filiae aquam provinciae Galliae portant. 9. Provinciae Galliae praedam habent. 10. Praeda coloniae est copia tubarum.

25. 1. The women of Gaul have daughters. 2. The provinces of Gaul have booty. 3. The province of Aquitania has the war-chariots of Gaul. 4. The daughters of the women have a supply of arrows. 5. The women of Rome carry the water. 6. The colonies of Rome have supplies of water. 7. The land of Gaul has roads. 8. The war-chariots of Rome carry the trumpets of the women. 9. The booty of the battle is a supply of war-chariots. 10. The colonies of Gaul have gates.

EXERCISES.

26. 1. Aquitania est provincia parva Galliae. 2. Filia bona feminae sagittas longas portat. 3. Essedae magnae Romae praedam provinciarum novarum portant. 4. Terra plana Aquitaniae aquam bonam habet. 5. Coloniae novae Romae portas altas habent. 6. Feminae bonae praedam magnam pugnae portant. 7. Provincia parva Aquitaniae vias longas habet. 8. Filiae bonae aquam provinciarum magnarum Galliae portant. 9. Provinciae magnae Galliae praedam multam habent. 10. Praeda coloniae parvae est copia tubarum longarum. 11. Provinciae multae Romae copiam magnam essedarum habent. 12. Sagittae longae sunt praeda provinciae.

EXERCISES.

27. 1. The good women of Gaul have many daughters. 2. The large provinces of Rome have a supply of long arrows. 3. The new colonies of Gaul have many war-chariots. 4. The large war-chariots of Aquitania carry the women of the new province. 5. The small land of Rome has a large supply of water. 6. The level land of Gaul has many roads. 7. The daughters of the good women carry a large supply of arrows. 8. The small colonies of Gaul have high gates. 9. The booty of the large province of Gaul is a new supply of trumpets. 10. Rome has many colonies. 11. They carry the good water of the provinces of Gaul. 12. The women of the large colony of Rome carry long trumpets.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

28. 1. Coloniae Romae sunt multae et magnae. 2. Gallia est colonia magna Romae. 3. Gallia provincias multas et novas habet. 4. Aquitania est provincia magna Galliae. 5. Aquitania feminas multas et bonas habet. 6. Filiae feminarum praedam magnam pugnae portant. 7. Praeda est copia magna tubarum multarum et longarum. 8. Aquitania copiam Romae tubarum longarum habet. 9. Aquitania multas portas altas non habet. 10. Roma portas altas et copiam magnam aquae bonae habet. 11. Terra plana Galliae copiam bonam aquae non habet. 12. Gallia multas essedas magnas et longas vias planas habet. 13. Provinciae Galliae copiam essedarum novarum et sagittarum longarum habent. 14. Sunt praeda pugnae magnae.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

29. 1. Aquitania is a province of Gaul and Gaul is a large new colony of Rome. 2. The good women of Aquitania have many daughters. 3. The daughters of the women of Aquitania have the long trumpets of Rome. 4. The long trumpets are the booty of the great battle. 5. The large new war-chariots of Gaul carry the long trumpets. 6. Rome has high gates. 7. The land of Rome has much good water and many level roads. 8. Rome has a large supply of small trumpets. 9. She has not many war-chariots. 10. She has no supply of arrows. 11. Aquitania has Rome's supply of arrows. 12. The arrows are long.

SECOND DECLENSION.

30. The stem ends in **o**.

31. Gender.—Nouns ending in **um** are neuter, most others are masculine.*

32. Case Endings.		Example.	
Singular.		*Singular.*	
N.V.	**us, e**	serv**us, e**	*a slave*
G.	**ī**	serv**ī**	*of a slave*
D.	**ō**	serv**ō**	*to, for a slave*
Ac.	**um**	serv**um**	*a slave*
Ab.	**ō**	serv**ō**	.....
Plural.		*Plural.*	
N.V.	**ī**	serv**ī**	*slaves*
G.	**ōrum**	serv**ōrum**	*of slaves*
D.	**īs**	serv**īs**	*to, for slaves*
Ac.	**ōs**	serv**ōs**	*slaves*
Ab.	**īs**	serv**īs**	.....

33. Case Endings.		Example.	
Singular.		*Singular.*	
N.V.	**um**	bell**um**	*a war*
G.	**ī**	bell**ī**	*of a war*
D.	**ō**	bell**ō**	*to, for a war*
Ac.	**um**	bell**um**	*a war*
Ab.	**ō**	bell**ō**	.....
Plural.		*Plural.*	
N.V.	**a**	bell**a**	*wars*
G.	**ōrum**	bell**ōrum**	*of wars*
D.	**īs**	bell**īs**	*to, for wars*
Ac.	**a**	bell**a**	*wars*
Ab.	**īs**	bell**īs**	.....

*The following nouns are exceptions: alvus F. — colus F. — humus F. — pelagus N. —vannus F. — virus N. — vulgus N.

34. VOCABULARY.

Masculine Nouns.	*Neuter Nouns.*
amīcus, *friend.*	**bellum,** *war.*
annus, *year.*	**castrum,** *fort.*
Brūtus, *Brutus.*	**oppidum,** *town.*
carrus, *wagon.*	**pīlum,** *javelin.*
cibus, *food.*	**regnum,** *kingdom.*
equus, *horse.*	**saxum,** *stone.*
fīlius, *son.*	**scūtum,** *shield.*
gladius, *sword.*	**signum,** *signal.*
lēgātus, *ambassador.*	**tectum,** *roof.*
mūrus, *wall.*	**tēlum,** *weapon.*
numerus, *number.*	**vallum,** *wall.*
servus, *slave.*	**verbum,** *word.*

Adjectives.

Masculine and Neuter forms.

altus-um, *high.*	**multus-um,** *many.*
bonus-um, *good.*	**novus-um,** *new.*
longus-um, *long.*	**parvus-um,** *small.*
magnus-um, *large.*	**plānus-um,** *level.*

Verbs.

dat, (*he, she, it*) *gives.*	**dant,** (*they*) *give.*

35. RULES OF SYNTAX.

Before attempting to translate the exercises the student should learn the following rules of syntax:

1. **Indirect Object.** See Rule 9, page 33.
2. **The Dative of the Possessor.** See Rule 10, page 34.
3. **The Dative of Service.** See Rule 13, page 34.
4. **The Ethical Dative.** See Rule 15, page 35.

EXERCISES.

36. 1. Brutus amicos habet. 2. Legatus servos habet. 3. Equus cibum portat. 4. Signum est verbum. 5. Filii* pila portant. 6. Tela sunt gladii. 7. Regnum castra habet. 8. Amicus scutum portat. 9. Servi equos habent. 10. Castrum vallum habet.

37. 1. The ambassador is a friend. 2. The towns have forts. 3. The kingdom has towns. 4. Brutus has friends. 5. The slaves carry javelins. 6. The ambassadors have sons. 7. The horses carry the food. 8. The friends have swords. 9. The fort has a roof. 10. The friends carry shields.

EXERCISES.

38. 1. Filius Bruti amicos habet. 2. Amici legati servos habent. 3. Equi amicorum Bruto cibum portant. 4. Signum belli est verbum. 5. Servi pila legatorum portant. 6. Tela sunt numerus gladiorum. 7. Oppida regni castra habent. 8. Amicus scutum legati habet. 9. Servi cibum filiorum portant. 10. Castra oppidorum valla habent.

39. 1. The friends of Brutus have swords and shields. 2. The sons of the ambassador are Brutus' friends. 3. The horses of the slaves carry the food of the fort. 4. He gives a number of shields to the slaves. 5. The slaves carry the weapons of the sons. 6. The signal of war is a word. 7. They carry javelins and swords. 8. The forts of the towns have walls. 9. The ambassador gives Brutus a sword. 10. The friends of Brutus carry weapons.

*When two i's come together they unite to form ī.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

40. 1. Filius bonus Bruti amicos multos habet. 2. Legati regni parvi servos bonos habent. 3. Equi amicorum bonorum cibum multum portant. 4. Signum belli longi est verbum parvum. 5. Numerus servorum bonorum Bruto pila longa dat. 6. Telum amici est gladius novus. 7. Oppida parva regni magni castra multa habent. 8. Amicus bonus legati scutum novum portat. 9. Equi servorum multorum pila longa portant. 10. Castra alta oppidi saxa plana habent. 11. Filii legatorum bonorum servis gladios multos dant. 12. Castrum altum oppidi testum planum habet.

41. 1. The large towns of the kingdom have many weapons. 2. Brutus is a good friend. 3. Many slaves of the ambassador of the kingdom carry food. 4. The good son of the ambassador gives long swords to the slaves. 5. The new weapons of the town are a large number of javelins. 6. The high walls of the towns have large stones. 7. They give many large weapons to the friends. 8. The high roofs of the forts are level. 9. The good horses of the slaves carry the food of the friends. 10. He gives a large number of good shields to the sons of the new ambassador. 11. The level roofs of the high forts are large. 12. They give many new javelins to the new friends of Brutus' son.

SECOND DECLENSION.

42. Nouns in **er.**

Case Endings.		Example.	
Singular.		*Singular.*	
N.V.		puer	*a boy*
G.	ī	puerī	*of a boy*
D.	ō	puerō	*to, for a boy*
Ac.	um	puerum	*a boy*
Ab.	ō	puerō	.....
Plural.		*Plural.*	
N.V.	ī	puerī	*boys*
G.	ōrum	puerōrum	*of boys*
D.	īs	puerīs	*to, for boys*
Ac.	ōs	puerōs	*boys*
Ab.	īs	puerīs	.....

43.

Case Endings.		Example.	
Singular.		*Singular.*	
N.V.		ager	*a field*
G.	ī	agrī	*of a field*
D.	ō	agrō	*to, for a field*
Ac.	um	agrum	*a field*
Ab.	ō	agrō	.....
Plural.		*Plural.*	
N.V.	ī	agrī	*fields*
G.	ōrum	agrōrum	*of fields*
D.	īs	agrīs	*to, for fields*
Ac.	ōs	agrōs	*fields*
Ab.	īs	agrīs	.....

44. NOTE.—Ager has an **e** only in the nominative singular. Puer has the **e** throughout. Most nouns in **er** are declined like ager.

45. VOCABULARY.

Nouns.

(Declined like puer.)

aquilifer, *eagle-bearer.*
gener, *son-in-law.*
puer, *boy, child.*
signifer, *standard-bearer.*
socer, *father-in-law.*
vesper, *evening.*
vir, *man.*
līberī, (plur. only) *children.*

(Declined like ager.)

arbiter, *judge.*
ager, *field.*
caper, *goat.*
culter, *knife.*
faber, *carpenter.*
liber, *book.*
magister, *master.*
minister, *servant.*

EXERCISES.

46. 1. Vir est arbiter. 2. Magister ministros habet. 3. Vesper est. 4. Soceri agros habent. 5. Viri sunt generi. 6. Capros habet. 7. Liberi cultros habent. 8. Signifer est faber. 9. Pueri libros habent. 10. Aquilifer liberos habet.

47. 1. The men have servants. 2. They have fields. 3. The masters have fields. 4. It is evening. 5. The servants have knives. 6. The boy has a goat. 7. The carpenters are standard-bearers. 8. The children have books. 9. The men are fathers-in-law. 10. They are judges.

47a. Decline together, giving singular and plural.

1. femina bona.
2. porta alta.
3. legatus novus.
4. carrus magnus.
5. saxum planum.
6. pilum longum.
7. puer bonus.
8. vir magnus
9. ager parvus.
10. culter bonus.

EXERCISES.

48. 1. Ager novus arbitri est longus et planus. 2. Liberi virorum libros novos habent. 3. Viri ministris capros multos dant. 4. Socer viri novos libros liberorum parvorum portat. 5. Generi viri capros multos et magnos habent. 6. Signiferi boni liberis magistri libros multos dant. 7. Vesperi multi sunt longi. 8. Liberi parvi arbitrorum sunt boni. 9. Ministri boni fabrorum magnos libros puerorum portant. 10. Aquiliferi ministris novis cultros multos dant. 11. Magistri multos agros magnos et multos capros bonos habent. 12. Libri liberorum arbitri sunt magni et novi.

EXERCISES.

49. 1. The good children of the carpenter carry large books. 2. The judge has many level fields and many good goats. 3. The boy gives new books to the children of the standard-bearer. 4. The master's children have large new knives. 5. They carry the small children of the eagle-bearer. 6. The good fathers-in-law give many goats to the sons-in-law. 7. The eagle-bearer is a son-in-law of the good judge. 8. The men give many large books and many new knives to the boys. 8. The goats of the master are large. 10. The small children of the good men give small new books to the boys. 11. The goats carry the small children of the good judge's son-in-law. 12. The large level fields of the good carpenter have many goats.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

50. 1. Servi amicis arbitri aquam bonam dant. 2. Viri oppidi magnum numerum servorum et ministros multos habent. 3. Liberi boni legati libros arbitri portant. 4. Filii signiferi multas sagittas longas portant. 5. Pueri fabro magnam copiam materiae portant. 6. Verba magistri sunt bona. 7. Magna saxa agrorum vallo oppidi portant. 8. Femina filio Bruti scutum magnum dat. 9. Ministri legatorum gladios virorum portant. 10. Parva filia arbitri magnam copiam librorum habet. 11. Līberis viri multos libros novos dat. 12. Provincia plana agros multos habet.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

51. 1. The judges give the booty of the province to the men of Rome. 2. The woman's children carry the shield and the weapons of Brutus. 3. The boys have the long trumpets of the son-in-law of the man. 4. The large war-chariots of the men are not new. 5. The fields of Rome have a large supply of water. 6. The horses of the master carry the good children of the women. 7. The wood of the large war-chariots of Rome is new. 8. The ambassador of Rome gives a large number of weapons to the men of the town. 9. The standard-bearers are carrying the long trumpets. 10. Many towns of Gaul have not a large number of men 11. Brutus' servants carry the large books of the children. 12. The arrows are not long.

ADJECTIVES.

52. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Bonus, *good.*

		Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing.	N.V.	bon**us, ĕ**	bon**a**	bon**um**
	G.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
	D.	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
	Ac.	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**
	Ab.	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**
Plur.	N.V.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
	G.	bon**ōrum**	bon**ārum**	bon**ōrum**
	D.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
	Ac.	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**a**
	Ab.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**

53. DECLINE **altus, parvus, magnus, longus, multus, etc.**

54. 1. The good man gives a large trumpet to the small boy. 2. Many men have large shields. 3. The high gates of the town are new. 4. Gaul has level roads. 5. The new books are for the good children. 6. Many horses carry water for the men. 7. The boy gives much water to the good horse. 8. The new wagons carry food for many men. 9. The slaves of the good men have water. 10. Has the good ambassador many sons?

55. **Miser,** *wretched.*

		Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing.	N.V.	miser	miser**a**	miser**um**
	G.	miser**ī**	miser**ae**	miser**ī**
	D.	miser**ō**	miser**ae**	miser**ō**
	Ac.	miser**um**	miser**am**	miser**um**
	Ab.	miser**ō**	miser**ā**	miser**ō**
Plur.	N.V.	miser**ī**	miser**ae**	miser**a**
	G.	miser**ōrum**	miser**ārum**	miser**ōrum**
	D.	miser**īs**	miser**īs**	miser**īs**
	Ac.	miser**ōs**	miser**ās**	miser**a**
	Ab.	miser**īs**	miser**īs**	miser**īs**

56. DECLINE—**liber, tener, asper, dexter.**

57. 1. The good woman gives water to the wretched man. 2. The wretched slaves of the master are free. 3. The right-hand chariot is large. 4. The tender daughter of the woman gives food to the boy. 5. The rough roads are not good. 6. The women are free. 7. The right-hand wagon belongs to the ambassador's son. 8. The boys have rough shields. 9. They give the right-hand boys long javelins. 10. The road is long and rough.

58. **Niger,** *black.*

		Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing.	N.V.	niger	nigra	nigrum
	G.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
	D.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
	Ac.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
	Ab.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō
Plur.	N.V.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
	G.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
	D.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
	Ac.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
	Ab.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

59. DECLINE—**pulcher, ruber, aeger, piger, noster, vester.**

60. 1. Our ambassador has a beautiful chariot. 2. The children's books are red. 3. The daughter of our friend is sick. 4. A boy gives the sick man water. 5. Many men are lazy. 6. The horses carry our weapons. 7. The beautiful arrows belong to the Romans. 8. Your friends are not sick. 9. The red chariot belongs to our ambassador. 10. The messenger has a beautiful horse.

61. FIVE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

agricola, *farmer.* **nauta,** *sailor.*
collēga, *associate.* **poēta,** *poet.*
scrība, *scribe.*

62. The above nouns of the first declension are masculine in gender, hence an adjective, when modifying any one of them, must take the masculine ending.

Example:

Agricola bonus est amicus nautae miseri.
The good farmer is a friend of the wretched sailor.

EXERCISES.

63. 1. Agricolae boni multos liberos habent. 2. Puer nautae misero aquam dat. 3. Liberi nautarum multorum sunt aegri. 4. Servus nostro collegae gladium dat. 5. Oppidum poetas multos non habet. 6. Tela nautarum asperorum non sunt parva. 7. Liber scribae nostri est magnus. 8. Provincia agricolas multos et bonos habet. 9. Libri poetae pigri non sunt magni. 10. Legatus scribas multos habet.

64. 1. The good farmer has many children. 2. The books of many poets are beautiful. 3. The daughter of the good farmer gives water to the sick sailor. 4. Brutus' new associate is lazy. 5. There are many friends for the good poet. 6. The scribes are giving books to the children. 7. The ambassador has many good scribes. 8. Your associate is not a good man. 9. The good poet has many friends. 10. The good farmers are giving food to our sailors.

65. THE VERB SUM.

Sum (roots es, fu), *I am.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fuī, (futūrus.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

sum, *I am.*	sumus, *we are.*
es, *thou art.*	estis, *you are.*
est, *he is.*	sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect.

eram, *I was.*	erāmus, *we were.*
erās, *thou wast.*	erātis, *you were.*
erat, *he was.*	erant, *they were.*

Future.

erō, *I shall be.*	erimus, *we shall be.*
eris, *thou wilt be.*	eritis, *you will be.*
erit, *he will be.*	erunt, *they will be.*

Perfect.

fuī, *I have been.*	fuimus, *we have been.*
fuistī, *thou hast been.*	fuistis, *you have been.*
fuit, *he has been.*	fuērunt (ēre) *they have been.*

Pluperfect.

fueram, *I had been.*	fuerāmus, *we had been.*
fuerās, *thou hadst been.*	fuerātis, *you had been.*
fuerat, *he had been.*	fuerant, *they had been.*

Future Perfect.

fuerō, *I shall have been.*	fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
fueris, *thou wilt have been.*	fueritis, *you will have been.*
fuerit, *he will have been.*	fuerint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Present.		Imperfect.	
sim	**sīmus**	**essem**	**essēmus**
sīs	**sītis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
sit	**sint**	**esset**	**essent**

Perfect.		Pluperfect.	
fuerim	**fuerimus**	**fuissem**	**fuissēmus**
fueris	**fueritis**	**fuissēs**	**fuissētis**
fuerit	**fuerint**	**fuisset**	**fuissent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

es, *be thou.* **este,** *be ye.*

Future.

estō, *thou shalt be.* **estōte,** *ye shall be.*
estō, *he shall be.* **suntō,** *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, esse, *to be.*
Perfect, fuisse, *to have been.*
Future, futūrus esse, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

futūrus, a, um, *about to be.*

---

66. **STUDY RULE OF SYNTAX** 10, **ON PAGE** 34.

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

67. **Practice on *SUM*.**

Give the mood, tense, number and person of each of the following forms and translate wherever possible.*

1. erant	21. eritis	41 fuerit
2. fuerat	22. fuerim	42. esse
3. erit	23. erat	43. erātis
4. sunt	24. fueritis	44. fuērunt
5. fuistis	25. erunt	45. sīs
6. eram	26. sit	46. fuissent
7. esset	27. fueris	47. fuerant
8. erimus	28. erās	48. este
9. fuisset	29. fuisse	49. sum
10. fuī	30. fueram	50. fuerāmus
11. sim	31. erāmus	51. estōte
12. essent	32. fuerint	52. eris
13. fuerimus	33. suntō	53. sītis
14. estis	34. fuistī	54. es
15. estō	35. essēs	55. essēmus
16. fuerō	36. est	56. fuit
17. sīmus	37. fuerās	57. fuissētis
18. erō	38. sint	58. erit
19. essem	39. fuissem	59. fuerātis
20. fuimus	40. sumus	60. essētis

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context and for this reason the student should not attempt to translate them at this time.

68. Practice on *SUM*.

Translate the folowing forms into Latin.

1. he was
2. you are
3. thou wilt have been
4. we have been
5. to be
6. be ye
7. thou *shalt* be
8. we were
9. they had been
10. you had been
11. thou wilt be
12. I shall be
13. I have been
14. be thou
15. they will have been
16. you will be
17. he is
18. they were
19. thou hast been
20. we had been
21. he had been
22. you will have been.
23. we are
24. I am
25. he has been
26. I have been
27. I shall be
28. you had been
29. they are
30. we shall be
31. he will have been
32. be thou
33. he has been
34. you were
35. he had been
36. they were
37. they will be
38. I shall have been
39. they *shall* be
40. I am
41. to have been
42. thou wast
43. he has been
44. we shall be
45. thou hadst been
46. they have been
47. thou art
48. he *shall* be
49. I shall be
50. you had been
51. ye *shall* be
52. we shall have been
53. I was
54. he is
55. you have been
56. thou wilt have been
57. they have been
58. you will be
59. he will be
60. I had been

EXERCISES.

69. 1. Vir erat nauta. *2. Estis in carro agricolae. 3. Sumus amici boni. 4. Liberi fuerant in castro oppidi. 5. Este amici servorum. 6. Viae Italiae erant planae. 7. Praeda pugnae est numerus magnus telorum. 8. Brutus fuerat legatus. 9. Vir erit agricola. 10. Multae essedae sunt viro. 11. Pugna fuit longa. 12. Signum belli fuerat verbum. 13. Culter est puero. 14. Vir esto nauta. 15. Copia aquae fuit bona. 16. Novae portae sunt oppido. 17. Fuerimus in terra Romanorum. 18. Agricolae Romae erant viri boni. 19. Portae oppidi erunt altae. 20. Vesperi sunt longi. 21. Multae tubae fuerant in carro. 22. Estis fabri boni.

70. 1. Brutus' son is an ambassador. 2. The boy will be a standard-bearer. 3. They had been in the wagon of the farmer. 4. The daughter of the woman was good. 5. We shall be friends of the slaves. 6. The man is a sailor. 7. I am wretched. 8. The children are wretched. 9. A small word will be the signal of the battle. 10. The supply of arrows has been small. 11. The new gate is high. 12. You had been in the large fort. 13. The slaves have many weapons. 14. The evenings are long. 15. There is much booty in the town. 16. The men have been farmers. 17. It was a sailor. 18. She will be a good friend. 19. The boys had many large knives. 20. Be ye good men.

*See Rule 32, Page 38.

PREPOSITIONS.

71. The following prepositions always take the **accusative** case.

ad, *to, toward.*
adversus, *against.*
adversum, *towards.*
ante, *before.*
apud, *at, near.*
circā, *about.*
circum, *around.*
circiter, *round about.*
cis, citrā, *this side of.*
contrā, *against.*
ergā, *towards.*
extrā, *outside.*
infrā, *below.*
inter, *among.*
intrā, *inside.*
juxtā, *near.*
ob, *on account of.*
per, *through.*
pōne, *behind.*
post, *after.*
praeter, *beyond.*
prope, *near.*
propter, *on account of.*
secundum, *next to.*
suprā, *above.*
trāns, *across.*
ultrā, *beyond.*
versus, *toward.*

72. The following prepositions take the **ablative** case.

ā, ab, abs, *away from, by.*
absque, *outside of.*
cōram, *in the presence of.*
cum, *with.*
dē, *from, concerning.*
ē, ex, *out of.*
prae, *in comparison with.*
prō, *in front of, for.*
sine, *without.*
tenus, *up to, as far as.*

73. After the following prepositions

Use the **accusative** to express **place to** or **into which.**
Use the **ablative** to express **place where.**

in, *to, into, in, on.*
sub, *under.*
subter, *beneath.*
super, *above.*

The student should hereafter consult the general vocabulary at the end of the book for the meaning and the use of any word with which he is not familiar.

EXERCISES.

74. 1. Equi feminas ad castrum portant. 2. Ante portas Romae sunt legati Galliae. 3. Circum oppidum est via. 4. Inter amicos Bruti sunt legati. 5. Amici virum trans agros portant. 6. Essedae praedam per provinciam novam portant. 7. Propter pugnam feminae sunt in castro. 8. In oppidum viros portant. 9. Liberi cum servis sunt. 10. Ex oppido viris cibum portat. 11. Ex castro pueros portant. 12. Amici Bruti prae populo oppidi sunt multi. 13. Sunt subter muris oppidi. 14. In oppido sunt equi. 15. Super muris oppidi saxa portant.

75. 1. In-comparison-with the men of Gaul the Romans are small. 2. They are carrying the weapons out of the fort. 3. The friends of the ambassador are in the town. 4. The men carry the booty through the province. 5. There are swords among the weapons. 6. There are walls around the town. 7. The horses carry the men toward the fort. 8. The war-chariots are before the gates of Rome. 9. The men carry the water across the field. 10. There are not many men on account of the war. 11. He is with a servant. 12. There are stones on the roof of the fort. 13. The slaves carry the children from the flames. 14. The weapons are in the town. 15. He carries the children on his shoulders.

76. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the meaning of each of the following words. Give the declension and gender of each noun.

1. aqua
2. amīcus
3. per
4. novus
5. prōvincia
6. longa
7. trāns
8. oppidum
9. ab
10. porta
11. Rōma
12. agricola
13. pīlum
14. niger
15. praeda
16. socer
17. culter
18. in
19. nauta
20. cum
21. inter
22. servus
23. tectum
24. dant
25. Brūtus
26. pulcher
27. gladius
28. faber
29. magister
30. scūtum
31. via
32. ad
33. collēga
34. colōnia
35. nōn
36. tuba
37. multus
38. gener
39. māteria
40. annus
41. bona
42. ante
43. sagitta
44. ex
45. lēgātus
46. scrība
47. vesper
48. fīlia
49. bellum
50. propter
51. līberi
52. prope
53. arbiter
54. fīlius
55. ruber
56. regnum
57. liber
58. asper
59. signum
60. habet
61. castrum
62. fēmina
63. Gallia
64. alta
65. miser
66. pugna
67. mūrus
68. circum
69. cōpia
70. puer
71. poēta
72. terra
73. parvus
74. contra
75. esseda
76. numerus
77. signifer
78. plāna
79. sine
80. socer
81. vallum
82. tener
83. caper
84. equus
85. verbum
86. vir
87. saxum
88. carrus
89. minister
90. tēlum

77. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the Latin form for each of the following words.

1. booty
2. supply
3. knife
4. woman
5. province
6. new
7. around
8. long
9. high
10. in
11. out of
12. among
13. ambassador
14. across
15. on account of
16. roof
17. sailor
18. master
19. children
20. with
21. road
22. standard-bearer
23. level
24. servant
25. land
26. trumpet
27. not
28. to be
29. weapon
30. against
31. fort
32. town
33. black
34. boy
35. water
36. wood
37. battle
38. friend
39. arrow
40. by
41. they give
42. through
43. carpenter
44. Gaul
45. evening
46. gate
47. son
48. poet
49. near
50. judge
51. man
52. war-chariot
53. goat
54. toward
55. number
56. without
57. small
58. colony
59. horse
60. wagon
61. good
62. sword
63. wretched
64. war
65. beautiful
66. year
67. daughter
68. father-in-law
69. Brutus
70. red
71. before
72. kingdom
73. Rome
74. scribe
75. book
76. farmer
77. signal
78. javelin
79. rough
80. he has
81. stone
82. colleague
83. wall
84. servant
85. many
86. ambassador
87. son-in-law
88. delicate
89. wood
90. level

78. RULES OF SYNTAX.

The chief uses of the six cases.

(The student should make use of the following rules whenever translating.)

1. **Subject of a finite verb.** (nominative.)

RULE—The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

Ex.—**Femina** tubam habet. **The woman** *has a trumpet.*

2. **Noun in apposition.**

RULE—A noun in apposition with another noun is in the same case.

Ex.—Vir, **agricola**, multos liberos habet. *The man,* **a farmer,** *has many children.*

Ex.—Dicit virum, **agricolam,** esse aegrum. *He says that the man,* **a farmer,** *is sick.*

3. **Noun in the predicate.**

RULE—A noun in the predicate referring back and naming the same person or thing as the subject is in the same case.

Ex.—Brutus est **legatus.** *Brutus is* **an ambassador.**

Ex.—Dicit Brutum esse **legatum.** *He says that Brutus is* **an ambassador.**

4. **Address.** (vocative.)

RULE—The vocative case is the case of direct address.

Ex.—Serve! Bruto gladium da! **Slave!** give Brutus a sword!

5. **Possession.** (genitive.)

RULE.—A noun modifying another noun, not denoting the same person or thing, is in the genitive case.

Ex.—Gladius **legati** est magnus. *The sword* **of the ambassador** *is large.*

6. **Material.** (Sometimes called Genitive of Source.)

RULE.—The genitive may denote the material of which a thing consists.

Ex.—Talentum **auri** habet. *He has a talent* **of gold.**

7. **Partitive** (genitive).

RULE—A noun denoting that of which a part has been taken is in the genitive case.

Ex.—Unus **militum** gladium habet. *One* **of the soldiers** *has a sword.*

8. **Remembering,** verbs of, (genitive).

Forgetting, verbs of, (genitive).

RULE—Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, when they express a continued state of mind, take the genitive case.

Ex.—Consul **amicorum** meminit. *The consul remembers his* **friends.**

Ex.—**Pugnae illius** nunquam obliviscar. *I shall never forget* **that battle.**

9. **Indirect Object.** (dative.)

RULE—The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.

Ex.—Poeta **puero** librum dat. *The poet gives the book* **to the boy.**

10. **Possessor.** (dative.)

RULE—The person to whom something belongs, when used with the verb **sum,** is in the dative case.

Ex.—Essedae sunt **legato.** *Chariots are* [*belong*] **to the ambassador.**

11. **Agent,** with the gerundive. (dative.)

RULE—The person by whom something must or ought to be done is in the dative case.

Ex.—Urbs **nobis** delenda est. *The city must be destroyed* **by us.**

12. **Compound Verbs.** (dative.)

RULE—Most verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub** and **super** take the dative case.

Ex.—Brutus **Romanis** praefuit. *Brutus commanded* **the Romans.**

13. **Service.** (dative.)

RULE—A noun denoting for what purpose a thing is to be used is in the dative case.

Ex.—Milites **auxilio** misit. *He sent soldiers* **as an aid.**

14. **Fitness,** adjectives of, (dative.)

RULE—The dative is used after adjectives of *nearness, fitness, likeness,* etc., and their opposites.

Ex.—Locus **castris** erat **idoneus.** *The place was* **suitable for a camp.**

15. **Ethical.** (dative.)

RULE—The person to whose advantage or disadvantage something is done is in the dative case.

Ex.—Milites **civibus** oppidum tenuerunt. *The soldiers held the town* **for the citizens.**

16. **Special Verbs.** (dative.)

RULE—Most verbs meaning *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *indulge*, *spare*, *threaten*, *pardon*, *believe*, *persuade*, etc., take the dative case.

Ex.—Responsum **legato** placuit. *The response pleased* **the ambassador.**

17. **Direct Object.** (accusative.)

RULE—The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

Ex.—Puer **tubam** habet. *The boy has* **a trumpet.**

18. **Cognate Accusative.**

RULE—A noun used after an intransitive verb and denoting an idea similar to that of the verb is called a cognate accusative.

Ex.—Milites **pugnam** pugnabant. *The soldiers fought* **a battle.**

19. **Predicate Accusative.**

RULE—Verbs of *naming*, *choosing*, *making*, *esteeming*, *appointing*, etc., may take **two** accusatives.

Ex.—Virum **legatum** fecerunt. *They made the man* **an ambassador.**

20. **Subject of an Infinitive.** (accusative.)

RULE—The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.

Ex.—Dicit **legatum** esse Romanum. *He says that the* **ambassador** *is a Roman.*

21. **Time.** (extent or duration.)

Space. (extent.)

RULE—Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative.

Ex.—**Sex horas** pugnabant. *They fought* **six hours.**

Ex.—Pons erat **quinquaginta pedes** longus. *The bridge was* **fifty feet** *long.*

22. **Separation.** (ablative.)

RULE—A noun denoting that from which something is taken is in the ablative case after simple verbs meaning to set free, deprive or want, but is preceded by the preposition **a, (ab), de** or **e, (ex),** after verbs compounded with these prepositions.

Ex.—Cives **metu** liberati sunt. *The citizens have been freed* **from fear.**

Ex.—Legatus **ex urbe** excessit. *The ambassador departed* **from the city.**

23. **Agent.** (ablative.)

RULE—With a passive verb the agent is expressed by **a** or **ab** with the ablative case.

Ex.—Argentum **a Bruto** celabatur. *The money was concealed* **by Brutus.**

24. Comparison.

RULE—When **quam** (than) is omitted, the second noun compared is in the ablative case

Ex.—Equus est validior **viro.** *The horse is stronger than* **the man.**

25. Manner. (ablative.)

RULE—Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum;** but *cum* is omitted when an adjective modifies the noun.

Ex.—Eques **cum celeritate** venit. *The horseman came* **with speed.**

Ex.—Eques **magna celeritate** venit. *The horseman came* **with great speed.**

26. Means or Instrument. (ablative.)

RULE—The means or the instrument with which something is done is in the ablative case.

Ex.—Vir **saxo** vulneratus est. *The man has been wounded* **with a stone.**

27. Cause. (ablative.)

RULE—A noun denoting the reason for an act is in the ablative case.

Ex.—Femina **laetitiā** exsultat. *The woman exults* **with joy.**

28. Accompaniment. (ablative.)

RULE—Accompaniment is expressed by **cum** with the ablative case.

Ex.—Dux **cum militibus** venit. *The leader came* **with soldiers.**

29. Degree of Difference. (ablative.)

RULE—The degree in which one thing differs from another is expressed by the ablative case.

Ex.—Puer erat **paulo** altior. *The boy was* **a little** [*by a little*] *taller.*

30. Specification. (ablative.)

RULE—A word denoting in what respect a thing is or is not true is in the ablative case.

Ex.—Romani **virtute** praecedunt. *The Romans excel* **in courage.**

31. Time (when or within which). (ablative.)

RULE—A noun denoting time *when* or *within which* is in the ablative case.

Ex.—**Tertia die** milites venerunt. **On the third day** *the soldiers came.*

(*Time within which* may = **in** with the ablative.)

32. Place (where). (ablative.)

RULE—A noun denoting place *where*, is in the ablative case, preceded by **in.** Names of towns omit the preposition.

Ex.—Milites **in castris** remanserunt. *The soldiers remained* **in camp.**

33. Domus, Rus and **Names of Towns.**

RULES—Express place *from which* by the ablative.

Express place *where* by the locative.

Express place *to which* by the accusative.

NOTE.—Use no preposition.

Ex.—Legatus **Roma** venit. *The ambassador came* **from Rome.**

Ex.—Consul **Cypri** est. *The consul is* **at Cyprus.**

Ex.—Dux **Romam** rediit. *The leader has returned* **to Rome.**

34. **Adjectives.** (agreement.)

RULE—An adjective agrees with the noun it modifies in Gender, Number and Case.

Ex.—Legatus **bonus** filiam **parvam** habet. *The* **good** *ambassador has a* **little** *daughter.*

35. **Verbs.** (agreement.)

RULE—A verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person.

Ex.—**Legati** gladios **habent. The ambassadors have** *swords.*

36. **Relative Pronoun.**

RULE—A Relative Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends upon the syntax of the Pronoun in the clause in which it stands.

Ex.—Ille est vir **quem** misi. *That is the man* **whom** *I sent.*

37. **Deponent Verbs.**

RULE—The Deponent Verbs **utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor** and their compounds take the ablative case.

Ex.—Romani in bello **sociis** utebantur. *The Romans used* **the allies** *in the war.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE VERBS.

CONJUGATIONS.

By **Conjugation** is meant the *Inflection of a verb.*

There are **five*** regular conjugations.

1st Conjugation has its Present Infinitive in **āre** (see page 42).
2nd " " " " " " **ēre** (" " 54).
3rd " " " " " " **ĕre** (" " 94).
4th " " " " " " **īre** (" " 106).
5th " " " " " " **ĕre** (" " 124).

MOODS, TENSES, *etc.*

In Latin there are†

1. FOUR MOODS: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive.
2. SIX TENSES: Present, Imperfect, Future,
   Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.
3. TWO VOICES: Active and Passive.
4. TWO NUMBERS: Singular and Plural.
5. THREE PERSONS: First, Second, Third.

Note: The **Gerund** and the **Supines** are *Verbal-Nouns.*
The **Participles** are *Adjectives.*

Note: The *Perfect* and the *Imperfect* tenses both denote past time: the Perfect is used of a single act at a single time, the Imperfect denotes continuation or repetition.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

There are usually four Principal Parts to a verb:

	Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perf. Ind. Act.	Perf. Pass. Part.
1st C.	**amo**	**amāre**	**amavi**	**amatum**
2nd C.	**moneo**	**monēre**	**monui**	**monitum**
3rd C.	**rego**	**regĕre**	**rexi**	**rectum**
4th C.	**audio**	**audīre**	**audivi**	**auditum**

These are called **Principal Parts** because they contain *all the stems* necessary to the complete conjugation of a verb.

The **Second** Principal Part always shows *to which conjugation a verb belongs.*

*The fifth conjugation is usually classified as "io" verbs of the third conjugation.

†For definitions of the terms that follow see the first pages of this book.

The **First** Principal Part (if we drop the final vowel) always gives us the *stem* for the *Present*, the *Imperfect* and the *Future tenses*.

The **Third** Principal Part (if we drop the final vowel) always gives us the *stem* for the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*, and the *Future Perfect* tenses, in the *Active Voice*.

The **Fourth** Principal Part always gives us the stem for the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*, and the *Future Perfect* tenses, in the *Passive Voice*.

TENSES: PRESENT SYSTEM AND PERFECT SYSTEM.

The **Present** tense, " **Imperfect** ", " **Future** " — Constitute the **Present System,** because they use the *Present stem* (*i.e.*, the first Principal Part of the verb).

The **Perfect** tense, " **Pluperf.** ", " **Future Perf.** " — Constitute the **Perfect System,** because they use the *Perfect stems* (*i. e.*, the 3rd and 4th Principal Parts of the verb).

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

In English the Person is represented by a *pronoun; I* love, *thou* lovest, etc.

In Latin the Person is represented by an *ending.*

	Active Voice.		**Passive Voice.**	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1st Pers.	**m (o)**	**mus**	**r**	**mur**
2nd Pers.	**s**	**tis**	**ris (re)**	**mini**
3rd Pers.	**t**	**nt**	**tur**	**ntur**

The Perf. Indic. and the Imperative have special personal endings.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

Indicative:

PRESENT: Pres. stem + characteristic vowel + Personal Endings.

IMPERFECT: Pres. stem + characteristic vowel + **ba** + Personal Endings.

NOTE: The student should be able, with a little help, to complete this table.

79. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Ā—VERBS.

Amō (root **am**), *to love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
PRESENT.	
amō, *I love, (am loving, do love).*	amor, *I am loved, (am being loved).*
amās, *thou lovest.*	amāris (-re), *thou art loved.*
amat, *he (she, it) loves.*	amātur, *he is loved.*
amāmus, *we love.*	amāmur, *we are loved.*
amātis, *you love.*	amāminī, *you are loved.*
amant, *they love.*	amantur, *they are loved.*
IMPERFECT.	
amābam, *I loved, (was loving).*	amābar, *I was loved.*
amābās, *thou lovedst.*	amābāris (-re), *thou wast loved.*
amābat, *he loved.*	amābātur, *he was loved.*
amābāmus, *we loved.*	amābāmur, *we were loved.*
amābātis, *you loved.*	amābāminī, *you were loved.*
amābant, *they loved.*	amābantur, *they were loved.*
FUTURE.	
amābō, *I shall love.*	amābor, *I shall be loved.*
amābis, *thou wilt love.*	amāberis (-re), *thou wilt be loved.*
amābit, *he will love.*	amābitur, *he will be loved.*
amābimus, *we shall love.*	amābimur, *we shall be loved.*
amābitis, *you will love.*	amābiminī, *you will be loved.*
amābunt, *they will love.*	amābuntur, *they will be loved.*
PERFECT.	
amāvī, *I have loved.*	amātus, -a, -um { sum, *I have been l.* / es, *thou hast been l.* / est, *he has been loved.*
amāvistī, *thou hast loved.*	
amāvit, *he has loved.*	
amāvimus, *we have loved.*	amātī, -ae, -a { sumus, *we have been l.* / estis, *you have been l.* / sunt, *they have been l.*
amāvistis, *you have loved.*	
amāvērunt (-ēre), *they have loved.*	

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT.

amāveram, *I had loved.*	amātus, -a, -um	eram, *I had been l.*
amāverās, *thou hadst loved.*		erās, *thou hadst been l.*
amāverat, *he had loved.*		erat, *he had been l.*
amāverāmus, *we had loved.*	amātī, -ae, -a	erāmus, *we had been l.*
amāverātis, *you had loved.*		erātis, *you had been l.*
amāverant, *they had loved.*		erant, *they had been l.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō, *I shall have loved.*	amātus, -a, -um	erō, *I shall have been l.*
amāveris, *thou wilt have loved.*		eris, *thou wilt h., etc.*
amāverit, *he will have loved.*		erit, *he will have, etc.*
amāverimus, *we shall have loved.*	amātī, -ae, -a	erimus, *we shall h., etc.*
amāveritis, *you will have loved.*		eritis, *you will h., etc.*
amāverint, *they will have loved.*		erunt, *they will h, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.*

PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris (-re)	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris (-re)	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus -a, -um	sim, sīs, sit	amātī -ae, -a	sīmus, sītis, sint
amāveris	amāveritis				
amāverit	amāverint				

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus -a, -um	essem, essēs, esset	amātī -ae, -a	essēmus, essētis, essent
amāvissēs	amāvissētis				
amāvisset	amāvissent				

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the clauses in which they appear.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*	amāre, *be thou loved.*
amāte, *love ye.*	amāminī, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*	amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*
amātō, *he shall love.*	amātor, *he shall be loved.*
amātōte, *you shall love.*	
amantō, *they shall love.*	amantor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.*	amārī, *to be loved.*
PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.*	amātus esse, *to have been loved.*
FUT. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*	amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*	
FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*	GER. amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*
	PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *having been loved.*

GERUND.

G. amandī, *of loving.*	These forms are used as nouns.
D. amandō, *for loving.*	
Ac. amandum, *loving.*	
Ab. amandō, *by loving.*	

SUPINE.

Ac. amātum, *to love.*	Ab. amātū, *to be loved.*

80. SOME VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*P.P.P.N.**	*Meaning.*
accelerō	accelerāre	accelerāvi	accelerātum	*to hasten*
accūsō	accūsāre	accūsāvi	accūsātum	*to accuse*
aedificō	aedificāre	aedificāvi	aedificātum	*to build*
agitō	agitāre	agitāvi	agitātum	*to agitate*
armō	armāre	armāvi	armātum	*to arm*
cēlō	cēlāre	cēlāvi	cēlātum	*to conceal*
cōgitō	cōgitāre	cōgitāvi	cōgitātum	*to plan*
conlocō	conlocāre	conlocāvi	conlocātum	*to place*
consultō	consultāre	consultāvi	consultātum	*to consult*
convocō	convocāre	convocāvi	convocātum	*to call together*
creō	creāre	creāvi	creātum	*to create*
dēcertō	dēcertāre	dēcertāvi	dēcertātum	*to fight*
ēnuntiō	ēnuntiāre	ēnuntiāvi	ēnuntiātum	*to announce*
excitō	excitāre	excitāvi	excitātum	*to rouse*
fugō	fugāre	fugāvi	fugātum	*to rout*
invītō	invītāre	invītāvi	invītātum	*to invite*
labōrō	labōrāre	labōrāvi	labōrātum	*to work*
laudō	laudāre	laudāvi	laudātum	*to praise*
oppugnō	oppugnāre	oppugnāvi	oppugnātum	*to storm*
probō	probāre	probāvi	probātum	*to approve*
pugnō	pugnāre	pugnāvi	pugnātum	*to fight (battle)*
spectō	spectāre	spectāvi	spectātum	*to look at*
superō	superāre	superāvi	superātum	*to conquer*
vocō	vocāre	vocāvi	vocātum	*to call*
vulnerō	vulnerāre	vulnerāvi	vulnerātum	*to wound*
crepō	crepāre	crepuī	crepitum	*to resound*
dō	dāre	dedī	datum	*to give*

*Perfect Passive Participle, neuter.

juvō	juvāre	jūvī	jūtum	*to help*
secō	secāre	secuī	sectum	*to cut*
stō	stāre	stetī	statum	*to stand*
vetō	vetāre	vetuī	vetitum	*to forbid*

81. PRACTICE ON **AMO.**

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. amō	21. amābit	41. amātī sītis
2. amābunt	22. amātī sumus	42. amābiminī
3. amātī essent	23. amāveritis	43. amēs
4. amā	24. amāberis	44. amāvissem
5. amārēminī	25. amāns	45. amātī erāmus
6. amātus es	26. amātur	46. amātō
7. amor	27. amātī estis	47. amābāris
8. ament	28. amem	48. amātī sunt
9. amātus erō	29. amātor	49. amārī
10. amatus sit	30. amābantur	50. amēmur
11. amābant	31. amētur	51. amābō
12. amāminī	32. amāvissēmus	52. amātū
13. amāverint	33. amātus erat	53. amāvērunt
14. amārer	34. amēmur	54. amās
15. amāverās	35. amātum īrī	55. amāverimus
16. amābimus	36. amātus essēs	56. amātus esse
17. amāte	37. amābāmur	57. amābās
18. amātum	38. amantō	58. amāverātis
19. amātī erunt	39. amāre	59. amātus eris
20. amāvisse	40. amātis	60. amāvī

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

82. PRACTICE ON **AMO**.

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate.

1. he has been loved.
2. thou art loved.
3. you have been loved.
4. they *shall* love.
5. you are loved.
6. I shall have loved.
7. love thou.
8. they will love.
9. to have loved.
10. you were loved.
11. he had been loved.
12. thou hast loved.
13. I love.
14. they will have been loved.
15. you had loved.
16. I was loved.
17. I shall be loved.
18. we shall be loved.
19. we have loved.
20. I had loved.
21. he had loved.
22. to have been loved.
23. love ye.
24. he will have been loved.
25. I shall love.
26. you had been loved.
27. to love.
28. he loves.
29. they have been loved.
30. be ye loved.
31. thou lovedst.
32. thou wilt have been loved
33. he *shall* love.
34. they are loved.
35. he has loved.
36. being about to love.
37. we shall love.
38. they will have loved.
39. he was loved.
40. you loved.
41. be thou loved.
42. I have been loved.
43. we had loved.
44. they loved.
45. he *shall* be loved.
46. he will be loved.
47. loving.
48. I had been loved.
49. we love.
50. they have loved.
51. he will love.
52. to be loved.
53. they were loved.
54. he will have loved.
55. we had been loved.
56. we shall have been loved.
57. they love.
58. of loving.
59. they will be loved.
60. we shall have loved.

EXERCISES.*

armo, fugo, pugno, supero, vulnero.

83. 1. Signiferi Romae in oppido pugnant. 2. Magnum numerum virorum sagittis vulnerabunt. 3. Servi a viris gladiis scutisque armati sunt. 4. Barbari viros oppidi fugaverunt. 5. Liberi feminae gladio vulnerati erant. 6. Servi pro magistris pugnabunt. 7. Dominus telis servos armaverit. 8. Viri in agris provinciae pugnabant. 9. Filia Bruti a legato vulnerata est. 10. Pugnabitne contra viros Galliae?

84. 1. The friends of Brutus will fight against the slaves. 2. They will have been armed with a sword and a javelin. 3. Brutus and the ambassadors had wounded the men. 4. The slave has been armed with a sword and a javelin. 5. They have routed the friends of the ambassador. 6. A great number of boys were wounded by the men. 7. The horse of the ambassador has been wounded in the town. 8. I shall conquer the friends and the slaves of Brutus. 9. Has he wounded the boy? 10. They will have fought in behalf of their friends.

EXERCISES.

cogito, creo, laboro, laudo, voco.

85. 1. Deus mundum creavit. 2. Populus Romae legatos laudat. 3. Barbari de bello cogitabunt. 4. Brutus ad castrum viros vocaverat. 5. Servi pro magistris laborant. 6. Viri a legato ad conloquium vocabantur. 7. Praesidium ex castro vocatum est. 8. Equi Barbarorum in oppido laboraverant. 9. Modestia servi ab arbitro laudatur. 10. Natura insulas creavit.

*The student should first study Rules of Syntax 23, 26, 27, 28, on pages 36 and 37.

86. 1. The ambassadors are working in behalf of the men. 2. God has created the eyes of men. 3. The modesty of the girl had been praised by the master. 4. They have called the fugitives into the fort. 5. The Barbarians will plan war. 6. The boys have been praised by the men. 7. He will plan a conference in the town. 8. Brutus had called the fugitives to a conference. 9. Through the nature of the place an island has been created. 10. The Barbarians will have worked for the men of Rome.

EXERCISES.

accelero, convoco, excito, probo, specto.

87. 1. Feminae provinciae ad locum acceleraverunt. 2. Barbari arma fugitivorum spectant. 3. Romani fugitivos Galliae convocaverant. 4. Viri sub castro flammas excitabunt. 5. Consilium feminarum a Barbaris probatum erat. 6. Fugitivos contra populum excitaverit. 7. Numerus equorum a viris spectatus erat. 8. Ad essedam viri accelerabat. 9. Legati ob dolum excitati erant. 10. Equum Romani spectat.

88. 1. The fugitive was looking at the sword of Brutus. 2. They will call together the women of Gaul. 3. Brutus hastened to the town with the fugitives. 4. The Barbarians will be roused by the ambassadors. 5. Brutus has been called to a conference. 6. The good fortune of the battle has roused the Romans. 7. The judge will approve the punishment of the boys. 8. He hastens to a conference in the town. 9. The ambassador looked toward the fort of the town. 10. Will he approve the plan?

EXERCISES.

accuso, agito, conloco, enuntio, oppugno.

89. 1. Consilium Helvetiis per indicium enuntiatum est. 2. Brutus prope oppidum Barbarorum castra conlocavit. 3. Fugitivos accusabo. 4. Roma a fugitivis oppugnata erat. 5. Responsum feminae Bruto enuntiabitur. 6. Oppidum Barbarorum oppugnant. 7. Legatus fatum virorum enuntiabit. 8. Castra Barbarorum in foro conlocata erant. 9. Praesidium populum agitabit. 10. Nuntii Bruti praemium enuntiaverint.

90. 1. The Romans are placing the camp in the town. 2. The plan of the war has been announced by Brutus. 3. He will storm the town. 4. The people are agitated on account of the war. 5. Brutus was accused by the fugitives. 6. The response of Brutus will be announced to the people. 7. The women are rousing the men of Gaul. 8. The men of Rome had stormed the fort of the ambassador. 9. Will he accuse Brutus? 10. The woman announced to the people the fate of the man.

EXERCISES.

aedifico, celo, consulto, decerto, invito.

91. 1. Romani in oppido forum aedificabunt. 2. Legatus cum Bruto de bello consultavit. 3. Ad conloquium invitata erat. 4. Fugitivi contra viros decertaverint. 5. Arma in carris celabantur. 6. Nuntii in castro oppidi celati sunt. 7. Cum Bruto in pugna decertabo. 8. Essedae Romanis aedificabantur. 9. De viris cum nostris sociis consultamus. 10. Argentum celatur.

92. 1. They have concealed the wagons behind the fort. 2. The messenger of Rome will be invited to a conference. 3. He is building a fort near the town of the Barbarians. 4. The women were consulted by the men. 5. Brutus had fought with the men in the camp. 6. A number of men are concealed in the town. 7. The messengers had not invited the friends of Brutus. 8. A wall had been built around the camp. 9. They will have taken counsel concerning war. 10. The fugitives fought with swords in the forum.

EXERCISES.

crepo, do, juvo, seco, sto, veto.

93. 1. Brutus legato filiam in matrimonium dedit. 2. Vir fugitivos juvabit. 3. Digitus viri gladio sectus est. 4. Nuntii cum gladiis in foro steterant. 5. Numerus scutorum fugitivis datus erit. 6. Vetabo conatum. 7. Populus a Romanis juvatur. 8. Consilium vetitum est. 9. Fugitivos argento juvat. 10. Poculum avo dabatur.

94. 1. She has given a shield to the man. 2. The women will not aid the men of Gaul. 3. The wood has been cut by the men. 4. The ambassador is standing before the gate of the town. 5. A number of trumpets had been given to the standard-bearers. 6. The people are standing in the forum. 7. The words of the people helped the ambassador. 8. They had placed the stones into the wall of the town. 9. The arms of the men have been cut with knives. 10. I shall give a horse to Brutus.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

95. 1. Viri oppidi sagittis pilisque vulnerabantur. 2. Amici nuntii extra portam altam oppidi magni steterant. 3. Responsum dignum viri captivi populo Romano enuntiatum est. 4. Amici mali Bruti bonos viros Galliae superant. 5. Legati captivi a Romanis in castro novo conlocabuntur. 6. In oppido parvo prope Romam magnum numerum virorum celabimus. 7. Gener viri gladio novo contra nuntium pugnavit. 8. Oppida multa et magna Italiae a Romanis oppugnata erant. 9. Fugitivi pilis longis servos multos armaverunt. 10. Viri multi amicos legati novi non juvabunt. 11. Puella parva a magistro bono laudatur. 12. Populus amicus oppidi legato bono dona grata dat.

96. 1. Skilful men have hastened to the new fort of the town. 2. The captive men have been armed with many new weapons by friends. 3. Many large war-chariots are being built for the Romans. 4. I shall call together to a conference the captive ambassadors of Rome. 5. The bad messengers will rouse the slaves with their words. 6. The friendly Barbarians had been accused by the bad men. 7. They were helping many worthy men of the provinces of Gaul. 8. The men of the ancient town of Gaul have been conquered by the Romans. 9. The good master gives a large new book to the dear child. 10. We shall aid the captive slaves with money and weapons. 11. Has he accused the boy? 12. The Romans were concealing the silver and the gold in a new place.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

97. 1. Magnus numerus fugitivorum ad castrum novum oppidi accelerat. 2. Viri Romae gladiis longis servos amicos armaverunt. 3. Barbari propter periculum amicorum agitabantur. 4. Romani in foro Romae statuam Minervae conlocabunt. 5. Nuntii amici a Romanis ad conloquium secundum convocati sunt. 6. Fatum Bruti viris enuntiaveram. 7. Viri captivi gladiis contra Romanos pugnaverant. 8. Vallum longum circum oppidum aedificabunt. 9. Servi defessi a pueris bonis legati laudabantur. 10. Praemia magna a Bruto nuntiis data sunt. 11. Vir in magno numero locorum argentum celaverat. 12. Responsum gratum datum est.

98. 1. The bad men are armed with many long swords and javelins. 2. The Romans will not conquer the men of the ancient town of Gaul. 3. He has aided the good friends of Brutus with gifts of money. 4. The dear child of the Roman had been wounded with a broad sword. 5. Labienus is storming a large town in the new province. 6. The men contended with swords and knives. 7. The women were standing under the high wall of the large town. 8. I shall look at the beautiful gifts of the famous ambassador of Rome. 9. The people had accused the bad messengers of the Barbarians. 10. The new war-chariots have been placed together in a level place. 11. He is calling together the men of the new province to a conference. 12. He stood on the high wall of the town.

99. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Ē—VERBS.

Moneō (root **mon**), *to warn.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
PRESENT.	
moneō, *I warn (am warning, do)*	**moneor,** *I am warned (am being w.*
monēs, *thou warnest.*	**monēris (-re),** *thou art warned.*
monet, *he warns.*	**monētur,** *he is warned.*
monēmus, *we warn.*	**monēmur,** *we are warned.*
monētis, *you warn.*	**monēminī,** *you are warned.*
monent, *they warn.*	**monentur,** *they are warned.*
IMPERFECT.	
monēbam, *I warned (was w'ing)*	**monēbar,** *I was warned.*
monēbās, *thou warnedst.*	**monēbāris, (-re)** *thou wast w.*
monēbat, *he warned.*	**monēbātur,** *he was warned.*
monēbāmus, *we warned.*	**monēbāmur,** *we were warned.*
monēbātis, *you warned.*	**monēbāminī,** *you were warned.*
monēbant, *they warned.*	**monēbantur,** *they were warned.*
FUTURE.	
monēbō, *I shall warn.*	**monēbor,** *I shall be warned.*
monēbis, *thou wilt warn.*	**monēberis (-re),** *thou wilt be w.*
monēbit, *he will warn.*	**monēbitur,** *he will be warned.*
monēbimus, *we shall warn.*	**monēbimur,** *we shall be warned.*
monēbitis, *you will warn.*	**monēbiminī,** *you will be warned.*
monēbunt, *they will warn.*	**monēbuntur,** *they will be warned.*
PERFECT.	
monuī, *I have warned.*	**monitus -a, -um, sum,** *I have been warned.*
monuistī, *thou hast warned.*	**es,** *thou hast been warned.*
monuit, *he has warned.*	**est,** *he has been warned.*
monuimus, *we have warned.*	**monitī -ae, -a, sumus,** *we have been w.*
monuistis, *you have warned.*	**estis,** *you have been w.*
monuērunt (re), *they have w.*	**sunt,** *they have been w.*

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.
PLUPERFECT.		
monueram, *I had warned.*	monitus	**eram,** *I had been w.*
monuerās, *thou hadst warned.*	**-a, -um**	**erās,** *thou hadst been w.*
monuerat, *he had warned.*		**erat,** *he had been w.*
monuerāmus, *we had warned.*	monitī,	**erāmus,** *we had been w.*
monuerātis, *you had warned.*	**-ae, -a**	**erātis,** *you had been w.*
monuerant, *they had warned.*		**erant,** *they had been w.*
FUTURE PERFECT.		
monuerō, *I shall have warned.*	monitus	**erō,** *I shall have been w.*
monueris, *thou wilt have warned.*	**-a, -um.**	**eris,** *thou wilt h. b. w.*
monuerit, *he will have warned.*		**erit,** *he will have h. b. w.*
monuerimus, *we shall have w.*	monitī	**erimus,** *we shall h. b. w.*
monueritis, *you wilt have warned.*	**-ae, -a.**	**eritis,** *you will h. b. w.*
monuerint, *they will have warned.*		**erunt,** *they will h. b. w.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.*

PRESENT.

moneam	**moneāmus**	**monear**	**moneāmur**
moneās	**moneātis**	**moneāris (-re)**	**moneāminī**
moneat	**moneant**	**moneātur**	**moneantur**

IMPERFECT.

monērem	**monērēmus**	**monērer**	**monērēmur**
monērēs	**monērētis**	**monērēris (-re)**	**monērēminī**
monēret	**monērent**	**monērētur**	**monērentur**

PERFECT.

monuerim	**monuerimus**	monitus	**sim**	monitī	**sīmus**
monueris	**monueritis**	**-a, -um**	**sīs**	**-ae, -a**	**sītis**
monuerit	**monuerint**		**sit**		**sint**

PLUPERFECT.

monuissem	**monuissēmus**	monitus	**essem**	monitī	**essēmus**
monuissēs	**monuissētis**	**-a, um**	**essēs**	**-ae, -a**	**essētis**
monuisset	**monuissent**		**esset**		**essent**

* Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the clauses in which they stand.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

monē, *warn thou.*	monēre, *be thou warned.*
monēte, *warn ye.*	monēminī, *be ye warned.*

FUTURE.

monētō, *thou shalt warn.*	monētor, *thou shalt be warned.*
monētō, *he shall warn.*	monētor, *he shall be warned.*
monētōte, *you shall warn.*	
monentō, *they shall warn.*	monentcr, *they shall be warned.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, *to warn.*	monērī, *to be warned.*
PERF. monuisse, *to have warned.*	monitus esse, *to have been warned.*
FUT. monitūrus esse, *to be about to warn.*	monitum īrī, *to be about to be warned.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, *warning.*	
FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to warn.*	GER. monendus, -a, -um, *to be warned.*
	PERF. monitus, -a, -um, *having been warned.*

GERUND.

G. monendī, *of warning.*	These forms are used as nouns.
D. monendō, *for warning.*	
Ac. monendum, *warning.*	
Ab. monendō, *by warning.*	

SUPINE.

Ac. monitum, *to warn.*	Ab. monitū, *to be warned.*

100. SOME VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*P.P.P. N.**	*Meaning*
coerceō	coercēre	coercuī	coercitum	—*to check*
dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitum	—*to owe*
exerceō	exercēre	exercuī	exercitum	—*to exercise*
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum	—*to have*
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum	—*to warn*
placeō	placēre	placuī	placitum	—*to please*
prohibeō	prohibēre	prohibuī	prohibitum	—*to keep from*
praebeō	praebēre	praebuī	praebitum	—*to furnish*
taceō	tacēre	tacuī	tacitum	—*to keep silent*
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territum	—*to frighten*
augeō	augēre	auxī	auctum	—*to increase*
commoveō	commovēre	commōvī	commōtum	—*to arouse*
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum	—*to destroy*
dētineō	dētinēre	dētinuī	dētentum	—*to detain*
dissuādeō	dissuādēre	dissuāsī	dissuāsum	—*to dissuade*
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctum	—*to teach*
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautum	—*to favor*
fleō	flēre	flēvī	flētum	—*to weep*
jubeō	jubēre	jussī	jūssum	—*to order*
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsum	—*to stay*
obsideō	obsidēre	obsēdī	obsessum	—*to besiege*
obtineō	obtinēre	obtinuī	obtentum	—*to obtain*
persuādeō	persuādēre	persuāsī	persuāsum	—*to persuade*
possideō	possidēre	possēdī	possessum	—*to occupy*
prōvideō	prōvidēre	prōvīdī	prōvīsum	—*to provide*
remaneō	remanēre	remānsī	remānsum	—*to remain*
removeō	removēre	remōvī	remōtum	—*to remove*
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	tentum	—*to hold*
timeō	timēre	timuī	. . . . .	—*to fear*
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsum	—*to see*

*Perfect Passive Participle, neuter.

101. PRACTICE ON **MONEO.**

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. monet
2. monēbant
3. moneam
4. monē
5. monuissem
6. monēre
7. monuerat
8. monērī
9. monuerim
10. moneō
11. moneant
12. monētō
13. monuērunt
14. monērent
15. monitum
16. monitus
17. monēbor
18. monēbāmus
19. monuisse
20. monēbitis
21. monuissētis
22. monērēminī
23. monuimus
24. moneāminī
25. monēberis
26. monēbāris
27. monitūrus esse
28. monitus sim
29. monent
30. monuerimus
31. monēbiminī
32. monitī essent
33. monitus eram
34. monitū
35. monēbantur
36. monueris
37. monitus
38. monitus sit
39. monuī
40. moneāmur
41. monentō
42. monēbar
43. monitī erātis
44. monuisset
45. monētis
46. monērētis
47. monuerāmus
48. monērem
49. monēbō
50. monitus essēs
51. monēminī
52. monitus esse
53. monitī sunt
54. monērēris
55. monuerint
56. monēs
57. monēmur
58. monitī essētis
59. monuistis
60. monitī sīmus

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

102. PRACTICE ON **MONEO.**

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate.

1. I have warned.
2. you have been warned.
3. I shall have warned.
4. he was warned.
5. to have warned.
6. you had warned.
7. we shall be warned.
8. he had warned.
9. you warn.
10. I was warned.
11. to warn.
12. for warning.
13. thou wast warned.
14. he *shall* warn.
15. you have warned.
16. being about to warn.
17. we are warned.
18. he was warned.
19. I have been warned.
20. they *shall* be warned.
21. I had been warned.
22. he will warn.
23. he will have warned.
24. they warn.
25. he was warning.
26. we shall have warned.
27. you are warned.
28. I had warned.
29. you will warn.
30. I shall warn.
31. be ye warned.
32. he is warned.
33. you were warned.
34. he has warned.
35. you were warning.
36. they *shall* warn.
37. he *shall* be warned.
38. you will be warned.
39. they have warned.
40. we had been warned.
41. they will warn.
42. thou wilt warn.
43. I was warned.
44. he warns.
45. they were warning.
46. he has been warned.
47. thou dost warn.
48. warning.
49. warn thou.
50. we had warned.
51. they will have warned.
52. I am warned.
53. they were warned.
54. we have warned.
55. he had been warned.
56. by warning.
57. be ye warned.
58. we warn.
59. we shall have been warned.
60. to be warned.

EXERCISES.

coerceo, debeo, exerceo, habeo, moneo.

103. **1.** Amicos viri gladiis coercebant. **2.** Vir scutum magnum et novum habet. **3.** Equi in agris a servis exercebantur. **4.** Vitas validis viris oppidi debemus. **5.** Legati Galliae a populo Romae moniti erant. **6.** Nuntii cum viris conloquium habuerint. **7.** Servi periti equos Barbarorum coercuerunt. **8.** Populus oppidi a nuntio monebitur. **9.** Habetne in carro argentum? **10.** Equus legati in foro exercitus est.

104. **1.** He has much silver in the large wagon. **2.** The women of the town will be warned by the messenger. **3.** You were exercising the horse of the man in the field. **4.** The children had had many books. **5.** The people of the town owe their lives to the good messengers. **6.** The men of Rome had been exercised in the large forum. **7.** The women will be warned of the danger by the men. **8.** He will have had a great number of long arrows. **9.** The men were held in check through the man's words. **10.** I shall warn the fugitives.

EXERCISES.

prohibeo, taceo, terreo, augeo, commoveo.

105. **1.** Servi feminam injuria Barbarorum prohibebant. **2.** Legatus populum oppidi commovebit. **3.** Fugitivi fato virorum territi sunt. **4.** Filia viri in oppido Barbarorum tacuerat. **5.** Viri Romae verbis nuntii terrebuntur. **6.** Legatus numerum equorum auget. **7.** Nuntius oppido a servis Bruti prohibetur. **8.** Fugitivos Galliae verbis commoverit. **9.** Socii a Barbaris telis territi erunt. **10.** Odium Romanorum verbis legati augebatur.

106. 1. The Romans will terrify the men in the new colony of Gaul. 2. They had kept silent on account of the response of the messenger. 3. They protected the man from the injury of the Romans. 4. The fate of the man frightened the fugitives. 5. The number of horses was increased by the allies. 6. The men will be roused by the treachery of the Romans. 7. The woman had been kept out of the camp of Brutus. 8. The ambassadors have been frightened by the Romans with harsh words. 9. The friends of the man are alarmed on account of the danger. 10. The son of the ambassador has increased the number of wagons.

EXERCISES.

deleo, detineo, dissuadeo, doceo, faveo.

107. 1. Fugitivi essedam nuntii delent. 2. Pueri a genero legati docebantur. 3. Consilium feminae a viris favebitur. 4. Oppida Italiae bello deleta sunt. 5. Gener legati a conato dissuadetur. 6. Favebit genero legati Romani. 7. Magistri filias Romanorum docuerunt. 8. Viri nuntios Romanos detinuerunt. 9. Flammae portas oppidi deleverant. 10. Nuntii Barbarorum a fugitivis detenti erant.

108. 1. The plan was favored by many Barbarians. 2. The people were destroying the chariots and arms of the messenger. 3. He has been dissuaded by the words of the men. 4. The eyes of the man had been destroyed with arrows. 5. The son of the Roman was favored by the people. 6. The daughter of the farmer will be taught by a man of the town. 7. The men had been detained on the road. 8. I shall destroy with war the small towns of the colony. 9. He has been detained in the camp of the Romans. 10. The children are being taught by friends.

EXERCISES.

fleo, jubeo, maneo, obsideo, obtineo.

109. 1. Esseda legati in foro remansit. 2. Oppidum telis a fugitivis obsidetur. 3. In regno Gallorum viri remanserunt. 4. Vicus a sociis Romae possidebitur. 5. Feminae propter fatum virorum flebant. 6. Nuntius magnum numerum carrorum obtinuerat. 7. Barbari templa oppidi obsederant. 8. Filius legati Romam obsidebit. 9. Filiae feminarum in carro manserant. 10. Populus propter socios flebat.

110. 1. The Romans besieged the place with many weapons. 2. The townsmen had remained in the fields outside the town. 3. The messenger has given orders to the slaves. 4. The fort of the place is held by the townsmen. 5. Brutus was weeping on account of the fate of his friends. 6. The gates of Rome will be besieged by the men of the colony. 7. The women will remain in the place with the slaves. 8. They were besieged in the high place by the townsmen. 9. They had wept on account of the words of the messenger. 10. The place has been held by the friends of the man.

111. **STUDY RULE OF SYNTAX 16, PAGE 35.**

EXERCISES.

persuadeo, placeo, possideo, praebeo, provideo.

112. 1. Viri oppidi fugitivis cibum praebuerunt. 2. Feminae verbis nuntii placebuntur. 3. Provinciae a Gallis possidebantur. 4. Liberi a magistro persuasi erant. 5. Praebebant servis gladios scutaque. 6. Arma fugitivis provisa erunt. 7. Victoria viris feminisque Romae placuit. 8. Nuntius oppidanis persuasit. 9. Romani prope oppidum latum locum planum possidebant. 10. Providebant fatum virorum.

113. 1. The allies of Rome were persuaded by the words of the messenger. 2. The messenger will be pleased with the response of the people. 3. The Barbarians had occupied a place near the town. 4. Arms have been furnished to the fugitives. 5. The men of the province provided war-chariots. 6. The swords and the shields were pleasing to the men of Aquitania. 7. The women will furnish water for the wounded men. 8. The town in the new colony has been occupied by the fugitives. 9. I shall persuade the children of the ambassador. 10. The people are providing food and arms.

EXERCISES.

remaneo, removeo, teneo, timeo, video.

114. 1. Praesidium Romanum oppida et vicos Aquitaniae tenebat. 2. Oppidani odium virorum Romae timent. 3. Legatus in castris Bruti remanebit. 4. Magnus numerus fugitivorum a vallis oppidi videbatur. 5. Nuntius fatum sociorum in memoria tenuit. 6. Tela ex carris a servis remota erant. 7. Romani insidium Barbarorum timuerunt. 8. Oppidani intra portas oppidi remanent. 9. Magnus numerus equorum in loco visus erat. 10. Romani vicos Galliae tenebunt.

115. 1. The crowd feared the Romans and their arms. 2. The money was seen by the Barbarians. 3. The women of Rome have kept in memory the fate of the men. 4. The fugitives and the children will remain in the village. 5. I had seen a great number of horses near the town. 6. Do the Romans fear the garrison of the town? 7. The fort was held by the townsmen. 8. The fugitives had seen the war-chariots of the Romans. 9. The allies will have remained in the camp of the Romans. 10. The arms were removed from the villages of Italy.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

116. **1.** Amici virorum in carro magno tela multa habuerunt. **2.** Odium populi Romae verbis nuntii augebatur. **3.** Monebo legatum contra insidium Gallorum. **4.** Magnus numerus fugitivorum tacet. **5.** Conatum Barbarorum a bonis sociis Romae coercebitur. **6.** Magna oppida coloniae bello deleta erunt. **7.** Magnus numerus servorum ab amicis viri commovetur. **8.** Romani in foro Romae amicos Barbarorum detinuerunt. **9.** Filiae feminarum Romanarum in oppido amici remanserint. **10.** Liberi ex colonia a bonis magistris Romae docti erant. **11.** Equus Romani a servo exercitus est. **12.** Filius legati multas sagittas longas et scuta magna obtinuerat.

117. **1.** The men will have seen the large supply of weapons in the town. **2.** The town is being held by the allies of Rome on account of the war. **3.** The victory pleased the Romans on account of the large supply of booty. **4.** The townsmen were persuaded by the words of the allies. **5.** Water and food had been furnished to the children of the fugitives. **6.** Brutus is removing his chariots from the road to the forum of the town. **7.** The hatred of the Barbarians will have been feared by the allies of Rome. **8.** The towns of the province had been besieged by the men of Gaul. **9.** The danger of the men in the fields will frighten the women in the town. **10.** The camp of the Barbarians will be occupied by the allies of Rome. **11.** The victory of the Romans has increased the danger of the allies of Gaul. **12.** The friends of Brutus have been warned by the slaves in the town.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

118. 1. Legatus Romae verbis amicorum monebatur. 2. Responsum sociorum odium Romanorum auxit. 3. Liberi agricolarum a feminis periculo prohibebuntur. 4. Pueri magnum numerum scutorum atque sagittas longas habuerant. 5. Castra sociorum ab oppidanis a vallo oppidi videntur. 6. Romanus propter fatum liberorum servos tenet. 7. Nova copia carrorum a nuntio obtenta erat. 8. Oppida coloniae insidio sociorum delebantur. 9. Praebebo fugitivis servisque cibum et tela. 10. Liberi agricolarum in oppido a magistro docti erunt. 11. Amici legati Romani tacuerunt. 12. Victoria Romanorum oppidanos terruerit.

119. 1. The Romans will provide horses and chariots for the allies. 2. The silver was removed from the wagon into the fort of the town. 3. The men of the colony had silver and gold in the forum. 4. I shall keep in memory the response of the Roman allies. 5. A large number of the villages of Gaul will have been occupied by the fugitives. 6. The people of Rome see the chariots of the allies in the forum. 7. The children of the allies have been taught by men of Rome. 8. They have checked the Barbarians by a victory in the province. 9. The women of the village will be persuaded by the words of the men. 10. The man had increased the supply of food with the aid of the woman. 11. A large number of books had been provided for the children. 12. Swords and shields are being furnished to the slaves by the townsmen.

120. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the meaning of each of the following words. Give the declension and gender of each noun.

1. laudō
2. praebeō
3. fugō
4. placeō
5. taceō
6. invītō
7. dēcertō
8. exerceō
9. vulnerō
10. agitō
11. augeō
12. dō
13. oppūgnō
14. removeō
15. crepō
16. remaneō
17. armō
18. timeō
19. juvō
20. prōvideō
21. maneō
22. cēlō
23. superō
24. cōgitō
25. fleō
26. obsideō
27. pūgnō
28. persuādeō
29. dissuādeō
30. obtineō
31. prohibeō
32. accūsō
33. dēbeō
34. ēnūntiō
35. secō
36. coerceō
37. excitō
38. dēleō
39. accelerō
40. labōrō
41. habeō
42. terreō
43. probō
44. moneō
45. vetō
46. aedificō
47. possideō
48. stō
49. teneō
50. videō
51. conlocō
52. vocō
53. doceō
54. jubeō
55. cōnsultō
56. faveō
57. spectō
58. convocō
59. dētineō
60. creō
61. socius
62. arma
63. captīvus
64. conloquium
65. perīculum
66. oculus
67. bracchium
68. clārus
69. fātum
70. Deus
71. puella
72. aurum
73. asper
74. injūria
75. vīta
76. nūntius
77. argentum
78. nātūra
79. locus
80. cōnsilium
81. respōnsum
82. perītus
83. dolus
84. antīquus
85. castra
86. cārus
87. fortūna
88. dōnum
89. īnsula
90. modestia

121. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the Latin form for each of the following words.

1. to owe.
2. to stay.
3. to fight.
4. to order.
5. to create.
6. to keep silent.
7. to build.
8. to warn.
9. to plan.
10. to announce.
11. to please.
12. to destroy.
13. to agitate.
14. to dissuade.
15. to have.
16. to conceal.
17. to detain.
18. to invite.
19. to work.
20. to teach.
21. to provide.
22. to look at.
23. to persuade.
24. to resound.
25. to fear.
26. to besiege.
27. to give.
28. to help.
29. to obtain.
30. to cut.
31. to weep.
32. to battle.
33. to frighten.
34. to hasten
35. to call together.
36. to check.
37. to accuse.
38. to arouse.
39. to increase.
40. to consult.
41. to favor.
42. to rouse.
43. to exercise.
44. to arm.
45. to rout.
46. to storm.
47. to keep from.
48. to praise.
49. to furnish.
50. to approve.
51. to wound.
52. to remain.
53. to see.
54. to stand.
55. to remove.
56. to forbid.
57. to hold.
58. to conquer.
59. to call.
60. to occupy.
61. arms.
62. child.
63. island.
64. eye.
65. God.
66. ally.
67. danger.
68. famous.
69. treachery.
70. broad.
71. captive.
72. ancient.
73. fate.
74. skilful.
75. camp.
76. girl.
77. messenger.
78. fortune.
79. response.
80. injury.
81. friendly.
82. money.
83. conference.
84. plan.
85. life.
86. fugitive.
87. forum.
88. nature.
89. people.
90. gold.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

122. Nouns of the Third Declension do not all have the same ending in the nominative singular.

A noun may end in **a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t,** or **x.**

RULES OF GENDER.

[According to the nominative endings.]

123. Masculine—Nouns ending in **ō, or, ōs, er,** and **es** (genitive **ĭdis, ĭtīs**).

EXCEPTIONS—Nouns in **do** and **go** are **feminine.**
Abstract nouns in **io** are **feminine.**
Collective nouns in **io** are **feminine.**

124. Feminine—Nouns ending in **as, aus, is**; also **es** (not increasing in the genitive), **s** after a consonant, and **us** (genitive **ūdis** or **ūtis**).

125. Neuter—Nouns ending in **a, c, l, i, e, n, t, us, ur, y, ar.**

126. CASE ENDINGS.

	For **Masc.** and **Fem.** nouns.		For **Neuter** nouns.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	. . . . .	. . **ēs (īs)**	. . . . .	. . **a** or **ia**
G.	. . **is**	. . **um** or **ium**	. . **is**	. . **um** or **ium**
D.	. . **ī**	. . **ibus**	. . **ī**	. . **ibus**
Ac.	. . **em (im)**	. . **ēs (īs)**	. . . . .	. . **a** or **ia**
Ab.	. . **e** or **ī**	. . **ibus**	. . **e** or **ī**	. . **ibus**

The endings in parentheses are not commonly used.

Concerning the double endings see articles 130, 133.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

127. Nouns of the Third Declension are usually classified according to their stems.

Class I.—**i Stems**
Class II.—**Mixed Stems**
Class III.—**Consonant Stems**

CLASS I.

128. The stem ends in **i** (nubes, *stem* **nubi**; mare, *stem* **mari.**) The stem may be found by dropping the **s** of the genitive singular.

129. To this class belong:

1. Nouns ending in **ēs, is** (not increasing in the gen.)
2. Neuters ending in **e, al, ar.**

130. Nouns of this class have **ī** in the *abl. sing.* and **ium** in the *gen. plur.*; also **ia** in the *nom.* and *acc. plur.* if the noun is neuter. (canis and juvenis have **um** in the *gen. plur.*)

CLASS II.

131. The stem ends in **i** (or a consonant.)
The stem may be found by taking **s** [or **is**] from the gen. sing.

132. To this class belong:

1. Monosyllabies in **s** and **x** after a consonant.
2. Nouns in **ns** and **rs** (except **parens.**)

Also **os,** ossis, *bone.*
mūs, mūris, *mouse.*
nix, nivis, *snow.*
nox, noctis, *night.*

133. Nouns of this class have **e** in the *abl. sing.* but **ium** in the *gen. plur.* and, if the noun is neuter, **ia** in the *nom.* and *acc. plur.*

CLASS III.

134. The stem ends in a **consonant.**
The stem may be found by taking **is** from the gen. sing.

135. To this class belong all nouns **not in Class I or Class II.**

136. Nouns of this class have **e** in the *abl. sing.*, **um** in the *gen. plur.*, and, if the noun is neuter, **a** in the *nom.* and *acc. plur.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

137. Giving a table of endings and showing the more common changes from the nominative form to the genitive form.

Nom. Case.	*Gen. Case.*	*Gender. (Usually)*	*Model.*	
....as	....atis	F.	aestas	aestatis
....es	....is	F.	nubes	nubis
	....idis	M.	obses	obsidis
	....itis	M.	miles	militis
	....edis	M.	pes	pedis
	....etis	M.	aries	arietis
....is	....is	F.	hostis	hostis
	....eris	M.	pulvis	pulveris
	....idis	M.	lapis	lapidis
....os	....oris	M.	mos	moris
	....otis	M.	sacerdos	sacerdotis
....us	....eris	N.	latus	lateris
	....oris	N.	corpus	corporis
	....udis	F.	laus	laudis
	....uris	N.	jus	juris
	....utis	F.	virtus	virtutis
....ut	....itis	N.	caput	capitis
....ax	....acis	F.	fax	facis
....ex	....icis	M.	judex	judicis
....ox	....ocis	F.	vox	vocis
....ux	....ucis	F.	dux	ducis
....o	....onis	M.	sermo	sermonis
....do	....dinis	F.	multitudo	multitudinis
....go	....ginis	F.	virgo	virginis
....en	....inis	N.	nomen	nominis
....ns	....ntis	M.	pons	pontis
....rs	....rtis	F.	cohors	cohortis
....s, ...e	drop and add is	F.	hiems	hiemis
		N.	mare	maris
....ar	merely	N.	calcar	calcaris
....er	add is	M.	agger	aggeris
....or		M.	auctor	auctoris
....ur		N.	fur	furis
....l		N.	animal	animalis

138. CHIEF EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULES, Pg. 70.

1. **aes,** aeris, aerī, aes, aere, N., *copper.*
2. **Apollō,** Apollinis, Apollinī, Apollinem, Apolline, M., *Apollo (a god).*
3. **bōs,** bovis, bovī, bovem, bove, C., *an ox or a cow.*
bovēs, bovum (boum), bōbus (būbus), bovēs, bōbus (būbus)
4. **carō,** carnis, carnī, carnem, carne, etc., F., *flesh, meat.*
5. **Cerēs,** Cereris, Cererī, Cererem, Cerere, F., *Ceres (a goddess)*
6. **conjunx,** conjugis, conjugī, conjugem, conjuge, C., *husband, wife.*
7. **cor,** cordis, cordī, cor, corde, etc., N., *the heart.*
8. **custōs,** custōdis, custōdī, custōdem, custōde, etc., C., *a guard.*
9. **ebur,** eboris, eborī, ebur, ebore, N., *ivory.*
10. **femur,** femoris, femorī, femur, femore, etc., N., *the thigh.*
11. **frōns,** frōndis, frōndī, frōndem, frōnde, etc., F., *the brow.*
12. **frūx,** frūgis, frūgī, frūgem, frūge, etc., F., *fruit.*
13. **glans,** glandis, glandī, glandem, glande, etc., F., *an acorn.*
14. **grex,** gregis, gregī, gregem, grege, etc., F., *flock, herd.*
15. **harpagō,** harpagōnis, harpagōnī, (abl. e), etc., M., *a grappling-hook.*
16. **hēros,** hērōis, hērōī, hērōem, hērōe, etc., M., *a hero.*
17. **homō,** hominis, hominī, hominem, homine, etc., M., *man.*
18. **iter,** itineris, itinerī, iter, itinere, etc., N., *a journey, way.*
19. **Jūppiter,** Jovis, Jovī, Jovem, Jove, M., *Jupiter (king of the gods.)*
20. **lēx,** lēgis, lēgī, lēgem, lēge, etc., F., *law.*
21. **ligō,** ligōnis, ligōnī, ligōnem, ligōne, etc., M., *a hoe.*
22. **mel,** mellis, mellī, mel, melle, etc., N., *honey.*
23. **Mīnos,** Mīnōis, Mīnōī, Mīnōem, Mīnōe, M., *Minos (a king).*
24. **nēmō,** nēminis, nēminī, nēminem, nēmine, etc., C., *no one.*
25. **nex,** necis, necī, necem, nece, etc., F., *a violent death.*
26. **nox,** noctis, noctī, noctem, nocte, etc., F., *night.*
27. **os,** ossis, ossī, os, osse, etc., N., *a bone.*
28. **pater,** patris, patrī, patrem, patre, etc., M., *father.*
29. **praedō,** praedōnis, praedōnī, praedōnem, praedōne, etc., M., *a plunderer.*
30. **rēmex,** rēmigis, rēmigī, rēmigem, rēmige, etc., M., *an oarsman.*
31. **rēx,** rēgis, rēgī, rēgem, rēge, etc., M., *a king.*
32. **rōbur,** rōboris, rōborī, rōbur, rōbore, etc., N., *an oak.*
33. **sanguis,** sanguinis, sanguinī, sanguinem, sanguine, etc., M., *blood.*
34. **senex,** senis, senī, senem, sene, etc., M., *old man.*
35. **September,** Septembris, Septembrī, Septembrem, Septembre, etc., M. *September.* So also with other months in er.
36. **Trōs,** Trōis, Trōī, Trōem, Trōe, etc., M., *a Trojan.*
37. **venter,** ventris, ventrī, ventrem, ventre, etc., M., *the belly.*
38. **vēr,** vēris, vērī, vēr, vēre, etc., N., *Spring.*
39. **vīs,** vīs, vī, vīm, vī; vīres, vīrium, etc., F., *strength.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

139. Nouns ending in as, es, is.

	Aestās, F. *summer.*	**Nubēs**, F. *cloud.*	**Ariēs**, M. *battering-ram.*	**Mīles**, M. *soldier.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.V.	aestās	nūbēs	ariēs	mīles
G.	aestāt**is**	nūb**is**	arietis	mīlitis
D.	aestātī	nūbī	arietī	mīlitī
Ac.	aestāt**em**	nūb**em**	arietem	mīlit**em**
Ab.	aestāte	nūbe	ariete	mīlite
		PLURAL.		
N.V.	aestātēs	nūbēs	arietēs	mīlitēs
G.	aestāt**um**	nūb**ium**	arietum	mīlit**um**
D.	aestāt**ibus**	nūb**ibus**	arietibus	mīlit**ibus**
Ac.	aestātēs	nūbēs (īs)	arietēs	mīlitēs
Ab.	aestāt**ibus**	nūb**ibus**	arietibus	mīlit**ibus**

	Pēs, M. *foot.*	**Hostis**, C. *enemy.*	**Pulvis**, M. *dust.*	**Lapis**, M. *stone.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.V.	pēs	hostis	pulvis	lapis
G.	ped**is**	host**is**	pulver**is**	lapid**is**
D.	pedī	hostī	pulverī	lapidī
Ac.	ped**em**	host**em**	pulver**em**	lapid**em**
Ab.	pede	hoste	pulvere	lapide
		PLURAL.		
N.V.	pedēs	hostēs	pulverēs	lapidēs
G.	ped**um**	host**ium**	pulver**um**	lapid**um**
D.	ped**ibus**	host**ibus**	pulver**ibus**	lapid**ibus**
Ac.	pedēs	hostēs (īs)	pulverēs	lapidēs
Ab.	ped**ibus**	host**ibus**	pulver**ibus**	lapid**ibus**

140. STUDY RULES OF SYNTAX 13, 25, 31, 32.
REVIEW RULES OF SYNTAX 16, 23, 26.

141. VOCABULARY.

DECLINE LIKE **aestās.**
[Consonant stems; see Art. 134.]

aetās F. *age.*
auctōritās, F. *influence.*
bonitās, F. *goodness.*
brevitās, F. *shortness.*
calamitās, F. *disaster.*
celeritās, F. *swiftness.*
cīvitās, F. *state.*
crūdēlitās, F. *cruelty.*
cupiditās, F. *eagerness.*
difficultās, F. *difficulty.*
dignitās, F. *worthiness.*
egestās, F. *poverty.*
facultās, F. *opportunity.*
gravitās, F. *importance.*
humilitās, F. *humility.*
lēnitās, F. *gentleness.*
levitās, F. *lightness.*
līberālitās, F. *generosity.*
lībertās, F. *freedom.*
necessitās, F. *necessity.*
nōbilitās, F. *nobility.*
novitās, F. *strangeness.*
pietās, F. *affection.*
potestās, F. *power.*
sevēritās, F. *severity.*
temeritās, F. *recklessness.*
tempestās, F. *storm.*
ūtilitās, F. *advantage.*
voluntās, F. *willingness.*
voluptās, F. *pleasure.*

DECLINE LIKE **mīles.**
[Consonant stems; see Art. 134.]

comes, C. *companion.*
eques, M. *horseman.*
hospes, M. *guest.*
pedes, C. *foot-soldier.*
stīpes, M. *trunk (of a tree).*

DECLINE LIKE **nūbēs.**
[i stems; see Art. 128.]

alcēs, F. *elk.*
caedēs, F. *slaughter.*
cautēs, F. *rock.*
crātēs, F. *hurdle.*
famēs, F. *hunger.*
mōlēs, F. *mass.*
rūpēs, F. *cliff.*
saepēs, F. *hedge.*
sēdēs, F. *abode.*
vallēs, F. *valley.*

DECLINE LIKE **hostis**
[i stems; see Art. 128.]

collis, (abl. **i, e**), M. *hill.*
fīnis, (abl. **i, e**), M. *end.*
ignis, (abl. **i, e**), M. *fire.*
mensis, (abl. **e**), M. *month.*
orbis, (abl. **e**), M. *circle.*
sentis, (abl. **e**), M. *briar.*
avis, (abl. **i, e**), F. *bird.*
classis, (abl. **e, i**) F. *fleet.*
nāvis, (acc. **im, em**), (abl. **i, e**), F. *ship.*
pellis, (abl. **e**), F. *hide*
puppis, (acc. **im, em**), (abl. **i**), F. *stern.*
ratis, (abl. **e**), F. *raft.*
turris, (acc. **im, em**), (abl. **i, e**), F. *tower.*
vestis, (abl. **e**), F. *clothing.*
cīvis, (abl. **i, e**), C. *citizen.*
testis, (abl. **e**), C. *witness.*

DECLINE LIKE **pulvis.**
[Consonant stems; see Art. 134.]

cinis, M. *ashes.*
cucumis, M. *cucumber.*
vōmis, M. *plough-share.*

DECLINE LIKE **ariēs.**

[Consonant stems; see Art. 134.]

abiēs,	F. *fir-tree.*	**interpres,**	C. *mediator.*
paries,	M. *(house-)wall.*	**quiēs,**	F. *rest.*
seges,	F. *crop (of grain).*		

EXERCISES.

142. **1.** Equites per vallem magna celeritate acceleraverunt. **2.** Segetes tempestate delebantur. **3.** Legatus in esseda comitem habet. **4.** Cupiditas comitum a viro laudatur. **5.** Nonne abietes sunt in valle? **6.** Ignis magnum numerum navium deleverat. **7.** Viri in puppi navis milites viderunt. **8.** Quies pedites defessos recreabit. **9.** Classis hostium ab oppidanis videtur. **10.** Oppidum arietibus magnis oppugnabimus.

143. **1.** The storm has destroyed the ships of the enemy. **2.** The citizens will hold the town against the enemy. **3.** The generosity of the horseman has been praised by his companions. **4.** The slaughter of the foot-soldiers will be checked by the horsemen. **5.** The soldiers stood on a hill near the town. **6.** The trunk of the fir-tree had been destroyed by fire. **7.** The state is furnishing many soldiers for the war. **8.** A mass of ashes remained after the fire. **9.** The horsemen had given great pleasure to the children. **10.** The fleet will have been built with great difficulty.

144. **1.** Oppidum non obsidebimus propter bonitatem civium. **2.** Equites in nube pulveris celabantur. **3.** Videsne tempestatem in valle? **4.** Cives cum difficultate militibus persuadent. **5.** Lenitas militum a civibus laudata est. **6.** Stabimus in rupe atque pugnam spectabimus. **7.** In aestate valles est pulchra. **8.** Cives necessitatem classis viderunt. **9.** Miles ignem in colle spectabat. **10.** Segetes ex vallibus in oppidum removentur.

EXERCISES.

145. 1. The power of the enemy was seen by the citizens. 2. The nobility of the state had invited the men. 3. Fire is destroying the hedges and the crops. 4. Will not rest refresh the tired horsemen? 5. The swiftness of the horsemen will be feared by the messenger. 6. We shall give clothing to the companion of the man. 7. In the valley were many soldiers. 8. The man held the power in the state. 9. The eagerness of the soldiers has been praised by the citizens. 10. The willingness of the boys gave pleasure to the guest.

146. 1. Miles ariete vulneratus erat. 2. Nonne turris est magna altaque? 3. Servi in oppido a civibus armabantur. 4. Vir avi libertatem dabit. 5. Temeritas amicorum militibus non placuit. 6. Servus in colle prope turrim stat. 7. Classis Romanorum hostes superabit. 8. Agricolae ignem propter segetes timent. 9. Cives cum difficultate oppidum tenent. 10. Dabimus cibum vestesque militibus miseris.

147. 1. The sailors are standing on the stern of the ship. 2. Has not the man great influence in the town? 3. The crops will be removed from the fields. 4. The men in the town fear fire. 5. The townsmen owe their lives to the swiftness of the horsemen. 6. The town had been besieged with battering-rams. 7. The tower had been destroyed by fire. 8. Are there good crops on the hills? 9. They are concealing the food under the cliff. 10. The soldiers had been detained by a great disaster.

148. THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns ending in **os, us, ut.**

	Mōs, M. *custom.*	**Sacerdōs**, C. *priest.*	**Latus**, N. *side.*	**Corpus**, N. *body.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.V.	mōs	sacerdōs	latus	corpus
G.	mōris	sacerdōtis	lateris	corporis
D.	mōrī	sacerdōtī	laterī	corporī
Ac.	mōrem	sacerdōtem	latus	corpus
Ab.	mōre	sacerdōte	latere	corpore
		PLURAL.		
N.V.	mōrēs	sacerdōtēs	latera	corpora
G.	mōrum	sacerdōtum	laterum	corporum
D.	mōribus	sacerdōtibus	lateribus	corporibus
Ac.	mōrēs	sacerdōtēs	latera	corpora
Ab.	mōribus	sacerdōtibus	lateribus	corporibus

	Laus, F. *praise.*	**Virtūs**, F. *virtue.*	**Jūs**, N. *right.*	**Caput**, N. *head.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.V.	laus	virtūs	jūs	caput
G.	laudis	virtūtis	jūris	capitis
D.	laudī	virtūtī	jūrī	capitī
Ac.	laudem	virtūtem	jūs	caput
Ab.	laude	virtūte	jūre	capite
		PLURAL.		
N.V.	laudes	virtūtes	jūra	capita
G.	laudum	virtūtum	jūrum	capitum
D.	laudibus	virtūtibus	jūribus	capitibus
Ac.	laudēs	virtūtēs	jūra	capita
Ab.	laudibus	virtūtibus	jūribus	capitibus

149. REVIEW RULES OF SYNTAX 10, 15, 28.

150. VOCABULARY.

DECLINE LIKE **latus.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

foedus,	N.	*treaty.*
fūnus,	N.	*funeral.*
genus,	N.	*tribe.*
latus,	N.	*side.*
mūnus,	N.	*share.*
onus,	N.	*burden.*
opus,	N.	*work.*
pondus,	N.	*weight.*
scelus,	N.	*wickedness.*
sīdus,	N.	*star.*
vulnus,	N.	*wound.*

DECLINE LIKE **virtus**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134]

juventūs,	F.	*youth.*
salūs,	F.	*safety.*
servitūs,	F.	*slavery.*
virtūs,	F.	*courage.*

DECLINE LIKE **mōs.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134]

flos,	M.	*flower.*
mōs,	M.	*custom.*
ōs,	M.	*face.*

DECLINE LIKE **corpus.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

corpus,	N.	*body.*
decus,	N.	*glory.*
facimus,	N.	*deed.*
frīgus,	N.	*cold.*
lepus,	M.	*hare.*
līttus	N.	*shore.*
pectus,	N.	*breast.*
pecus,	N.	*cattle.*
tempus,	N.	*time.*

DECLINE LIKE **laus.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

fraus,	F	*deceit.*
laus,	F.	*praise.*
palūs,	F.	*marsh.*

DECLINE LIKE **sacerdōs.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

dōs,	F.	*dowry.*
sarcerdōs,	C.	*priest.*

DECLINE LIKE **jūs.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

crūs,	N.	*leg.*
jūs,	N.	*justice.*
jūs jūrandum,	N.	*oath.*

jūris jūrandī,

etc., etc.

---

bōs, bovis, etc., C., *cow, ox.*

PLURAL: **boves, bovum** (boum), **bōbus** (būbus), **boves, bōbus** (būbus).

cor, cordis, etc., N., *heart.*

custōs, custōdis, etc., C., *guard.*

EXERCISES.

151. 1. Milites liberos in locum salutis removebant. 2. Custos pilo vulneratus est. 3. Dabimus viro munus cibi. 4. Sacerdotes milites propter virtutem laudaverunt. 5. Nonne custodes civibus turrem tenent? 6. Magnus numerus bovum est in agris. 7. Equites cum telis ad litus accelerabunt. 8. Pueri propter periculum in turrim conlocati erant. 9. Hostes fraude a Romanis superati sunt. 10. Eques pro patria pugnabat.

152. 1. The boy is keeping the cattle from the marshes. 2. The priests had been aroused by the evil deed of the man. 3. The soldiers have placed the camp on the shore. 4. The face of the priest was wounded by an arrow. 5. The horsemen will fight for glory. 6. The children have many beautiful flowers. 7. A share of the booty will be given to the guards. 8. The priests kept silent on account of their oath. 9. The boy has wounded the hare with a stone. 10. The courage of the guards pleases the men.

153. 1. Debemus salutem virtuti equitis. 2. Sacerdotes telis custodum vulnerabantur. 3. Prope litus sunt multae paludes. 4. Corpora militum pone vallum celabuntur. 5. Sacerdos custodem contra scelus viri monet. 6. Equi multa onera portabant. 7. Vir liberis multos flores dederat. 8. Liberi in litore cum sacerdote remanserunt. 9. Populus propter fraudem legati commovetur. 10. Flores in paludibus tempore delebuntur.

EXERCISES.

154. 1. The body of the soldier was removed from the camp. 2. Did you not see the deceit of the man? 3. The priest will obtain justice for the tribe. 4. We have seen the great work of the men. 5. The guard was wounded in the breast. 6. The courage of the priest will check the wickedness of the citizens. 7. The flowers will be destroyed by the cold. 8. The cattle are carrying the burdens. 9. The priests owe safety to the quickness of the guard. 10. The courage of the boy was roused by the priest's words.

155. 1. Laus sacerdotis puero placet. 2. Equites sine fraude custodes superabunt. 3. Vulnera custodis erant multa magnaque. 4. Nonne sunt flores in litore? 5. Vir miser dono florum placitus est. 6. Verba sacerdotis virtutem custodum excitaverant. 7. Onera atque opus servis remanebant. 8. Vir in pectore crureque vulneratus erat. 9. Agricolae boves atque equos in agris habent. 10. Munus praedae sacerdotibus dabitur.

156. 1. We shall watch the soldiers on the shore. 2. The boy was wounded in the head with a javelin. 3. The words of the priest have roused the courage of the citizens. 4. Is there not work for both the men and the boys? 5. The children had been removed to a place of safety. 6. The flowers were cut and placed on the table. 7. A share of the burdens will be carried by the horses. 8. The enemy feared the guards on the shore. 9. The cows are standing in the marshes. 10. The soldier had been wounded in the head and the body.

157. THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns ending in **ux, ex, ox, o, do, go, en.**

	Dux, C. *leader.*	**Rēx**, M. *king.*	**Jūdex**, M. *judge.*	**Sermō**, M. *conversation.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.V.	dux	rēx	jūdex	sermō
G.	duc**is**	rēg**is**	jūdic**is**	sermōn**is**
D.	duc**ī**	rēg**ī**	jūdic**ī**	sermōn**ī**
Ac.	duc**em**	rēg**em**	jūdic**em**	sermōn**em**
Ab.	duc**e**	rēg**e**	jūdic**e**	sermōn**e**
		PLURAL.		
N.V.	duc**ēs**	rēg**ēs**	jūdic**ēs**	sermōn**ēs**
G.	duc**um**	rēg**um**	jūdic**um**	sermōn**um**
D.	duc**ibus**	rēg**ibus**	jūdic**ibus**	sermōn**ibus**
Ac.	duc**ēs**	rēg**ēs**	jūdic**ēs**	sermōn**es**
Ab.	duc**ibus**	rēg**ibus**	jūdic**ibus**	sermōn**ibus**

	Legiō, F. *legion.*	**Multitūdo**, F. *multitude.*	**Virgō**, F. *maiden.*	**Nōmen**, N. *name.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.V.	legiō	multitūdō	virgō	nōmen
G.	legiōn**is**	multitūdin**is**	virgin**is**	nōmin**is**
D.	legiōn**ī**	multitūdin**ī**	virgin**ī**	nōmin**ī**
Ac.	legiōn**em**	multitūdin**em**	virgin**em**	nōmen
Ab.	legiōn**e**	multitūdin**e**	virgin**e**	nōmin**e**
		PLURAL.		
N.V.	legiōn**ēs**	multitūdin**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	nōmin**a**
G.	legiōn**um**	multitūdin**um**	virgin**um**	nōmin**um**
D.	legiōn**ibus**	multitūdin**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	nōmin**ibus**
Ac.	legiōn**ēs**	multitūdin**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	nōmin**a**
Ab.	legiōn**ibus**	multitūdin**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	nōmin**ibus**

158. REVIEW RULES OF SYNTAX 9, 16, 28, 31.

159. VOCABULARY.

DECLINE LIKE **dux.**

[See Arts. 131 and 134.]

arx (Gen. Plur. **ium**), F., *fortress*
falx (Gen. Plur. **ium**), F. *hook.*
fax, F. *torch.*
lūx, F. *light.*
nex, F. *death.*
pāx, F. *peace.*
pix, F. *pitch.*
prex, F. *prayer.*
rādīx, F. *root.*
vox, F. *voice.*

DECLINE LIKE **sermō.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

cālō, M. *camp-follower.*
Cicerō, M. *Cicero.*
latrō, M. *robber.*

DECLINE LIKE **legiō.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

centuriō M. *centurion.*
conditiō, F. *condition.*
conjūrātiō, F. *conspiracy.*
contentiō, F. *dispute.*
dēditiō, F. *surrender.*
dictiō, F. *a pleading.*
dubitātiō, F. *doubt.*
ēruptiō, F. *sally.*
lēgātiō, F. *embassy.*
nātiō, F. *nation.*
opīniō, F. *opinion.*
orātiō, F. *oration.*
ratiō, F. *plan.*
reditiō, F. *return.*
regiō, F. *region.*

DECLINE LIKE **rēx.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

conjūnx, F. *wife.*
frūx, F. *fruit.*
lēx, F. *law.*
phalanx, F. *phalanx.*
rēmex, M. *rower.*

DECLINE LIKE **judex.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

cortex M. *bark (of a tree).*
supplex, C. *suppliant.*

DECLINE LIKE **nōmen.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

agmen, N. *line (of march).*
cacūmen, N. *top.*
certāmen, N. *struggle.*
crīmen, N. *crime.*
culmen, N. *summit.*
discrīmen, N. *crisis.*
flūmen, N. *river.*
nōmen, N. *name.*
nūmen, N. *will.*
vīmen, N. *twig.*

DECLINE LIKE **multitūdo.**

[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

altitūdō, F. *height, depth.*
consuētūdō, F. *custom.*
fortitūdō, F. *bravery.*
lātitūdō, F. *width.*
longitūdō, F. *length.*
māgnitūdō, F. *great size.*
ōrdō, M. *order.*
sōlitūdō, F. *loneliness.*
testūdō, F. *testudo.*
turpitūdō, F. *baseness.*

carō, carnis, etc., F., *flesh, meat.*
harpagō, harpagōnis, etc., M., *grappling iron.*
homō, hominis, etc., C., *man.*
nēmō, nēminis, etc., C., *no one.*
nix, nivis, etc, (Gen. Plur. **ium**), F., *snow.*
nox, noctis, etc., (Gen. Plur. **ium**), F., *night.*
senex senis, etc., M., *old man.*

EXERCISES.

160. **1.** Legiones centurionis in foro stabant. **2.** Latrones praedam multam ultra flumen celaverant. **3.** Lux facis a milite videbatur. **4.** Rex de legibus judicem consultavit. **5.** Certamen longum legionum cum hostibus a duce spectatur. **6.** Nemo senem prope arcem viderat. **7.** Solitudo regionis latrones terruit. **8.** Multa nix in cacumine montis remanet. **9.** Cicero in foro Romano orationem longam habuit. **10.** Deditio hostium ducibus legionum Romanarum placuit.

161. **1.** The man will remain with the soldiers across the river. **2.** The townsmen obtained peace through the prayers of the women. **3.** The snow was not removed from the top of the fortress. **4.** The old man has frightened the robbers. **5.** The voice of the centurion resounded through the camp. **6.** The bravery of the camp-followers pleased the general. **7.** In the night the leader had stayed with the men at the summit of the hill. **8.** The people had a good opinion concerning Cicero. **9.** The phalanx is standing behind the fortress. **10.** The laws of the king forbid crime.

162. **1.** Oppidum numine regis delebitur. **2.** Timeo solitudinem loci atque magnitudinem montis. **3.** Nocte portae oppidi a rege oppugnabantur. **4.** Senes cibum per conjuges obtinebunt. **5.** Milites calonibus frugem multam dederunt. **6.** Opinio judicis boni homini placet. **7.** Dux cum legionibus regionem ultra flumen possidet. **8.** Hostes propter magnitudinem arcis terrebantur. **9.** Magna voce nuntius responsum regis enuntiabit. **10.** Rex cum ducibus sermonem longum habuerat.

EXERCISES.

163. 1. Are there many old men in the town? 2. No one warned the leader about the conspiracy. 3. The condition of the surrender will be approved by the enemy. 4. A large number of torches had been given to the camp-followers. 5. The river had great width but little depth. 6. The torches are not giving much light to the men. 7. No one had been wounded in the struggle. 8. The centurion had hastened to the fortress with the old men. 9. The baseness of the man roused the people. 10. The centurion had a long conversation with the old man.

164. 1. Homines magnis cultris corticem secuerunt. 2. Legatio a rege in arce detinetur. 3. Nonne faces armaque sunt in castris? 4. Conjuratio a centurionibus atque legionibus regis cogitatur. 5. Calones propter necem senis flebant. 6. Dux hostes in conditione servitutis tenebit. 7. Senesne centurionem atque legiones videbant? 8. Dux legiones extra arcem exercibit. 9. Homo prope flumen stabat atque remiges spectabat. 10. Homines in litore fluminis certamen spectant.

165. 1. On account of the width of the river the legion was detained. 2. The ship has many rowers. 3. We shall remain near the summit of the hill. 4. The name of the old man was announced. 5. In a long conversation the leader had praised the legions. 6. We shall wound a multitude of the enemy. 7. The name of the ambassador was announced to the centurion. 8. The people of the town were helped by the laws. 9. The soldiers had their wives in the camp. 10. Many soldiers of Caesar's legion were wounded with arrows.

166. THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns ending in
ns, rs, s, e, ar, er, ir, or, ur, l.

	Orātor, M. *orator.*	**Cohors**, F. *cohort.*	**Hiems**, F. *winter.*	**Mare**, N. *sea.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.V.	ōrātor	cohors	hiems	mare
G.	ōrātōris	cohortis	hiemis	maris
D.	ōrātōrī	cohortī	hiemī	marī
Ac.	ōrātōrem	cohortem	hiemem	mare
Ab.	ōrātōre	cohorte	hieme	marī
		PLURAL.		
N.V.	ōrātōrēs	cohortēs	hiemēs	maria
G.	ōrātōrum	cohortium	hiemum	marium
D.	ōrātōribus	cohortibus	hiemibus	maribus
Ac.	ōrātōrēs	cohortēs	hiemēs	maria
Ab.	ōrātōribus	cohortibus	hiemibus	maribus

	Calcar, N. *spur.*	**Cōnsul**, M. *consul.*	**Pater**, M. *father.*	**Mulier**, F. *woman.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.V.	calcar	cōnsul	pater	mulier
G.	calcāris	cōnsulis	patris	mulieris
D.	calcārī	cōnsulī	patrī	mulierī
Ac.	calcar	cōnsulem	patrem	mulierem
Ab.	calcārī	cōnsule	patre	muliere
		PLURAL.		
N.V.	calcāria	cōnsulēs	patrēs	mulierēs
G.	calcārium	cōnsulum	patrum	mulierum
D.	calcāribus	cōnsulibus	patribus	mulieribus
Ac.	calcāria	cōnsulēs	patrēs	mulierēs
Ab.	calcāribus	cōnsulibus	patribus	mulieribus

167. REVIEW RULES OF SYNTAX 13, 23, 32.

168. VOCABULARY.

DECLINE LIKE **ōrātor.**
[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

arbor,	F.	*tree.*
clāmor,	M.	*outcry.*
dēfēnsor,	M.	*defender.*
dēsertor.	M.	*deserter.*
explōrātor,	M.	*scout.*
furor,	M.	*rage.*
honor,	M.	*honor.*
imperātor,	M.	*general.*
labor,	M.	*work.*
mercātor,	M.	*merchant.*
ōrātor,	M.	*orator.*
praetor,	M.	*praetor.*
rūmor,	M.	*rumor.*
senātor,	M.	*senator.*
terror,	M.	*terror.*
timor,	M.	*fear.*
uxor,	F.	*wife.*
victor,	M.	*victor.*

DECLINE LIKE **hiems.**

hiems,	F.	*winter.*
plēbs,	F.	*populace.*
stirps (Gen. Plur. **ium**),	F.	*stock* (*race*).
trabs,	F.	*timber.*
urbs (Gen. Plur. **ium**),	F.	*city.*

DECLINE LIKE **cōnsul.**

animal (see Art. 129),	N.	*animal.*
exsul,	C.	*exile.*
prōcōnsul,	M.	*proconsul.*
sōl,	M.	*sun.*
vectīgal (see Art. 129.)	N.	*revenue.*

DECLINE LIKE **cohors.**
[Mixed Stems see Art. 131.]

adulēscēns,	M.	*youth.*
ars,	F.	*skill.*
cliēns,	C.	*vassal.*
cohors,	F.	*cohort.*
dēns,	M.	*tooth.*
fōns,	M.	*fountain.*
fors,	F.	*chance.*
frōns,	F.	*brow.*
gēns,	F.	*tribe.*
īnfāns,	C.	*infant.*
Mārs,	M.	*Mars.*
mēns,	F.	*mind.*
mōns,	M.	*mountain.*
mors,	F.	*death.*
parēns (Gen. Plur. **um**),	C.	*parent.*
pars,	F.	*part.*
pōns,	M.	*bridge.*
sors,	F.	*lot.*

DECLINE LIKE **pater.**

frāter,	M.	*brother.*
imber, (i stem),	M.	*storm* (*rain*).
linter (i stem)	F.	*skiff.*
māter,	F.	*mother.*
pater,	M.	*father.*

DECLINE LIKE **mulier.**
[Consonant Stems; see Art. 134.]

agger,	M.	*mound.*
ānser,	M.	*goose.*
cadāver,	N.	*corpse.*
mulier,	F.	*woman.*
vēr,	N	*Spring.*

Caesar, Caesaris, etc., M., *Caesar.*
femur, femoris, etc., N., *thigh.*
glāns, glandis, etc., F., *gland.*
Juppiter, Jovis, etc., M., *Jupiter.*
moenia, moenium, etc., N., (Plur.) *fortifications.*
prīnceps, prīncipis, etc., M., *chief.*
rōbur, rōboris, etc., N., *oak.*

EXERCISES.

169. 1. Principes gentium contra imperatorem Romanum pugnant. 2. In vere pons flumine deletus est. 3. Pars legionis erat in latere montis. 4. Consul magnum furorem plebis spectabat. 5. Clamore magno defensores cohortes terrebant. 6. Pulchrae arbores urbis tempestate delebuntur. 7. Cadaver praetoris ex urbe removetur. 8. Mulieres propter mortem hominum flent. 9. Nonne adulescentes a hostibus vulnerati sunt? 10. Fontes urbis civibus aquam praebebunt.

170. 1. They have built a large bridge over the river. 2. In Spring the trees have many leaves. 3. The defenders had held the city of the king. 4. The chief of the state was planning a conspiracy. 5. The exiles have been called together by the deserters. 6. The father of the youth will be persuaded. 7. The victor had conquered on account of his great skill. 8. The people of the city have been frightened by rumors of war. 9. Are not the fortifications large and high? 10. A part of the cohort is destroying the bridge.

171. 1. Mercatores consuli senatoribusque honorem magnum dabunt. 2. Vere lux solis avibus placet. 3. Defensores urbis a victore superati erant. 4. Pater puero equum dedit. 5. Mens parentis propter periculum filii commovebatur. 6. Urbs fuit labor multitudinis hominum. 7. Caesar exploratoribus victoriam debuit. 8. Cum auxilio Jovis Romani fuerunt victores. 9. Imperator cum cohortibus in urbe erat. 10. Terror mulierum clamoribus militum augetur.

EXERCISES.

172. 1. The general was praised by the consul. 2. The brother of the man had seen many animals in the mountains. 3. The senators will be called together by Caesar. 4. Caesar's cohorts are storming the city. 5. We shall fight against the cohorts of the Roman general. 6. By chance a part of the legion was detained in the town. 7. The general has held the revenues of the province. 8. The merchants in the ship were aroused by the storm. 9. Was not the oak destroyed by the wind? 10. The soldiers had frightened the scouts with the outcry.

173. 1. Exploratores inter arbores silvae videbantur. 2. Mors consulis plebem commovit. 3. Mentes militum contra ducem verbis consulis agitabuntur. 4. Animalia in litore fluminis decertabant. 5. Cives in nova parte urbis fontem conlocabunt. 6. Clamor hostium cohortes imperatoris Romani terruit. 7. Cives regi vectigalia magna debent. 8. Argentum multum militibus a uxore regis datum erat. 9. Sol arboribus floribusque lucem praebet. 10. Pontem longum trans flumen aedificabunt.

174. 1. The trees in the city do not have fruit. 2. The timber of the bridge was good and strong. 3. The light of the sun will be pleasing to the sick woman. 4. The mountains behind the city are high and beautiful. 5. The woman wept on account of the death of the consul. 6. A rumor of war agitated the populace. 7. The exiles had been helped by the scout. 8. A skiff has been built by the boy's father. 9. In winter the storms destroyed the trees and the bridges. 10. The cohorts of the Roman general did not fear death.

175. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the meaning of each of the following words.

Give the declension and gender of each noun.

1. legiō
2. tempus
3. prīnceps
4. homō
5. eques
6. crūs
7. centuriō
8. imperātor
9. palūs
10. pōns
11. difficultās
12. regiō
13. corpus
14. seges
15. cupiditās
16. fōns
17. jūdex
18. pedes
19. vectīgal
20. mīles
21. puppis
22. clāmor
23. culmen
24. sacerdōs
25. senex
26. īgnis
27. flōs
28. rēmex
29. māgnitūdō
30. iter
31. ariēs
32. cohors
33. bonitās
34. lūx
35. uxor
36. lītus
37. nūbēs
38. flūmen
39. pulvis
40. nix
41. scelus
42. tempestās
43. pars
44. turris
45. celeritās
46. avis
47. abiēs
48. certāmen
49. mulier
50. cīvis
51. sermō
52. salūs
53. comes
54. nox
55. aestās
56. custōs
57. nāvis
58. ōrātiō
59. frūx
60. mēns
61. clāssis
62. fax
63. mors
64. hostis
65. pectus
66. collis
67. servitūs
68. fraus
69. nex
70. opus
71. latrō
72. bōs
73. lēnitās
74. latus
75. onus
76. rūpēs
77. rēx
78. arbor
79. urbs
80. lībertās
81. mūnus
82. vōx
83. vallēs
84. explōrātor
85. necēssitās
86. dux
87. mercātor
88. virtūs
89. nūmen
90. sōl

176. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the Latin form for each of the following words.

1. rower
2. region
3. fire
4. cow
5. flower
6. gentleness
7. foot-man
8. burden
9. battering-ram
10. king
11. leader
12. fountain
13. woman
14. night
15. top
16. light
17. consul
18. struggle
19. will
20. difficulty
21. torch
22. legion
23. liberty
24. tower
25. centurion
26. fruit
27. crime
28. hill
29. general
30. slavery
31. body
32. citizen
33. populace
34. crop
35. death
36. fraud
37. judge
38. side
39. river
40. cohort
41. cliff
42. revenue
43. spy
44. wife
45. merchant
46. quickness
47. virtue
48. sun
49. fir-tree
50. chief
51. guard
52. death
53. time
54. share
55. dust
56. city
57. swamp
58. voice
59. mind
60. snow
61. magnitude
62. conversation
63. way
64. priest
65. companion
66. old man
67. robber
68. eagerness
69. work
70. goodness
71. tree
72. soldier
73. shore
74. cloud
75. outcry
76. bird
77. summer
78. necessity
79. ship
80. man
81. fleet
82. enemy
83. horseman
84. storm
85. part
86. leg
87. oration
88. breast
89. bridge
90. valley

ADJECTIVES.

177. Many adjectives are declined with the endings of the third declension.

178. **Ācer**, *keen, eager.*
(STEM **ācri-**)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, (īs)	ācrēs, (īs)	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

179. Adjectives like **acer** have *three distinct forms* in the *nominative singular* and are, therefore, called **adjectives of three terminations.**

180. **Levis**, *light, nimble.*
(STEM **levi-**)

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	levis	leve	levēs	levia
G.	levis	levis	levium	levium
D.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus
Ac.	levem	leve	levēs, (īs)	levia
Ab.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus

181. Adjectives like **levis** have the *nominative singular, masculine* and *feminine alike* [and are alike throughout]. Therefore they are called **adjectives of two terminations.**

182. **Audāx**, *bold.*
(STEM **audāc-**)

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
G.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
D.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Ac.	audācem	audāx	audācēs, (īs)	audācia
Ab.	audācī, (e)	audācī, (e)	audācibus	audācibus

183. Adjectives like **audax** have the *nominative singular, masculine, feminine* and *neuter alike.* Hence they are called **adjectives of one termination.**

184. VOCABULARY.

DECLINE LIKE **ācer.**
[i Stems.]

ācer (ācr-)*, *keen.*
alacer, (alacr-), *eager.*
campester, (campestr-), *level.*
celeber (celebr-), *celebrated.*
equester (equestr-), *equestrian.*
palūster (palūstr-), *marshy.*
pedester (pedestr-), *infantry.*
silvester (silvestr-), *woody.*
volucer (volucr-), *rapid.*
celer (retains e), *swift.*

DECLINE LIKE **audāx.**
[Consonant Stems.]

audāx (audāc-), *bold.*
clēmens (clēment-), *merciful.*
dīves (dīvit-), *rich.*
ingēns (ingent-), *huge.*
innocēns (innocent-), *innocent.*
īnsciēns (īnscient-), *unaware.*
potēns (potent-), *powerful.*
recēns (recent-), *recent.*
vēlox (vēlōc-), *swift.*
vetus (veter-), *old.*

DECLINE LIKE **levis.**
[i Stems.]

brevis, *short.*
commūnis, *common.*
crūdēlis, *cruel.*
difficilis, *difficult.*
facilis, *easy.*
fidēlis, *faithful.*
fortis, *brave.*
grandis, *large.*
gravis, *heavy.*
humilis, *low.*
īnsīgnis, *memorable.*
lēnis, *gentle.*
mīlitāris, *military.*
nāvālis, *naval.*
nobilis, *noble.*
omnis, *all.*
similis, *similar.*
singulāris, *extraordinary.*
tristis, *sad.*
turpis, *base.*
ūtilis, *useful.*
vectīgālis, *tributary.*

185. REMARKS.

Adjectives like **acer** and **levis** are **i** stems.

Adjectives like **audax** are **consonant** stems, but they have **i, e** (abl. sing.) **ia** (neut. plur. N. Acc. and Voc.) and **ium** (gen. plur.)

Dives, *rich*, has the **i** only in the **neuter, plur. acc.**

Vetus, *old*, is entirely a consonant stem.†

---

* The **base** of the adjective.

† The following adjectives are consonant stems: **compos** [compot-] *controlling;* **particeps** [particip-] *sharing;* **pauper** [pauper-] *poor;* **princeps** [princip-] *chief;* **sospes** [sospit-] *safe;* **superstes** [susperstit-] *surviving.*

EXERCISES.

186. **1.** Audaces latrones oppidum vetus prope flumen obsederunt. **2.** Arbor ingens in recenti tempestate deleta est. **3.** Magnus numerus civium divum regi dona dabit. **4.** Multi nautae in navali pugna vulnerabantur. **5.** Turpes desertores in silvestribus locis remanent. **6.** Omnes naves sociorum Romanos in pugna difficili juvabunt. **7.** Liberi innocentes a magistro bono moniti erant. **8.** Hominesne sunt tristes propter mortem imperatoris fidelis? **9.** Caesar cum hostibus fortibus proelium breve pugnavit. **10.** Rex omnibus senatoribus nobilibus dona dederat. **11.** Equites celeres tela hostium crudelium non timent. **12.** Tectum arcis veteris est humile. **13.** Exploratores in locis palustribus arma celeverunt. **14.** Fons celeber erat in oppido veteris provinciae.

187. **1.** The powerful king will increase the number of his equestrian soldiers. **2.** Many rich men were praised by the general on account of their liberality. **3.** A naval battle has been fought with a brave and bold enemy. **4.** The ships of all the allies will besiege the old town. **5.** The noble general has exercised all the soldiers. **6.** The gift of the faithful citizens was pleasing to the old king. **7.** The sad messenger is announcing the cruel death of the spy. **8.** The birds flew with rapid wings into the woody region. **9.** In a short time the quick soldiers had concealed the arms. **10.** The powerful chiefs of the state were cruel men. **11.** The base deserters will not be helped by the faithful allies. **12.** Have the recent storms detained the Roman soldiers? **13.** They are giving food and water to all the sick men. **14.** The king will arm the faithful guards with swords.

EXERCISES.

188. 1. Fortis dux equitum a populo Romano laudatus est. 2. Imperator clemens principes hostium convocabit. 3. Homo innocens a mercatore turpi accusatur. 4. Aestate pugna insignis cum Romanis pugnata erat. 5. Omnes civitates vectigales Romae remanserunt. 6. Oppidani omnia communia habebant. 7. Potens lux solis pulchros flores juvat. 8. Tempestas recens difficultates itineris auxit. 9. Nocte insigni hostes audaces urbem oppugnaverant. 10. Trans flumen latum pontem grandem aedificabimus. 11. Nonne hostes a victore clementi pacem obtinuerunt? 12. Pugnam navalem in volucri flumine pugnabant. 13. Regis comes fidelis essedam similem habet. 14. Socii fideles Romanis naves veloces providebunt.

189. 1. The brave horsemen have routed the fierce enemy. 2. We shall fight a naval battle with the powerful Barbarians. 3. All the ships had been destroyed by the great storm. 4. There is an old fortress on the bank of the swift river. 5. The base judge fears the anger of the noble man. 6. A great multitude of innocent children was wounded in the cruel war. 7. The rich citizens of the city will be faithful to the king. 8. Well-known trees have been destroyed in the recent tempest. 9. The noble senators are influential in the city. 10. The boys are carrying light burdens. 11. There remained an old bridge across the wide river. 12. The men fought a keen battle with the bold robbers. 13. The messenger of the king has invited the faithful citizens. 14. The leader is sad on account of the death of a useful companion.

190. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Ĕ-VERBS.

Regō (root **reg**), *to rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
PRESENT.	
regō, *I rule* (*am ruling, do rule*).	**regor,** *I am ruled* (*am being ruled*)
regis, *thou rulest.*	**regeris (-re),** *thou art ruled.*
regit, *he rules.*	**regitur,** *he is ruled.*
regimus, *we rule.*	**regimur,** *we are ruled.*
regitis, *you rule.*	**regiminī,** *you are ruled.*
regunt, *they rule.*	**reguntur,** *they are ruled.*
IMPERFECT.	
regēbam, *I ruled* (*was ruling*).	**regēbar,** *I was ruled.*
regēbās, *thou ruledst.*	**regēbāris (-re),** *thou wast ruled.*
regēbat, *he ruled.*	**regēbātur,** *he was ruled.*
regēbāmus, *we ruled.*	**regēbāmur,** *we were ruled.*
regēbātis, *you ruled.*	**regēbāminī,** *you were ruled.*
regēbant, *they ruled.*	**regēbantur,** *they were ruled.*
FUTURE.	
regam, *I shall rule.*	**regar,** *I shall be ruled.*
regēs, *thou wilt rule.*	**regēris (-re),** *thou wilt be ruled.*
reget, *he will rule.*	**regētur,** *he will be ruled.*
regēmus, *we shall rule.*	**regēmur,** *we shall be ruled.*
regētis, *you will rule.*	**regēminī,** *you will be ruled.*
regent, *they will rule.*	**regentur,** *they will be ruled.*
PERFECT.	
rēxī, *I have ruled.*	**rēctus -a, -um,** **sum,** *I have been ruled.*
rēxistī, *thou hast ruled.*	**rēctus -a, -um,** **es,** *thou hast been ruled.*
rēxit, *he has ruled.*	**rēctus -a, -um,** **est,** *he has been ruled.*
rēximus, *we have ruled.*	**rēctī -ae, -a,** **sumus,** *we have been ruled.*
rēxistis, *you have ruled.*	**rēctī -ae, -a,** **estis,** *you have been ruled.*
rēxērunt (-re), *they have ruled.*	**rēctī -ae, -a,** **sunt,** *they have been ruled.*

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT.

rēxeram, *I had ruled.*	rēctus	eram, *I had been ruled.*
rēxerās, *thou hadst ruled.*	-a, -um,	erās, *thou hadst been ruled.*
rēxerat, *he had ruled.*		erat, *he had been ruled.*
rēxerāmus, *we had ruled.*	rēctī	erāmus, *we had been ruled.*
rēxerātis, *you had ruled.*	-ae, -a,	erātis, *you had been ruled.*
rēxerant, *they had ruled.*		erant, *they had been ruled.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

rēxerō, *I shall have ruled.*	rēctus	erō, *I shall have been ruled.*
rēxeris, *thou wilt have ruled.*	-a, -um,	eris, *thou wilt have, etc.*
rēxerit, *he will have ruled.*		erit, *he will have, etc.*
rēxerimus, *we shall have ruled.*	rēctī	erimus, *we shall have, etc.*
rēxeritis, *you will have ruled.*	-ae, -a,	eritis, *you will have, etc.*
rēxerint, *they will have ruled.*		erunt, *they will have, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.*

PRESENT.

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris (-re)	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris (-re)	regerēminī
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus	sim	rēctī	sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	-a, -um,	sīs	-ae, -a	sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus	essem	rēctī	essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis	-a, -um,	essēs	-ae, -a,	essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset		essent

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the clauses in which they stand.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT

rege, *rule thou.*	regere, *be thou ruled.*
regite, *rule ye.*	regiminī, *be ye ruled.*

FUTURE.

regitō, *thou shalt rule.*	regitor, *thou shalt be ruled.*
regitō, *he shall rule.*	regitor, *he shall be ruled.*
regitōte, *you shall rule.*	
reguntō, *they shall rule.*	reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, *to rule.*	regī, *to be ruled.*
PERF. rēxisse, *to have ruled.*	rēctus esse, *to have been ruled.*
FUT. rēctūrus esse, *to be about to rule.*	rēctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēns, entis, *ruling.*	
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, *about to rule.*	GER. regendus, -a, -um, *to be ruled.*
	PERF. rēctus, -a, -um *having been ruled.*

GERUND.

G.	regendī, *of ruling.*	These forms are used as nouns.
D.	regendō, *for ruling.*	
Ac.	regendum, *ruling.*	
Ab.	regendō, *by ruling.*	

SUPINE.

Ac. rēctum, *to rule.*	Ab. rēctū, *to be ruled.*

191. SOME VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*P.P.P.N.**	*Meaning.*
agō	agere	ēgi	actum	—*to drive, do*
cadō	cadere	cecidī	cāsum	—*to fall*
caedō	caedere	cecīdī	caesum	—*to kill*
cingō	cingere	cīnxī	cīnctum	—*to surround*
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausum	—*to shut*
cōgnōscō	cōgnōscere	cōgnōvī	cōgnotum	—*to learn*
cōgō	cōgere	coēgi	coāctum	—*to compel*
cōnstituō	cōnstituere	cōnstituī	cōnstitūtum	—*to determine*
crēdō	crēdere	crēdidī	crēditum	—*to believe*
dēdō	dēdere	dēdidī	dēditum	—*to surrender*
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	defēnsum	—*to defend*
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgi	dēlēctum	—*to choose*
dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictum	—*to say*
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductum	—*to lead*
ēdūcō	ēdūcere	ēdūxī	ēductum	—*to lead out*
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestum	—*to carry on*
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missum	—*to send*
ostendō	ostendere	ostendī	ostentum	—*to show*
parcō	parcere	perpercī	parsum	—*to spare*
perdō	perdere	perdidī	perditum	—*to destroy*
petō	petere	petīvī	petītum	—*to seek*
pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positum	—*to place*
quaerō	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesītum	—*to question*
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum	—*to rule*
relinquō	relinquere	relīquī	relictum	—*to leave*
scrībō	scrībere	scrīpsī	scrīptum	—*to write*
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum	—*to cover*
trahō	trahere	trāxī	trāctum	—*to drag*
vertō	vertere	vertī	versum	—*to turn*
vincō	vincere	vīcī	victum	—*to conquer*
vīvō	vīvere	vīxī	vīctum	—*to live*

*Perfect Passive Participle, neuter.

192. PRACTICE ON REGO.

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. regō
2. regat
3. regēbās
4. rēxit
5. regere
6. reget
7. rēxerint
8. rēxeram
9. regar
10. rēxērunt
11. regēmur
12. regerent
13. rēctus esset
14. reguntur
15. reguntor
16. rēxisse
17. regam
18. regētur
19. rēxī
20. rectus erit
21. rēctum
22. rēctus erās
23. regās
24. regitur
25. regēbant
26. regēns
27. rēctī sunt
28. rēxissēs
29. rēctūrus esse
30. reguntur
31. rēxeritis
32. rēctus sīs
33. regāmus
34. rēxissēmus
35. regit
36. regēbāmus
37. regerēminī
38. rēxissent
39. rēctus es
40. regite
41. regēbāminī
42. regere
43. regant
44. rēctī sītis
45. regitis
46. regerētis
47. rēxerātis
48. rēctū
49. regentur
50. regerer
51. regēris
52. rēctī erāmus
53. regitō
54. rēctus est
55. regimur
56. rēctus
57. rēctī erimus
58. regantur
59. rēctus essem
60. regunt

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

193. PRACTICE ON REGO.

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate.

1. he will rule.
2. to rule.
3. thou art ruled.
4. I had been ruled.
5. we shall be ruled.
6. rule thou.
7. we have ruled.
8. I rule.
9. for ruling.
10. they were ruled.
11. you had ruled.
12. I shall rule.
13. we were ruled.
14. they *shall* rule.
15. you will be ruled.
16. I was ruled.
17. thou hast ruled.
18. be ye ruled.
19. of ruling.
20. we shall rule.
21. I shall be ruled.
22. they are ruled.
23. they had been ruled.
24. he has been ruled.
25. we are ruled.
26. to have been ruled.
27. they will be ruled.
28. he rules.
29. he had ruled.
30. they ruled.
31. I had ruled.
32. you have been ruled.
33. he *shall* rule.
34. ruling.
35. we had been ruled.
36. you will have ruled.
37. I shall have been ruled.
38. they will rule.
39. he will have been ruled.
40. you will rule.
41. we shall have been ruled.
42. they have been ruled.
43. he is ruled.
44. rule ye.
45. they have ruled.
46. he will be ruled.
47. we rule.
48. to have ruled.
49. I ruled.
50. he was ruled.
51. thou wilt have ruled.
52. he has ruled.
53. you ruled.
54. he will have ruled.
55. they had ruled.
56. I have been ruled.
57. you will have been ruled.
58. to be ruled.
59. he had been ruled.
60. he *shall* be ruled.

L. of C.

EXERCISES.

ago, cognosco, defendo, peto, tego.

194. 1. Pecora a pastoribus in agros agebantur. 2. Urbes provinciae a militibus Romanis defenduntur. 3. Homines pacem salutemque auxiliumque petunt. 4. Opiniones omnium civium cognotae erant. 5. Milites latrones ex castris egerunt. 6. Pauci custodes arcem urbis defenderant. 7. Nuntius navibus nautas validos petet. 8. Tectum arcis pice texerunt. 9. Milites magna celeritate opus agebant.

195. 1. The ambassador of the enemy is seeking peace. 2. The soldiers had defended the town and the townsmen. 3. The horsemen were driving the citizens across the bridge. 4. We have sought safety in flight. 5. The plans of the leaders had not been learned by the spies. 6. The roadway will be covered with snow by the storm. 7. The orator will have defended the man's honor. 8. The cattle have been driven toward the river. 9. The father of the boy will seek food and water. 10. The old men were defended by the consul.

EXERCISES.

dico, mitto, cado, ostendo, scribo.

196. 1. Verba ab interprete dicta sunt. 2. Caro in ignem cadet. 3. Mitto pro civibus ad regem nuntium. 4. Senatores oppidanis leges ostenderunt. 5. Exploratoresne in regionem novam missi erant? 6. Cortex ab arboribus cadebat. 7. Multae epistulae a scribis scriptae erunt. 8. Novus gladius centurionis legato ostenditur. 9. Legatum ad Romanos non miserimus. 10. Pro lege nova orationem longam scripseram.

197. STUDY RULE OF SYNTAX 27 ON PAGE 37.

198. 1. The messenger of the king had been sent to the leader of the men. 2. The sailor has fallen into the deep river. 3. The farmer shows great pleasure on account of the full crops. 4. Did not the walls of the tower fall upon the man's companion? 5. The commander's plan was told to the interpreter. 6. The old men had written letters to the king. 7. He will have sent the youth a sword. 8. A letter will be written on behalf of the merchants. 9. I shall not send the fleet against the enemy.

EXERCISES.

dedo, duco, gero, pono, vinco.

199. 1. Latro ante judices ducitur. 2. Milites hominem in carcere posuerunt. 3. Pedites cum militibus regis bellum gesserant. 4. Vincebamur in multis pugnis ab imperatore Romano. 5. Equi agricolarum in agros ducti erant. 6. Ponemus senes in loco salutis. 7. Defensores urbis victoribus se dedebant. 8. Gereturne bellum contra socios oppidanorum? 9. Legiones Caesaris multitudine servorum vincit. 10. Ducam cives in castra imperatoris.

200. 1. The soldiers of Caesar had been conquered by the enemy. 2. We shall wage war against the men of the city. 3. Have you placed the children in the wagon? 4. The deserters were led before the king. 5. The townsmen were waging war with the soldiers near the river. 6. The slaves were surrendering themselves (se) to the commander. 7. Will not the children be placed near the women? 8. We are being conquered by the chiefs of Gaul. 9. The old men will have been led to seats near the king. 10. The chief had surrendered the state to the Romans.

EXERCISES.*

cingo, deligo, perdo, rego, traho.

201. 1. Rex populum cum lenitate rexerat. 2. Milites fugitivos cinxerint. 3. Arbores ex silvis ad flumen trahebantur. 4. Nonne judices a populo deligentur? 5. Princeps magna difficultate cives urbis regebat. 6. Equus in pulvere hominem trahit. 7. Tempestas arbores floresque perdidit. 8. Classis ducis navibus hostium cincta erat. 9. Gens a principibus multis recta est. 10. Trahent rates in litus.

202. 1. We shall surround the camp of the enemy with soldiers. 2. The judges were chosen by the people. 3. The king ruled the people with great kindness. 4. They will have chosen a leader for the soldiers. 5. Does the king rule with severity? 6. The work of the carpenters had been destroyed by the storm. 7. The city will be surrounded with a wall. 8. The chief of the state will rule the tribes. 9. The soldiers had ruined all the crops. 10. The plough-shares will be dragged through the fields.

EXERCISES.

caedo, educo, quaero, relinquo, verto.

203. 1. Equites gladiis cives multos ceciderunt. 2. Opiniones ducum a rege quaerentur. 3. Hostes ad oppidum agmen vertunt. 4. Oppidani cum uxoribus a hostibus caesi erant. 5. Imperator milites ex castris educebat. 6. Equi in agros ab agricolis educuntur. 7. Legionem auxilio castris reliquemus. 8. Senex ad flumen os vertit. 9. Multosne homines caedebant? 10. Mercatores carros in litore reliquerunt.

*Study Rule of Syntax 22, page 36.

204. 1. The enemy had turned the ships toward the shore. 2. The old men will be left in the woods. 3. The soldiers have killed a multitude of the enemy. 4. The cattle are being led to the fields. 5. A legion was left as an aid to the townsmen. 6. Many sailors had been killed. 7. Will the enemy lead out many men? 8. The leader is seeking brave men on account of the danger. 9. The enemy's fleet did not turn towards the shore. 10. All the senators and the nobility were killed.

EXERCISES.

claudo, constituo, credo, parco, vivo.*

205. 1. Oppidani nocte portas oppidi claudent. 2. Constituimus tempus reditionis. 3. Nonne dux civibus liberisque parcet? 4. Responsum nuntii non creditum erat. 5. Caesar hominibus propter virtutem parcit. 6. Ratio pugnae a ducibus constituta est. 7. Portam turris contra hostes clausit. 8. Hiems floribus in agris non parcit. 9. Imperator civibus urbis crediderat. 10. Multae aves in arboribus oppidi vivunt.

206. 1. The commander will spare the children of the city. 2. The townsmen closed the gates of the town. 3. We live according to the customs of the time. 4. The gate of the tower has been closed by the guards. 5. The old men of the city had been spared by the enemy. 6. The judge determined the punishment of the robbers. 7. The centurion did not believe the soldiers. 8. Men live on the earth, but birds in the air. 9. A time for the surrender was determined by the leader. 10. The words of the woman were not believed by the men.

*Study again Rule of Syntax 16, page 35.

REVIEW EXERCISES.*

207. **1.** Boni principes in civitate cives cum lenitate regent. **2.** Imperator ex castris milites trans pontem duxit. **3.** Nonne mulieres atque liberi in urbe a duce parsi sunt? **4.** In magna humilitate pacem ab imperatore petivimus. **5.** Brevis epistula ad consulem pro homine scripta erat. **6.** Mittisne principibus civitatis auxilium? **7.** Sine classi navium magnarum Gallos non vincemus. **8.** Filius agricolae pecora in agros prope flumen egit. **9.** Bellum longum a Roma atque a civitatibus Italiae geretur. **10.** Pulchra urbs a multis civibus defendebatur. **11.** Multitudo hostium a militibus in longo bello caesa erat. **12.** Rex urbis omnes portas propter temeritatem civium claudet.

208. **1.** The horsemen have killed a great number of men across the river. **2.** All the gates of the city will be closed at night. **3.** The brave soldiers had conquered the enemy with great difficulty. **4.** The noble king ruled the people without difficulty on account of his gentleness. **5.** Are the citizens waging war against the bold robbers? **6.** The fierce animals had killed the faithful shepherd. **7.** Prudent generals are leading the soldiers of Rome. **8.** The child wrote the letter with great difficulty. **9.** The city will be defended through the night by the king's horsemen. **10.** The townsmen have closed all the large gates. **11.** The children are sending the best flowers to a sick man. **12.** The old men with eagerness sought peace on behalf of their wives and children.

*Study again Rule of Syntax 25, page 37.

REVIEW EXERCISES.*

209. 1. Dux liberis in oppido ultra flumen parcet. 2. Magna classis Romanorum vento in litus cum celeritate acta est. 3. Senes cum difficultate turrem defendunt. 4. Principes civitatis cum crudelitate regebant. 5. Multae epistulae de bello ad regem scriptae erant. 6. Geremus bellum marique terraque contra hostes. 7. Principes ad Caesarem legationem magnam miserunt. 8. Equites celeribus equis milites hostium vincent. 9. Hostes a Caesare pacem non petiverant. 10. Consul a civibus saxis atque gladiis caedebatur. 11. Portae urbis propter bellum a consulibus clausae sunt. 12. Matres liberos in locum salutis cum celeritate ducunt.

210. 1. Within the memory of man such a cruel war had never been waged. 2. The men are seeking safety in swift flight. 3. The soldiers have driven the enemy into the marshes and the woods. 4. The fleet of the Romans was conquered by the ships of the Gauls. 5. The sick old man will be spared. 6. The gates had been quickly shut and the citizens armed for battle. 7. A few brave horsemen had been sent across the bridge into the enemy's country. 8. Is not the chief writing a letter to the king? 9. The wise proconsul will defend the cities of the province. 10. Many foot-men are being killed in the battle near the river. 11. We have led the soldiers with speed through the valley and the woods. 12. The Romans waged war with the Gauls for many years.

*Study Rule of Syntax 21, page 37.

211. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Ī-VERBS.

Audiō (root **aud**), *to hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
PRESENT.	
audiō, *I hear, (am hearing, do)*	**audior,** *I am heard (am being h.)*
audīs, *thou hearest.*	**audīris (-re),** *thou art heard.*
audit, *he hears.*	**audītur,** *he is heard.*
audīmus, *we hear.*	**audīmur,** *we are heard.*
audītis, *you hear.*	**audīminī,** *you are heard.*
audiunt, *they hear.*	**audiuntur,** *they are heard.*
IMPERFECT.	
audiēbam, *I heard, (was hear'g)*	**audiēbar,** *I was heard.*
audiēbās, *thou heardst.*	**audiēbāris (-re),** *thou wast heard.*
audiēbat, *he heard.*	**audiēbātur,** *he was heard.*
audiēbāmus, *we heard.*	**audiēbāmur,** *we were heard.*
audiēbātis, *you heard.*	**audiēbāminī,** *you were heard.*
audiēbant, *they heard.*	**audiēbantur,** *they were heard.*
FUTURE.	
audiam, *I shall hear.*	**audiar,** *I shall be heard.*
audiēs, *thou wilt hear.*	**audiēris (-re),** *thou wilt be heard.*
audiet, *he will hear.*	**audiētur,** *he will be heard.*
audiēmus, *we shall hear.*	**audiēmur,** *we shall be heard.*
audiētis, *you will hear.*	**audiēminī,** *you will be heard.*
audient, *they will hear.*	**audiēntur,** *they will be heard.*
PERFECT.	
audīvī, *I have heard.*	**audītus -a, -um** { **sum,** *I have been heard.*
audīvistī, *thou hast heard.*	**es,** *thou hast been heard.*
audīvit, *he has heard.*	**est,** *he has been heard.*
audīvimus, *we have heard.*	**audītī -ae, -a** { **sumus,** *we have been h.*
audīvistis, *you have heard.*	**estis,** *you have been h.*
audīvērunt (-re), *they have heard.*	**sunt,** *they have been h.*

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE

PLUPERFECT.

audīveram, *I had heard.*	audītus	eram, *I had been heard.*
audīverās, *thou hadst heard.*	-a, -um	erās, *thou hadst been h.*
audīverat, *he had heard.*		erat, *he had been heard.*
audīverāmus, *we had heard.*	audītī	erāmus, *we had been h.*
audīverātis, *you had heard.*	-ae, -a	erātis, *you had been h.*
audīverant, *they had heard.*		erant, *they had been h.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

audīverō, *I shall have heard.*	audītus	erō, *I shall have been h.*
audīveris, *thou wilt have heard.*	-a, -um	eris, *thou wilt have, etc.*
audīverit, *he will have heard.*		erit, *he will have, etc.*
audīverimus, *we shall have heard.*	audītī	erimus, *we shall h., etc.*
audīveritis, *you will have heard.*	-ae, -a	eritis, *you will have, etc.*
audīverint, *they will have heard.*		erunt, *they will h., etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.*

PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (-re)	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris (-re)	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus	sim	audītī	sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis	-a, -um	sīs	-ae, -a	sītis
audīverit	audīverint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus	essem	audītī	essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis	-a, -um	essēs	-ae, -a	sesētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		esset		essent

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the clauses in which they appear.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
IMPERATIVE.	
PRESENT.	
audī, *hear thou.*	audīre, *be thou heard.*
audīte, *hear ye.*	audīminī, *be ye heard.*
FUTURE.	
audītō, *thou shalt hear.*	audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*
audītō, *he shall hear.*	audītor, *he shall be heard.*
audītōte, *ye shall hear.*	
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*	audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*
INFINITIVE.	
PRES. audīre, *to hear.*	audīrī, *to be heard.*
PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.*	audītus esse, *to have been heard.*
FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*	audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*
PARTICIPLES.	
PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*	———
FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*	GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*
———	PERF. audītus, -a, -um, *having been heard.*

GERUND.

G. audiendī, *of hearing.*	These forms are used as nouns.
D. audiendō, *for hearing.*	
Ac. audiendum, *hearing.*	
Ab. audiendō, *by hearing.*	

SUPINE.

Ac. audītum, *to hear.*	Ab. audītū, *to be heard.*

212. SOME VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*P. P. P. N.**	*Meaning.*
aperiō	aperīre	aperuī	apertum	—*to disclose*
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum	—*to hear*
comperiō	comperīre	comperī	compertum	—*to discover*
cōnsentiō	cōnsentīre	cōnsēnsī	cōnsēnsum	—*to agree*
conveniō	convenīre	convēnī	conventum	—*to come together*
custōdiō	custōdīre	custōdīvī	custōdītum	—*to guard*
dēfīniō	dēfīnīre	dēfīnīvī	dēfīnītum	—*to appoint*
ēvēniō	ēvenīre	ēvēnī	ēventum	—*to happen*
exhauriō	exhaurīre	exhausī	exhaustum	—*to carry off*
expediō	expedīre	expedīvī	expedītum	—*to extricate*
fīniō	fīnīre	fīnīvī	fīnītum	—*to limit*
impediō	impedīre	impedīvī	impedītum	—*to impede*
inveniō	invenīre	invēnī	inventum	—*to find*
molliō	mollīre	mollīvī	mollītum	—*to soften*
mūniō	mūnīre	mūnīvī	mūnītum	—*to fortify*
perveniō	pervenīre	pervēnī	perventum	—*to arrive at*
praesentiō	praesentīre	praesēnsī	praesēnsum	—*to find out*
reperiō	reperīre	repperī	repertum	—*to discover*
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsum	—*to perceive*
serviō	servīre	servīvī	servītum	—*to be a slave*
subveniō	subvenīre	subvēnī	subventum	—*to come to aid*
veniō	venīre	vēnī	ventum	—*to come*
vestiō	vestīre	vestīvī	vestītum	—*to clothe*
vinciō	vincīre	vinxī	vinctum	—*to bind*

*Perfect Passive Participle, neuter.

213. PRACTICE ON **AUDIO**.

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. audīs	21. audiō	41. audī
2. audīvī	22. audiāmur	42. audiēbās
3. audīverit	23. audiās	43. audiuntō
4. audīveram	24. audītus es	44. audītī erunt
5. audiam	25. audiēns	45. audītis
6. audītus essem	26. audiuntor	46. audīvērunt
7. audior	27. audītus erat	47. audītī erāmus
8. audīrī	28. audīveris	48. audītus esse
9. audientur	29. audītum īrī	49. audiēbāmur
10. audīte	30. audītī sint	50. audīris
11. audiant	31. audīverant	51. audīvissēmus
12. audīvistis	32. audīverimus	52. audiēris
13. audītō	33. audītī sītis	53. audīvisse
14. audiēbāminī	34. audīmur	54. audiēbāris
15. audiet	35. audīrent	55. audītus sim
16. audītī essētis	36. audīverātis	56. audiās
17. audīrēmur	37. audiantur	57. audītū
18. audiēbar	38. audiunt	58. audītī sumus
19. audītum	39. audīvissent	59. audiēbātis
20. audīrētur	40. audiēmus	60. audīre

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

214. PRACTICE ON AUDIO.

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate.

1. he has heard.
2. he will hear.
3. he will have been heard.
4. you had been heard.
5. they will have been heard.
6. thou wilt hear.
7. be ye heard.
8. he has been heard.
9. he heard.
10. you hear.
11. we have heard.
12. to hear.
13. they will have heard.
14. for hearing.
15. they heard.
16. thou wast heard.
17. I am heard.
18. they will hear.
19. they have been heard.
20. to have heard.
21. hearing.
22. I shall be heard.
23. we shall be heard.
24. you will hear.
25. we heard.
26. I shall have been heard.
27. he had heard.
28. hear ye.
29. we were heard.
30. being about to hear.
31. he had been heard.
32. thou hast heard.
33. we shall have heard.
34. we are heard.
35. to be heard.
36. we have been heard.
37. we hear.
38. he will have heard.
39. thou hast been heard
40. I had heard.
41. they hear.
42. you will be heard.
43. he was heard.
44. he *shall* hear.
45. they had heard.
46. he will be heard.
47. you had heard.
48. he is heard.
49. they have heard.
50. hear thou.
51. I shall hear.
52. of hearing.
53. thou wilt have heard.
54. he hears.
55. they are heard.
56. ye *shall* hear.
57. I was heard.
58. I had been heard.
59. they were heard.
60. be thou heard.

EXERCISES.

aperio, convenio, impedio, munio, venio.

215. 1. Regi conjurationem turpem aperiemus. 2. Mulieres liberique in litore fluminis convenerunt. 3. Multa oppida Italiae ab oppidanis munita sunt. 4. Veniebantne in nocte legiones fortes imperatoris? 5. Fortis homo difficultatibus operis impediebatur. 6. Nuntius regis in urbem venit. 7. Scelus viri civibus multis apertum est. 8. Tempestates atque hostes iter cohortum non impediverant. 9. Oppidum novum vallibus firmis non munivisti. 10. Nautae in puppi navis conveniunt.

216. 1. Caesar fortified the camp with a large number of faithful guards. 2. The legions were impeded by trees and swamps in the woods. 3. The Roman general and the ambassadors of the Gauls will come together. 4. The plans of the Roman general were disclosed to the enemy. 5. Many soldiers are coming to the tent of Caesar. 6. We shall fortify the city with high walls. 7. During the night the enemy came together before the town. 8. The horsemen had come to the gate of the new city. 9. The senators will come together in Rome.*

EXERCISES.

audio, expedio, pervenio. servio, vincio.

217. 1. Legatus bona verba regis audiebat. 2. Legio nova ad altum flumen pervenerat. 3. Servi ex paludibus magnas essedas expedient. 4. Senex domino crudeli serviebat. 5. Equi multi ab equitibus non vincti erant. 6. Milites benigna verba senis audiverant. 7. Prima luce legiones Caesaris ad litus planum pervenerunt. 8. Equites Romanorum carros e lacu non expediverant. 9. Audaces latrones in silvis viros vinxerunt. 10. Sermo hominum ab exploratore audiebatur.

*Study Rule of Syntax 33, page 38.

218. 1. The king had heard the cruel words of the centurion. 2. The ships of the merchants have not arrived. 3. The spies were bound with ropes by the soldiers. 4. We shall not be slaves to the enemy. 5. The brave messenger arrived at the bridge at day-break. 6. The old man had been a slave to a noble Roman. 7. Have you not heard the noble response of the commander? 8. I did not hear the conversation of the horsemen. 9. The enemy bound the leader and the horsemen. 10. The slave hears the voice of the old man.

EXERCISES.

consentio, custodio, evenio, invenio, subvenio.*

219. 1. Milites cum imperatore de proelio non consentiebant. 2. Difficultates multae in bello atque in pace eveniunt. 3. In brevi tempore legio defensoribus subvenerat. 4. Exploratores a duce cum cura custodiebantur. 5. In oppido viros multos et fortes inveniemus. 6. Imperator atque cives de bello consenserunt. 7. Omnia non evenerunt ut expectavimus. 8. Nonne equites oppidanis defessis subvenient? 9. Periculis belli liberos non custodiebas. 10. In oppido pauci homines nobiles inveniebantur.

220. 1. The old men and the children will be guarded by the horsemen. 2. The death of the consul happened last month. 3. The men have found a spy in the city. 4. All the leaders agreed concerning the war. 5. You have guarded the fortress with great bravery. 6. The horsemen had come to the aid of the foot-soldiers. 7. Does not the general agree with the leaders? 8. Many things happen contrary to our expectation. 9. We shall come to the aid of the brave defenders.

*Subvenio; Study Rule of Syntax 12, page 34.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

221. 1. Miles fontem aquae in arido loco invenit. 2. Castra aggeribus atque fossis muniebantur. 3. Nomina conjuratorum regi aperta sunt. 4. Milites regis funibus latrones vinxerunt. 5. Imperator in fines hostium cum copiis pervenerat. 6. Nonne cum equitibus regi subvenies? 7. Calones carris impedimentisque impediebantur. 8. Senatores togis longis et pulchris vestiti erant. 9. Post bellum longum Galli Romanis serviebant. 10. Socii in bello Romanis non subvenerant. 11. Omnes cum militibus navibusque conveniemus. 12. Nautae et milites de consilio consentient. 13. Multa oppida Italiae a militibus Romanis custodiuntur. 14. Nonne sermonem senis audiebas?

222. 1. The camp-followers were clothed in old garments. 2. She was a slave to the wife of the Roman general. 3. The bad condition of the enemy's fleet had been disclosed to the general. 4. The good friend of the consul came with a legion of brave soldiers. 5. The general will fortify the old town with a high wall. 6. A large fleet will arrive at the island before night. 7. All the leaders do not agree about the return of the fleet. 8. The men heard an outcry in the solitude of the woods. 9. He has not come to aid the guards at the bridge. 10. The man will guard the wagons with great care. 11. The work of the soldiers was impeded by the sallies of the enemy. 12. All the ships of the Roman fleet are gathering together in one place. 13. A large supply of food was found in the fortress of the city. 14. The spy had tied his horse to a tree in the woods.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

223. 1. Prima luce hospites regis venient. 2. Iter copiarum Romanarum montibus fluminibusque impediebatur. 3. Mulieres liberosque urbis custodio. 4. Multi milites custodibus pontis subvenerunt. 5. De poena viri omnes judices non consentiebant. 6. Locus hostium fumo aperiebatur. 7. Centurio sacerdotem templi Jovis vinxerat. 8. Nonne senatores vestibus pulchris vestiebantur? 9. Cives in nive virum invenerunt. 10. Remiges magistro navis serviunt. 11. Nocte secunda imperator Romanus cum legionibus pervenit. 12. Locus a civibus munitus erat. 13. Verba legati non audiebam. 14. Omnes milites causa belli conveniunt.

224. 1. The camp-followers had disclosed the hiding-place of the spies. 2. A legion is coming to the aid of the general. 3. The condition of the roadway impeded the march of the cohort. 4. At night he tied the horse to a large oak tree. 5. The judges have not agreed concerning the new laws. 6. The hill had been fortified on all sides by the Gauls. 7. The large new chariot of the king has not yet come. 8. A legion of soldiers is guarding the booty of the battle. 9. The children have found beautiful flowers in the valley. 10. The farmers came together from the fields into the city. 11. A multitude of people will hear Cicero's oration. 12. The brave son of the king had arrived with the horsemen. 13. The noble man was a slave to a cruel master. 14. We shall clothe the children in beautiful new clothes.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

225. The stem ends in **u.**

226. Gender.—Most nouns is **us** are masculine, those in **u** are neuter.*

227. Case Endings.		**Example.**	
	Singular.		Singular.
N.V.	....**us**	senāt**us**,	*the senate.*
G.	....**ūs**	senāt**ūs**,	*of the senate.*
D.	....**uī (ū)**	senāt**uī**,	*to, for the senate.*
Ac.	....**um**	senāt**um**,	*the senate.*
Ab.	....**ū**	senāt**ū**	————
	Plural.		Plural.
N.V.	....**ūs**	senāt**ūs**,	*senates.*
G.	....**uum**	senāt**uum**,	*of senates.*
D.	....**ibus (ubus)**	senāt**ibus**,	*to, for senates.*
Ac.	....**ūs**	senāt**ūs**,	*senates.*
Ab.	....**ibus (ubus)**	senāt**ibus**	————

228. Case Endings.		**Example.**	
	Singular.		Singular.
N.V.	....**ū**	corn**ū**,	*a wing.*
G.	....**ūs**	corn**ūs**,	*of a wing.*
D.	....**ū**	corn**ū**,	*to, for a wing.*
Ac.	....**ū**	corn**ū**,	*a wing.*
Ab.	....**ū**	corn**ū**	————
	Plural.		Plural.
N.V.	....**ua**	corn**ua**,	*wings.*
G.	....**uum**	corn**uum**,	*of wings.*
D.	....**ibus (ubus)**	corn**ibus**,	*to, for wings.*
Ac.	....**ua**	corn**ua**,	*wings.*
Ab.	....**ibus (ubus)**	corn**ibus**	————

229. NOTE.—The following nouns have **ubus** in the dative and the ablative plural: **artus,** *joint;* **partus,** *birth;* **portus,** *harbor;* **tribus,** *tribe;* **verū,** *a spit;* and two-syllable words in **cus.**

230. Domus, *house,* is partly second declension and partly fourth declension.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	dom**us**	dom**ūs**
G.	dom**ūs** (dom**ī**, loc.)	dom**uum** (dom**ōrum**)
D.	dom**uī** (dom**ō**)	dom**ibus**
Ac.	dom**um**	dom**ōs** (dom**ūs**)
Ab.	dom**ō** (dom**ū**)	dom**ibus**

*The following nouns are feminine: **acus, anus, colus, domus, Idus, manus, nurus, porticus, socrus, tribus.**

231. VOCABULARY.

adventus, M., *arrival*
cōnātus, M. *attempt*
cōnsessus, M. *consent*
cōnsulātus, M. *consulship*
conventus, M. *assembly*
equitātus, M. *cavalry*
exercitus, M. *army*
impetus, M. *attack*
lacus, M. *lake*
magistrātus, M. *magistrate*
manus, M. *hand*
metus, M. *fear*
passus, M. *step, pace*
portus, M. *harbor*
senātus, M. *senate*
tumultus, M. *tumult*
vultus, M. *countenance*
cornū, N. *wing (of army)*
genū, N. *knee*
verū, N. *a spit*

EXERCISES.

232. 1. Naves in portu a civibus captae sunt. 2. Metus populi adventu militum augebatur. 3. Caesar impetum hostium coercuit. 4. Bellum consensu omnium indictum erat. 5. Exercitus Romanus impetum hostium non exspectabat. 6. Dux in cornu sinistro equitatum instruxit. 7. Lacus ab oppido quinque milia passuum abest. 8. Miles in manu dextra gladium tenebat. 9. Tumultus magnus in urbe est propter crudelitatem magistratus. 10. Homo in genu vulneratus erat.

233. 1. On the arrival of the general the senate was called together. 2. The horsemen await the attack on the shore of the lake. 3. For many hours the cavalry had driven the fugitives. 4. The assembly has ordered new weapons for the army. 5. On their knees the ambassadors begged for peace. 6. The magistrates have seen the ships in the harbor. 7. They tied the hands of all the captives. 8. The man's countenance was pale from fear. 9. The water in the lake is clear. 10. At night the army encamped near the town.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

234. The stem ends in **ē**.

235.—**Gender.**—Feminine (except **diēs**, *day*, masc.)

236. **Case endings.**

	Sing.	*Plur.*
N.V.	....**ēs**	....**ēs**
G.	....**ēī**	....**ērum**
D.	....**ēī**	....**ēbus**
Ac.	....**em**	....**ēs**
Ab.	....**ē**	....**ēbus**

Example.

Sing.	*Plur.*
diēs	**diēs**
diēī	**diērum**
diēī	**diēbus**
diem	**diēs**
diē	**diēbus**

237. **VOCABULARY.**

aciēs, F. *line of battle*
diēs, M. *day*
fidēs, F. *pledge*
merīdiēs, M. *noon*
mollitiēs, F. *softness*
perniciēs, F. *ruin*
plānitiēs, F. *plain*
rēs, F. *event*
speciēs, F. *sight*
spēs, F. *hope*
rēs pūblica, F. *republic*.

EXERCISES.

238. 1. Virtus hominum spe praemiorum magnorum aucta est. 2. In tribus diebus cum equis equitibusque veniam. 3. Romani non magnam spem victoriae habent. 4. Imperator copias collegit atque meridie proelium commisit. 5. Mollities vestis principi Gallico placuit. 6. Die quinto consul ad urbem perveniet. 7. Hostes in acie ante portas urbis instructi erant. 8. Meridie Caesar in planitiem milites ducet. 9. Consul rem publicam e manibus conjuratorum sumpsit. 10. In aestate longi, in hieme breves sunt dies.

239. 1. At midday the army arrived at the town. 2. The general has drawn up a line of battle on the plain near the river. 3. The next day the forces pitched camp near the gates of the city. 4. The pledges of the king had been fulfilled by the soldiers. 5. Such events will bring ruin to the state. 6. The people of the republic have obtained pledges from the consul. 7. On account of the number of men the leaders had great hope of victory. 8. There was great destruction of property by the robbers. 9. The ships in the harbor were a beautiful sight. 10. The inhabitants of the neighboring towns had gathered on the plain.

REVIEW EXERCISES.

[FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.]

240. 1. Equitatus Caesaris in urbe tumultum commovit. 2. Exercitum in planitiem non mittemus. 3. In genibus magistatus civibus pacem petiverunt. 4. Proximo die conventus a consule convocabatur. 5. Homines urbis victoribus fides dederunt. 6. Meridie sol in medio caeli stabat. 7. Magnus metus custodes castrorum opprimebat. 8. Domus legati in paucis diebus occupabitur. 9. Remiges magna celeritate trans lacum lintres agebant.

241. 1. The sight of the cavalry in line of battle pleased the children. 2. The affairs of the state had fallen into the hands of wicked men. 3. The ships of the enemy will not remain in the harbor many days. 4. The tumult in the city has disturbed the senate. 5. The soldiers placed the meat on spits over the fire. 6. On the arrival of the senate the people were silent. 7. The army moved the camp into the plain. 8. The left wing of the cavalry was routed by the enemy.

242. THIRD CONJUGATION.

IO—VERBS.

Capiō (root **cap**), *to take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
PRESENT.	
capiō, *I take, (am taking, do)*	capior, *I am taken (am being t.)*
capis, *thou takest.*	caperis (-re), *thou art taken.*
capit, *he takes.*	capitur, *he is taken.*
capimus, *we take.*	capimur, *we are taken.*
capitis, *you take.*	capiminī, *you are taken.*
capiunt, *they take.*	capiuntur, *they are taken.*
IMPERFECT.	
capiēbam, *I took (was taking).*	capiēbar, *I was taken.*
capiēbās, *thou tookest.*	capiēbāris (-re), *thou wast taken.*
capiēbat, *he took.*	capiēbātur, *he was taken.*
capiēbāmus, *we took.*	capiēbāmur, *we were taken.*
capiēbātis, *you took.*	capiēbāminī, *you were taken.*
capiēbant, *they took.*	capiēbantur, *they were taken.*
FUTURE.	
capiam, *I shall take.*	capiar, *I shall be taken.*
capiēs, *thou wilt take.*	capiēris (-re), *thou wilt be taken.*
capiet, *he will take.*	capiētur, *he will be taken.*
capiēmus, *we shall take.*	capiēmur, *we shall be taken.*
capiētis, *you will take.*	capiēminī, *you will be taken.*
capient, *they will take.*	capientur, *they will be taken.*
PERFECT.	
cēpī, *I have taken.*	captus -a, -um { sum, *I have been taken.* / es, *thou hast been taken.* / est, *he has been taken.*
cēpistī, *thou hast taken.*	
cēpit, *he has taken.*	
cēpimus, *we have taken.*	captī -ae, -a { sumus, *we have been t.* / estis, *you have been t.* / sunt, *they have been t.*
cēpistis, *you have taken.*	
cēpērunt, (-re) *they have taken.*	

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, *I had taken.*	captus -a, -um	eram, *I had been taken*
cēperās, *thou hadst taken.*		erās, *thou hadst been t.*
cēperat, *he had taken.*		erat, *he had been taken.*
cēperāmus, *we had taken.*	captī -ae, -a	erāmus, *we had been t.*
cēperātis, *you had taken.*		erātis, *you had been t.*
cēperant, *they had taken.*		erant, *they had been t.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, *I shall have taken.*	captus -a, -um	erō, *I shall have been t.*
cēperis, *thou wilt have taken.*		eris, *thou wilt have, etc.*
cēperit, *he will have taken.*		erit, *he will have, etc.*
cēperimus, *we shall have taken.*	captī -ae, -a	erimus, *we shall have, etc.*
cēperitis, *you will have taken.*		eritis, *you will have, etc.*
cēperint, *they will have taken.*		erunt, *they will have, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.*

PRESENT.

capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

IMPERFECT.

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris (-re)	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

PERFECT.

cēperim	cēperimus	captus -a, -um	sim	captī -ae, -a	sīmus
cēperis	cēperitis		sīs		sītis
cēperit	cēperint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus -a, -um	essem	captī -ae, -a	essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis		essēs		essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent		esset		essent

*Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the clauses in which they appear.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

cape, *take thou.*	capere, *be thou taken.*
capite, *take ye.*	capiminī, *be ye taken.*

FUTURE.

capitō, *thou shalt take.*	capitor, *thou shalt be taken.*
capitō, *he shall take.*	capitor, *he shall be taken.*
capitōte, *you shall take.*	
capiuntō, *they shall take.*	capiuntor, *they shall be taken.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, *to take.*	capī, *to be taken.*
PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken.*	captus esse, *to have been taken.*
FUT. captūrus esse, *to be about to take.*	captum īrī, *to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -entis, *taking.*	
FUT. captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take.*	GER. capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*
	PERF. captus, -a, -um, *having been taken.*

GERUND.

G.	capiendī, *of taking.*	These forms are used as nouns.
D.	capiendō, *for taking.*	
Ac.	capiendum, *taking.*	
Ab.	capiendō, *by taking.*	

SUPINE.

Ac. captum, *to take.*	Ab. captū, *to be taken.*

243. SOME VERBS IN "IO" OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*P. P. P.N.**	*Meaning.*
accipiō	accipere	accēpī	acceptum	—*to receive*
capiō	capere	cēpī	captum	—*to take, seize*
cōnficiō	cōnficere	cōnfēcī	cōnfectum	—*to accomplish*
cōniciō	cōnicere	cōnjēcī	conjectum	—*to throw together*
cōnspiciō	cōnspicere	cōnspēxī	cōnspectum	—*to perceive*
cupiō	cupere	cupīvī (iī)	cupītum	—*to desire*
dēspiciō	dēspicere	dēspēxī	dēspectum	—*to look down*
dīripiō	dīripere	dīripuī	dīreptum	—*to plunder*
efficiō	efficere	effēcī	effectum	—*to produce*
effugiō	effugere	effūgī	effugitum	—*to flee out*
ēiciō	ēicere	ējēcī	ējectum	—*to cast out, up*
ēripiō	ēripere	ēripuī	ēreptum	—*to tear out*
faciō	facere	fēcī	factum	—*to make, do*
fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitum	—*to flee*
interficiō	interficere	interfēcī	interfectum	—*to slay*
obiciō	obicere	objēcī	objectum	—*to throw against*
pariō	parere	peperī	partum	—*to procure*
patefaciō	patefacere	patefēcī	patefactum	—*to lay open*
percipiō	percipere	percēpī	perceptum	—*to take in*
perficiō	perficere	perfēcī	perfectum	—*to finish*
prōficiō	prōficere	prōfēcī	prōfectum	—*to advance*
recipiō	recipere	recēpī	receptum	—*to take back*
refugiō	refugere	refūgī	refugitum	—*to flee back*
respiciō	respicere	respēxī	respectum	—*to look back*
suscipiō	suscipere	suscēpī	susceptum	—*to undertake*
suspiciō	suspicere	suspēxī	suspectum	—*to suspect*

*Perfect Passive Participle, neuter.

244. PRACTICE ON **CAPIO.**

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. capiō
2. capiēs
3. cēpērunt
4. captus eris
5. cēpissent
6. capiēbar
7. capiantur
8. capiēns
9. captī sunt
10. capiēbat
11. captus esset
12. capiant
13. capite
14. cēpistī
15. captus es
16. cēperās
17. cape
18. capiunt
19. capere
20. caperent
21. capiēbantur
22. capitor
23. captī sumus
24. caperis
25. capiētur
26. cēperim
27. cēperit
28. capiēminī
29. caperer
30. cēperint
31. capiat
32. cēpī
33. capitō
34. capient
35. cēpisset
36. captī erunt
37. capit
38. cēpisse
39. cēperat
40. captus essem
41. captus est
42. captū
43. capiēbatis
44. captus esse
45. capitis
46. caperēs
47. captī essent
48. capiuntor
49. cēpimus
50. cēperimus
51. capiās
52. captum
53. cēperant
54. capimur
55. captus erit
56. cēpissēmus
57. caperēmur
58. capiēbātur
59. cēpistis
60. captī essētis

* Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

245. PRACTICE ON **CAPIO.**

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate.

1. we took.
2. be thou taken.
3. he will be taken.
4. you take.
5. they have taken.
6. he will take.
7. to take.
8. we shall take.
9. thou wilt be taken.
10. I shall be taken.
11. he takes.
12. I shall have been taken.
13. you took.
14. they will be taken.
15. we take.
16. taking.
17. be ye taken
18. we are taken.
19. they *shall* be taken.
20. you are taken.
21. he is taken.
22. take ye.
23. he has taken.
24. he took.
25. thou wilt take.
26. they have been taken.
27. he will be taken.
28. for taking.
29. you were taken.
30. he was taken.
31. they had been taken.
32. we shall be taken.
33. to be taken.
34. thou wilt have taken.
35. they will take.
36. he had taken.
37. they will be taken.
38. I have taken.
39. they are taken.
40. he *shall* be taken.
41. I had taken.
42. he has been taken.
43. of taking.
44. we had taken.
45. to have taken.
46. we have taken.
47. thou hast taken
48. I took.
49. I shall have taken.
50. he has been taken.
51. I have been taken.
52. I take.
53. you had taken.
54. we shall have been taken
55. take thou.
56. I shall take.
57. they had taken.
58. he *shall* take.
59. we were taken.
60. they were taken.

EXERCISES.

246. 1. Servi fugitivi prope pontem veterem capti sunt. 2. Feminae timidae in arcem fugient. 3. Aeger servus a magistro crudeli e domicilio eiciebatur. 4. Viri ab equitibus effugiebant. 5. Rex nobilis a turpibus conjuratis interfectus erat. 6. Omnia facinora hominis ab oratore patefacientur. 7. Legatus fidelis magno honore accipitur. 8. In silvas refugerant. 9. Fugitivus defessus ab ira acerba imperatoris effugit. 10. Certa oppida provinciae non direpta sunt.

247. 1. The bold slave will seize the master's money. 2. The conspiracy of the wicked soldiers was not suspected by the kind general. 3. Many wagons full of fodder will be procured for the army. 4. The citizens are fleeing out from the city into the woody mountains. 5. The famous leaders have undertaken an embassy to the states. 6. An unknown man had been captured in the woods. 7. We shall cast up a rampart around the camp. 8. The cause of peace had been advanced by the old man. 9. Have you not accomplished the work?

248. 1. Puer fortunatus in pugna non vulnus acceperat. 2. Cives multi a tyranno interfecti sunt. 3. Fugiebantne viri cum uxoribus atque liberis? 4. Opus in paucis diebus a servo perito perficietur. 5. Suscipietne pensum difficile? 6. Puer a laeto parente receptus est. 7. Magna multitudo Helvetiorum trans flumen refugerunt. 8. Sociis injuriam magnam fecisti. 9. Ex flammis puer ereptus erat. 10. Agmen magna celeritate proficit.

249. STUDY RULES OF SYNTAX 19, PAGE 35.

EXERCISES.

250. 1. Huge stones and many weapons were hurled against* the enemy. 2. The enemy had seized the mountain during the night. 3. The strong rowers were eager for the contest. 4. The weak townsmen had been despised by the soldiers. 5. The danger of the Roman women has been perceived by the men. 6. Do you espy the camp of the Romans in the valley? 7. The plan of war is being carried out with great skill. 8. The treachery of the scouts has been laid open to the Romans. 9. The sailors will flee at the approach of the horsemen.

251. 1. Equites res necessarias exercitui non pepererant. 2. Omne indicium a Cicerone consule patefaciebatur. 3. Custodes latrones audaces in carcerem conicient. 4. Helvetii in montes altos refugiunt. 5. Agger magnus hostibus obicitur.* 6. Eques ad flumen atque trans pontem fugit. 7. Argentum a mercatoribus recipietur. 8. Iter longum sine multa mora confectum erat. 9. Servum diu suspiciebam. 10. Nonne comes regis pilo interficiebatur?

252. 1. We have not captured the baggage and horses of the cavalry. 2. The work is being carried on with little delay. 3. I am fleeing on account of the number of the horsemen. 4. The cavalry had fled back to camp without the leader. 5. Peace will be made with the brave men of the province. 6. The merchant's wish was carried out by the son. 7. The captive birds long for the freedom of the country. 8. The sharp sword had been torn out of the hands of the robber. 9. A great number of the enemy has been captured.

*See Rule 12, page 34.

EXERCISES.

253. 1. Tela utilia bello a Romanis capta sunt. 2. Iter difficile in carris conficitur. 3. Mulieres liberique fugiunt. 4. Defensores fortes flammis e castro ejecti erant. 5. In brevi spatio temporis aquila fugam confecerit. 6. Nonne imperator vetus turpitudinem viri suspiciebat? 7. Miles turpis ab omnibus despiciebatur. 8. In spe salutis ad ripam fluminis refugeramus. 9. Captivi e carcere erepti sunt. 10. Omnes civitates in condicionem vectigalium accipientur.

254. 1. The magistrate will disclose the boldness of the robber. 2. Many towns and villages have been plundered during the year. 3. The slaves of the town are being slain by order of the victor. 4. We shall not despise the weak and the sick. 5. Caesar is making peace with all the Helvetians. 6. A delay will be caused by the heavy storm. 7. The ships of the Romans had been perceived by the guard. 8. The sick soldier was desiring food and water. 9. After the battle the enemy had plundered the camp of the Romans. 10. Was the noble king captured in the battle?

255. 1. Novum imperatorem exercitui cupimus. 2. Suspiciemini conjurationis contra rem publicam. 3. Multae difficultates hostibus objectae erant. 4. Interpres pactum cum Romanis effecerit. 5. Desertores per noctem fugerunt. 6. Prima luce ab equitibus celeribus capiebantur. 7. Dux cum paucis militibus e proelio effugerat. 8. Parietisne magnam copiam gladiorum acrium? 9. Latrones a mercatoribus fortibus despiciuntur. 10. Vir legatus factus est.

EXERCISES.

256. 1. The fort and the town have been plundered. 2. The new messenger of the king is effecting a union. 3. Will a truce be made by our king with the enemy? 4. The ornaments and wealth of the temple are being taken. 5. The legions were laying open the road to Rome. 6. Has the slave been suspected of fraud and baseness? 7. By noon the army had not reached the town. 8. An excellent plan of war has been produced for the king. 9. The men had escaped to the river and were standing on the bridge. 10. Flee with your men to the fortress!

257. 1. Propter arrogantiam ex urbe ejecti sunt. 2. Pauci equites in oppidum refugerunt. 3. Senes oppidi non a principe interficientur. 4. Bellum longum in Gallia a Caesare perfectum est. 5. Pauci nostrorum equitum multitudinem hostium capiunt. 6. Rex vetus ab oppidanis multa dona pulchra acceperat. 7. In paucis annis urbs a Romanis perficiebatur. 8. Puerum ex bracchiis patris eripuit. 9. Iter longum a sociis per silvam confectum est. 10. Pensum ingens perfecit.

258. 1. The horsemen of the enemy had fled from the place. 2. Was peace made with the Romans by your king? 3. The spies were perceived behind the trees by the soldiers. 4. On the way to the fort the leader looked back. 5. The documents have been written up by the scribe. 6. The citizens have not secured pardon by the gifts. 7. They are taking away food and drink from the captive man. 8. The king and his companions will flee. 9. Many soldiers had been captured after the battle. 10. The queen was receiving many gifts.

259. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the meaning of each of the following words.
Give the declension and gender of each noun.

1. audiō
2. dēdō
3. aciēs
4. veniō
5. ingēns
6. accipiō
7. fidēs
8. vinciō
9. alacer
10. dīcō
11. difficilis
12. mūniō
13. diēs
14. adventus
15. efficiō
16. suscipiō
17. impetus
18. recipiō
19. cōnsulātus
20. perdō
21. manus
22. ēripiō
23. metus
24. dūcō
25. quaerō
26. fidēlis
27. plānitiēs
28. subveniō
29. portus
30. senātus
31. genū
32. serviō
33. ācer
34. agō
35. inveniō
36. brevis
37. capiō
38. spēs
39. verū
40. caedō
41. equester
42. cōnficiō
43. potēns
44. vincō
45. merīdiēs
46. cōnātus
47. cingō
48. impediō
49. equitātus
50. dēfendō
51. vultus
52. omnis
53. interficiō
54. regō
55. passus
56. scrībō
57. tristis
58. sentiō
59. rēs
60. ūtilis
61. audāx
62. fugiō
63. domus
64. clēmēns
65. gerō
66. locus
67. cōgnōscō
68. celer
69. perficiō
70. levis
71. conveniō
72. exercitus
73. petō
74. faciō
75. vēlōx
76. refugiō
77. facilis
78. suspiciō
79. cadō
80. conventus
81. nāvālis
82. claudō
83. gravis
84. mittō
85. perveniō
86. tumultus
87. fortis
88. reperiō
89. cornū
90. vestiō

260. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the Latin form for each of the following words.

1. to say
2. to destroy
3. senate
4. to kill
5. to defend
6. useful
7. nimble
8. assembly
9. to clothe
10. to hear
11. difficult
12. hand
13. knee
14. equestrian
15. countenance
16. bold
17. come together
18. naval
19. to surrender
20. to fortify
21. to snatch away
22. to serve
23. to accomplish
24. all
25. to flee
26. army
27. to shut
28. line of battle
29. day
30. fear
31. keen
32. powerful
33. to slay
34. house
35. to seek
36. heavy
37. to come
38. arrival
39. to lead
40. to drive
41. to conquer
42. to rule
43. merciful
44. to do
45. to send
46. huge
47. to produce
48. to question
49. to find
50. midday
51. step
52. to carry on
53. swift
54. to arrive at
55. to receive
56. to undertake
57. faithful
58. short
59. attempt
60. to write
61. place
62. to flee back
63. tumult
64. pledge
65. attack
66. plain
67. to capture
68. to surround
69. said
70. to learn
71. easy
72. brave
73. to bind
74. to take back
75. to come to aid
76. hope
77. to impede
78. to feel
79. rapid
80. to suspect
81. to discover
82. eager
83. consulship.
84. harbor
85. a spit
86. cavalry
87. thing.
88. to finish
89. to fall
90. horn

261. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

Nūllus, *no one.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	nūllī	nūllae	nūlla
G.	nūllīus	nūllīus	nūllīus	nūllōrum	nūllārum	nūllōrum
D.	nūllī	nūllī	nūllī	nūllīs	nūllīs	nūllīs
Ac.	nūllum	nūllam	nūllum	nūllōs	nūllās	nūlla
Ab.	nūllō	nūllā	nūllō	nūllīs	nūllīs	nūllīs

NOTE: The declension is like that of **bonus** except **īus** (*gen. sing.*) and **ī** (*dat. sing.*)

262. Decline like nūllus:

alius-a-ud, *one, another.*
nūllus-a-um, *no one.*
sōlus-a-um, *alone.*
tōtus-a-um, *whole.*
ūllus-a-um, *any.*
ūnus,-a-um, *only.*

263. **Neuter,** *neither of two.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	neuter	neutra	neutrum	neutrī	neutrae	neutra
G.	neutrīus	neutrīus	neutrīus	neutrōrum	neutrārum	neutrōrum
D.	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs
Ac.	neutrum	neutram	neutrum	neutrōs	neutrās	neutra
Ab.	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs

264. Decline like neuter:

alter, altera, alterum, *the one, the other.*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two).*
uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two).*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two).*

EXERCISES.

265. 1. Imperator solus in puppi navis stabat. 2. Dux utrique legioni signum dabit. 3. Multi milites nulla tela habuerunt. 4. Pons ab equite uno defensus erat. 5. Arbores totius silvae tempestate deletae sunt. 6. Nex ducis unius totam urbem servavit. 7. Exploratoresne ulli a viris capiebantur? 8. Uter imperator victoriam reportavit? 9. Alii nautae in litore alii in navibus sunt. 10. Neutrique imperatori subveniemus.

266. 1. The women were alone in the tower. 2. No ship of the enemy has been seen by the spies. 3. The one man had a sword, the other a javelin. 4. The men of the whole province are defending the city. 5. The master gave each boy a beautiful book. 6. The work of neither consul will be praised by the citizens. 7. Which man have you sent? 8. The soldiers conquered through valor alone. 9. The whole state had been roused by the war. 10. Some were wounded, others were killed.

267. 1. Nullus cibus equis in carro est. 2. Quies sola equites defessos recreabit. 3. Alius homo cibum, alius aquam viro aegro dedit. 4. Roborane ulla sunt in silva? 5. Vir solus iter fecit. 6. Timor solus hostium virum defessum urgebat. 7. Uterque orator orationem formosam habuit. 8. Magister totum opus discipuli laudavit. 9. Alter gladius longus alter brevis erat. 10. In neutraque parte salus erit.

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

268. An Adjective may be compared by changing its ending. Ex.—dūrus, *hard;* dūrior, *harder;* dūrissimus, *hardest.*

269. To compare an adjective take the **masc. abl. sing.**, *drop* the end vowel; then add **ior** to form the *comparative degree* and **issimus** to form the *superlative degree.*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE. M. F.	N	SUPERLATIVE.
dūrus, *hard.* [dūro]†	dūrior,	-ius*	dūrissimus
nōbilis, *noble.* [nōbili]	nōbilior,	-ius	nōbilissimus
audāx, *bold.* [audāce]	audācior,	-ius	audācissimus

270. Adjectives in **er** [nom. sing. masc.] add **rimus,** [not issimus] to the *positive* degree in order to form the *superlative degree.*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE. M. F.	N.	SUPERLATIVE.
līber, *free.* [lībero]	līberior,	-ius	līberrimus
aeger, *sick.* [aegro]	aegrior,	-ius	aegerrimus
ācer, *eager.* [ācri]	ācrior,	-ius	ācerrimus

271. Six adjectives in **lis** have **limus** in the *superlative degree.*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE. M. F.	N.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, *easy.* [facili]	facilior,	-ius	facillimus
difficilis, *difficult.* [difficili]	difficilior,	-ius	difficillimus
similis, *like.* [simili]	similior,	-ius	simillimus
dissimilis, *unlike.* [dissimili]	dissimilior,	-ius	dissimillimus
humilis, *low.* [humili]	humilior,	-ius	humillimus
gracilis, *graceful.* [gracili]	gracilior,	-ius	gracillimus

272. Six adjectives have irregular forms in comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE. M. F.	N.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, *good.*	melior	melius	optimus
malus, *bad.*	pējor	pējus	pessimus
māgnus, *large.*	mājor	mājus	māximus
multus, *much.*	——	plūs	plūrimus
parvus, *small.*	minor	minus	minimus
vetus, *old.*	vetustior	vetustius	veterrimus

*See Art. 273, page 135. †Masc. Abl. Sing.

273. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Positive forms have been declined. (see pages 20, 21, 90.)
2. Superlative forms are *all* declined like **bonus.** (see page 20.)
3. Comparative forms are *all* declined like **durior.**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	dūrior	dūrius	dūriōrēs	dūriōra
G.	dūriōris	dūriōris	dūriōrum	dūriōrum
D.	dūriōrī	dūriōrī	dūriōribus	dūriōribus
Ac.	dūriōrem	dūrius	dūriōrēs	dūriōra
Ab.	dūriōre, ī	dūriōre, ī	dūriōribus	dūriōribus

PRACTICE.

274. Compare the following adjectives and decline the comparative of each:

1. altus	11. fēlīx	21. asper	31. atrōx
2. gravis	12. nōbilis	22. clārus	32. dīligēns
3. pulcher	13. piger	23. fortis	33. dīgnus
4. potēns	14. brevis	24. novus	34. acerbus
5. miser	15. placidus	25. niger	35. sapiēns
6. longus	16. celer	26. jūstus	36. cārus
7. vēlōx	17. fidēlis	27. cupidus	37. tristis
8. crūdēlis	18. benīgnus	28. grandis	38. falsus
9. celeber	19. lēnis	29. fīrmus	39. honestus
10. grātus	20. mollis	30. lātus	40. fortūnātus

Plūs is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	.....	**plūs**	**plūrēs**	**plūra**
G.	.....	**plūris**	**plūrium**	**plūrium**
D.	.....	.....	**plūribus**	**plūribus**
Ac.	.....	**plūs**	**plūrēs (īs)**	**plūra**
Ab.	.....	**plūre**	**plūribus**	**plūribus**

275. STUDY RULES OF SYNTAX 14, 24, 29, ON PAGES 34, 37, 38.

EXERCISES.

276. 1. Milites Romani sunt fortiores quam hostes. 2. Equus legati est validus et celer. 3. Equus ducis est celerior. 4. Cives consuli essedam pulcherrimam dederunt. 5. Caesar plurimos militum Romam misit. 6. Liber maximus est discipulo minimo. 7. Imperator est potentior consule. 8. Liberi regis magistro sunt carissimi. 9. Dona oppidanorum principi sunt gratiora quam dona regis. 10. Flumen est altum sed lacus est altior. 11. Uxores captivorum sunt tristissimae. 12. In brevi tempore exercitus iter difficillimum trans Alpes fecit. 13. Mare est placidissimum. 14. Socrates nominatus est vir sapientissimus in Graecia. 15. Puer patri est simillimus.

277. 1. The wisest men are not always the best. 2. The general is richer than the merchant. 3. The horseman has been very kind to the captive. 4. I shall give a new book to the most diligent scholar. 5. Some days are longer than others. 6. In winter the days are shortest. 7. The cavalry had come by the shortest road. 8. The children of the noblest men will be given as hostages. 9. The chiefs of the most powerful states have formed a compact with the Roman general. 10. The water in the river is very low. 11. The journey through the woods was very difficult. 12. The boy has been captured by very bold robbers. 13. I shall lead the soldiers by a far easier road. 14. The cavalry have very sharp swords. 15. Rome is one of the oldest towns of Italy.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

278. To form an adverb from an adjective find the **stem** of the adjective:

If the stem ends in **o** change the *o* to an **e**.

If the stem ends in **i** add **ter**.

If the stem ends in a *consonant* add **ter**.

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb.
jūstus, *just*	[jūsto]	jūstē, *justly*
līber, *free*	[lībero]	līberē, *freely*
pulcher, *beautiful*	[pulchro]	pulchrē, *beautifully*
levis, *light*	[levi]	leviter, *lightly*
ācer, *eager*	[ācri]	ācriter, *eagerly*
audāx, *bold*	[audāc]	audācter, *boldly*
sapiēns, *wise*	[sapient]	sapienter,* *wisely*

279. Some adverbs end in **o**

citō, *quickly*	falsō, *falsely*
crēbrō, *frequently*	prīmō, *at first*
continuō, *immediately*	subitō, *suddenly*
rarō, *rarely*	

280. Some adverbs use the **Neuter Sing. Accus.** of the adjective.

mult**um**, *much*	[plūrim**um**], *especially*
[minim**um**], *least*	facile, *easily*
paul**um**, *little*	impūnē, *unhindered*

281. Some adjectives in **us** form adverbs in **iter**.

fīrm**us**, fīrm**iter**, *firmly*	larg**us**, larg**iter**, *copiously*
hūmān**us**, hūmān**iter**, *humanly*	ali**us**, ali**ter**, *otherwise*

*When t comes after nt drop the first t.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

282. The *comparative of an adverb* is like the **nom. sing. neuter** of the comparative of the *adjective*; the *superlative* may be formed by taking the superlative of the adjective and changing **us** to **e**.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
jūstē	jūstius	jūstissimē
līberē	līberius	līberrimē
pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
leviter	levius	levissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē
sapienter	sapientius	sapientissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

283. The following adverbs are peculiar in formation and comparison.

bene, *well*	**melius**	**optimē**
diū, *long*	**diūtius**	**diūtissimē**
māgnopere, *greatly*	**magis**	**māximē**
male, *ill*	**pējus**	**pessimē**
mātūrē, *early*	**mātūrius**	**mātūrrimē** / **mātūrissimē**
multum, *much*	**plūs**	**plūrimum**
nēquiter, *worthlessly*	**nēquius**	**nēquissimē**
nūper, *recently*	.....	**nūperrimē**
nōn multum, parum } *little*	**minus**	**minimē**
prope, *near*	**propius**	**proximē**
.....	**potius,** *rather*	**potissimum,** *especially*
.....	**prius,** *before*	**primum,** *first*
saepe, *often*	**saepius**	**saepissimē**
secus, *otherwise*	**sētius,** *less*	.....

284. Form an adverb from each of the following adjectives and compare each adverb formed.

1. placidus, *calm.*
2. prūdēns, *prudent.*
3. facilis, *easy.*
4. gravis, *heavy.*
5. ācer, *eager.*
6. mālus, *bad.*
7. brevis, *brief.*
8. altus, *high.*
9. miser, *wretched.*
10. multus, *much.*
11. lātus, *wide.*
12. līber, *free.*
13. cārus, *dear.*
14. levis, *light.*
15. celer, *swift.*
16. fortis, *brave.*
17. pulcher, *beautiful.*
18. audāx, *bold.*
19. certus, *certain.*
20. fēlix, *fortunate.*
21. clārus, *clear.*
22. dīgnus, *worthy.*
23. dīligēns, *diligent.*
24. pār, *equal.*

EXERCISES.

285. 1. Fabri opus peritissime facient. 2. Milites fortes diu atque acriter pugnaverunt. 3. Equites ad arcem celerius quam pedites pervenient. 4. Consul a conjuratis turpiter interfectus est. 5. Caesar captivis caecis veniam libere dabit. 6. Feminae urbis clamore magnopere terrebantur. 7. Dareus in Athenienses impetum subito fecit. 8. Multos annos Orgetorix apud Helvetios plurimum valuit. 9. Cur homo equum crudeliter icit? 10. Nonne bellum ab imperatore felicissime confectum est? 11. Senex regem optime noscit. 12. Exploratores in castra Hannibalis quam celerrime se receperunt. 13. Consul vitas omnium civium fortiter defenderat. 14. Helvetii in finitimos bellum saepissime gerebant. 15. Manus latronum post tergum firmiter vinctae erant. 16. Judex a conventu honorifice exceptus est.

286. 1. The ambassador very wisely kept silent. 2. The scholar is studying very diligently. 3. The ships of the enemy have been well built. 4. A bridge has very recently been built across the river. 5. Did not the men fight most nobly in behalf of their wives and children? 6. The children are dearly loved by the good queen. 7. The Barbarians will fight more bravely than the Roman soldiers. 8. The river flows calmly toward the sea. 9. The ambassador had been more kindly received by the king than by the peasants. 10. The brother of the king was falsely accused. 11. The son-in-law has been very justly punished by the judge. 12. The citizens immediately fled back to their homes. 13. The sea is calmer to-day than it was yesterday. 14. On account of the danger the allies quickly fortified the camp. 15. The enemy are rapidly surrounding the town.

287. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

First Person.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	**ego**, *I.*	**nōs**, *we.*
G.	**meī**, *of me.*	**nostrum (nostrī)**, *of us.*
D.	**mihi (mī)**, *to, for me.*	**nōbīs**, *to, for us.*
Ac.	**mē**, *me.*	**nōs**, *us.*
Ab.	**mē**, ...	**nōbīs**, ...

Second Person.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	**tū**, *thou.*	**vōs**, *ye or you.*
G.	**tuī**, *of thee.*	**vestrum (vestrī)**, *of you.*
D.	**tibi**, *to, for thee*	**vōbīs**, *to, for you.*
Ac.	**tē**, *thee.*	**vōs**, *you.*
Ab.	**tē**, ...	**vōbīs**, ...

Third Person.

There are no forms in Latin for the third person. Hence use the Demonstrative Pronoun **is, ea, id** (see page 146).

288. NOTE: In Latin the **subject forms** of the personal pronouns **are used only for emphasis.**

289. NOTE:
1. *with me* = **mēcum**
2. *with thee* = **tēcum**
3. *with us* = **nōbīscum**
4. *with you* = **vōbīscum**
5. *with himself (herself) (itself)* = **sēcum**
6. *with themselves* = **sēcum**

EXERCISES.

290. 1. Ego et tu erimus amici. 2. Nos sine vobis pugnabimus. 3. Mitte mihi librum. 4. Vos non fortes milites estis. 5. Pueros nobiscum capiemus. 6. Nonne tibi novum gladium dedit? 7. Pater te in navi vidit. 8. Imperator mihi epistulam misit. 9. Sine vobis aut vobiscum victoriam reportabimus. 10. Vir a te interfectus est. 11. Unus nostrum te juvabit. 12. Nos vobiscum iter faciemus. 13. Bellum longum a nobis confectum est. 14. Misitne vobis auxilium? 15. Alii mihi, alii tibi favent.

[Translate every pronoun.]

291. 1. I shall send you to the general. 2. You are strong, we are weak. 3. Send me brave soldiers. 4. The man was not slain by me. 5. He has invited both you and me. 6. Caesar has sent us aid. 7. I shall not make the journey with you. 8. You also were aided by me. 9. Did the beautiful gift please you? 10. Some praise you, others praise me. 11. You only have not pleased me. 12. He has sent me to you. 13. The general has taken all the soldiers with himself. 14. Without you I shall be wretched. 15. The city had not been destroyed by us.

292. 1. Nos cum exercitu te juvabimus. 2. Imperator ad te cum epistula me misit. 3. Multi viri mecum iter longum fecerunt. 4. Nos gladios, vos pila habetis. 5. Romani nobiscum contra Helvetios pugnabant. 6. Omnes milites sine te pontem transcendunt. 7. Epistula longa a me ad Caesarem scripta est. 8. Senex mihi magnum numerum librorum dabit. 9. Rex benignus mei* meminit. 10. Venit mecum in templum Jovis. 11. Non ego sed tu facinus turpe fecisti. 12. Magnas copias militum ad vos mittam. 13. Dux omnes legiones fortes secum habet. 14. Da mihi novum scutum atque gladium acrem. 15. Alii nostrum validi, alii aegri sumus.

* See Rule 8, page 33.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

293. **meus, -a, -um,** *my, mine.*
tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thime; your, yours.*
suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their (own).*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	meus	mea	meum	meī	meae	mea
G.	meī	meae	meī	meōrum	meārum	meōrum
D.	meō	meae	meō	meīs	meīs	meīs
Ac.	meum	meam	meum	meōs	meās	mea
Ab.	meō	meā	meō	meīs	meīs	meīs

NOTE; Vocative sing. masc. **mī.**

294. *his = of him* = **ējus**
her = of her = **ējus**
its = of it = **ējus**
} These are pure genitive forms. They modify a noun, but do not agree with it.

295. **noster, -tra, -trum,** *our, ours.*
vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Ac.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Ab.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

296. *their* (masc.) = *of them* = **eōrum.**
their (fem.) = *of them* = **eārum.**
their (neut.) = *of them* = **eōrum.**
} These are pure genitive forms. They modify a noun, but do not agree with it.

297. **Study Rule of Syntax 34, page 39.**

EXERCISES.

298. 1. Noster imperator suos milites habet. 2. Meum librum filio meo dabo. 3. Nostri milites sine scutis pugnabant. 4. Hostes naves nostras vident. 5. Virtus ejus imperatori suo placuit. 6. Nostro regi tuum filium mittam. 7. Equi militum vestrorum sunt celeri. 8. Nonne sunt carri eorum magni et lati? 9. Mitte mihi mea tela? 10. Tuum munus habes. 11. Imperator legionum nostrarum est vetus. 12. Senex filio suo gladium dederat. 13. Tua uxor equum pulchrum habet. 14. Nonne ejus gladium habes? 15. Tui liberi vocem tuam audiverunt.

[Translate every pronoun.]

299. 1. He has his own sword. 2. Our king gave my son a book. 3. Their leader will not send us aid. 4. We saw your slave. 5. Have you not my knife? 6. I have sent my messenger to your house. 7. Our king is kind. 8. The leader of our army is sick. 9. He has given my son a sword. 10. The mother of the girls has their books. 11. Bring my javelin to me! 12. His soldiers were brave. 13. I shall fight for my country. 14. The daughter of our master is good. 15. I have given my money to your soldiers.

300. 1. Noster exercitus regem tuum vicit. 2. Nostri milites tela sua habebant. 3. Poculum matri meae dabo. 4. Mitte nobis legatum vestrum. 5. Nuntius nostrum responsum audivit. 6. In castra ejus impetum fecerunt. 7. Mercatores naves suas miserant. 8. Veniesne in tuo carro? 9. Milites imperatori suo placuerunt. 10. Impedimenta ejus non capta sunt. 11. Nonne sunt meae naves in portu? 12. Meus nuntius tuo filio epistulam habet. 13. Ubi nostrum exercitum videbas? 14. Carros eorum cepimus. 15. Oppugnaverunt urbem nostram.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

301. **Suī**, *of himself, etc.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL
N.	.....	.....
G.	**suī**, *of himself, herself, itself.*	**suī**, *of themselves.*
D.	**sibi**, *to, for himself, etc.*	**sibi**, *to, for themselves.*
Ac.	**sē (sēsē)**, *himself, etc.*	**sē (sēsē)**, *themselves.*
Ab.	**sē (sēsē)**,.....	**sē (sēsē)**,.....

302. The forms of **suī**, etc., are used only when the pronoun names the *same* person or thing *as the subject.*

1. Brutus **eum** interfecit.
   Brutus killed **him.**
2. Femina est **ejus** memor.
   The woman is mindful **of her.**

1. Brutus **se** interfecit.
   Brutus killed **himself.**
2. Femina est **sui** memor.
   The woman is mindful **of herself.**

INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

303. **Ipse**, *self (myself, thyself, himself, herself, etc.)*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

304. The forms of **ipse** are used only to *intensify* the meaning of a noun or a pronoun. If, in English, the *himself, herself, itself, themselves* can be omitted **without changing the meaning** of the sentence, then use some form of **ipse.**

Ex. Homo **ipse** latronem cepit.
The man **himself** captured the robber.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

305. **Hīc**, *this (near.)* (See also page 146.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut
N.	**hic**	**haec**	**hōc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
G	**hūjus**	**hūjus**	**hūjus**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
D	**huīc**	**huīc**	**huīc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Ac.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hōc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Ab.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

306. The forms of **hic** are used by the speaker to refer to any person or thing **near** him (usually, within his reach); see art. 313.

EXERCISES.

307. 1. Hunc librum tibi dabo. 2. Nemo sibi vivit. 3. Princeps ipse ad regem venit. 4. Filium hujus viri vidimus. 5. Senex se vulneraverat. 6. Mittemus ad regem ducem ipsum. 7. Gladii horum equitum sunt acres. 8. Ducis ipsius responsum habemus. 9. Miles in castris se interfecerat. 10. Mercator a hoc judice punitus est. 11. Causa hujus belli fuit odium. 12. Feminae ipsae hos fugitivos juvaverunt. 13. Pater horum liberorum est aeger. 14. Caesar in Italiam se recepit. 15. Epistula per se contumelia fuit.

[Translate every pronoun.]

308. 1. The town itself has many large buildings. 2. These merchants have sent to the consul himself a beautiful gift. 3. Rome itself has been destroyed by this bold commander. 4. The robber slew himself with his own weapon. 5. The temples of these cities have been built by the citizens themselves. 6. I myself shall give to this child a new book. 7. These soldiers procured themselves food. 8. I shall send this letter to the king himself. 9. All the battles of this war are being won by the Barbarians themselves. 10. They had trained themselves in the art of war.

309. 1. Hi viri a rege ipso ad conloquium invitati sunt. 2. Eques suo gladio se interfecit. 3. Ego ipse meum exercitum in planitiem ducam. 4. Hae feminae speculatorem prope castra viderunt. 5. Noster imperator his militibus magna praemia dederat. 6. Legati ipsi pro civibus hujus urbis pacem petunt. 7. Haec omnia imperatori placebant. 8. Liberi parentum harum sunt laeti et boni. 9. Opus a his servis magna cura factum est. 10. Milites memores* sui non erant.

*See Rule 8, page 33.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—(*Continued.*)

310. **Iste**, *that, that of yours.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	**iste**	**ista**	**istud**	**istī**	**istae**	**ista**
G.	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
D.	**istī**	**istī**	**istī**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**
Ac.	**istum**	**istam**	**istud**	**istōs**	**istās**	**ista**
Ab.	**istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**

311. **Ille**, *that (yonder).*

N.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**
G.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
D.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Ac.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**
Ab.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

312. **Is**, *that, this;* also *he, she, it.*

N.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī (iī)**	**eae**	**ea**
G.	**ējus**	**ējus**	**ējus**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
D.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs, (iīs)**	**eīs, (iīs)**	**eīs, (iīs)**
Ac.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Ab.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs, (iīs)**	**eīs, (iīs)**	**eīs, (iīs)**

NOTE: **Idem**, *same*, is a compound of **is**. To decline **īdem** place **dem** after each form of **is**; then the **s** of **is** and the **d** of **id** are dropped and an **m** before a **d** changes to an **n**.

313. **Remarks:**

1. **Hic** (Art. 305) refers to persons or things *near the speaker.*

It is sometimes called the *Demonstrative of the First Person.*

2. **Iste** (Art. 310) refers to persons or things near the *one spoken to.*

It is sometimes called the *Demonstrative of the Second Person.*

3. **Ille** (Art. 311) refers to persons or things *within sight* but *not* near the speaker or the one spoken to.

It is sometimes called the *Demonstrative of the Third Person.*

4. **Is** (Art. 312) refers to persons or things *not within sight*, but *known* to the speaker or the one spoken to.

5. When two persons or things have been mentioned, **ille** is used to refer to the *former*, **hic** to refer to the *latter.*

EXERCISES.

314. 1. Hic nobilis, ille vir est turpis. 2. Ii veteres Romani fuerunt validi. 3. Consules illum, non hunc virum miserunt. 4. Ista esseda non est nova. 5. Ii hostes nostri capti sunt. 6. Gladius illius imperatoris est pulcher. 7. Reginaene illum donum mittes? 8. Mores earum gentium sunt crudeles. 9. Ii validi, nos fortes sumus. 10. Esseda ejus deleta erat. 11. Victoria ab eo non reportata est. 12. Nos cum eis non ambulabimus. 13. Eorum pars ad flumen fugiebat. 14. Illi sunt benigni sed hi sunt crudeles.

[Translate every pronoun.]

315. 1. Their baseness has roused the people. 2. This army has won many battles. 3. Have you seen him? 4. In that battle many were wounded. 5. The son of that man is a soldier. 6. All these things will be destroyed by them. 7. This book is large, that (of yours) is smaller, that (yonder) is the smallest. 8. Do you see that camp among the trees? 9. They did it with great swiftness. 10. On that day the city was stormed. 11. The Romans built that bridge. 12. We have given them food and water. 13. Their hearts are sad. 14. I shall give this letter to that man, not to this one. 15. The former is a Roman, the latter a Gaul.

316. 1. Rex hos homines ad urbem invitavit. 2. Eisne id imperator misit? 3. Illa urbs ab eo deleta est. 4. Nos in castra ejus impetum faciemus. 5. Cives eum consulem fecerunt. 6. Ille magnum numerum militum secum habet. 7. Mitte ad eos aliam legionem militum. 8. Id responsum mihi non placet. 9. Diu atque acriter contra eos pugnabamus. 10. Hic judex tibi erit benignus. 11. Pater hujus pueri ab eis interfectus est. 12. Porta mihi istum scutum. 13. In ea nocte prope flumen remanserunt. 14. Naves eorum adsunt in portu.

RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

317. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: **quī, quae, quod,** *who, which, what.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
G.	**cūjus**	**cūjus**	**cūjus**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
D.	**cuī**	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Ac.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Ab.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

318. **Study Rule of Syntax 36, page 39.**

319. 1. Omnes nos eos amamus qui sunt boni. 2. Imperator militi praemium dabit cujus virtutem viderat. 3. Hic est vir cui cives gladium dederunt. 4. Rex, qui a toto populo amatus est, heri vita excessit. 5. Caesar cum legionibus, quae sibi erant, discessit. 6. Servus, quem dominus crudeliter tractavit, non vivet. 7. Hominem ceperunt a quo dux interfectus erat. 8. Hostes, contra quos pugnamus, sunt fortes validique. 9. Oppidani non fuerunt benigni nobis qui eis sumus socii. 10. Oppidum, quod obsidemus, cras capietur.

320. 1. We have no ships in which to make the journey. 2. Did you send the letter which you had written? 3. The allies for whom Rome fought have been victorious 4. Many men of whom we do not hear are brave and loyal. 5. The women who had followed the army were slain by the enemy. 6. Those who fight for their country are not always rewarded. 7. The authority which the consul held was very great. 8. They have caught the robbers by whom the gold had been taken. 9. The Romans built ships with which to destroy the pirates. 10. The deeds which this man has done are atrocious.

321. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN: **quis, quae, quid?** *who? which? what?*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	**quis**	**quae**	**quid**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
G.	**cūjus**	**cūjus**	**cūjus**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
D.	**cuī**	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Ac.	**quem**	**quam**	**quid**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Ab.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

322. THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE: *which? what?* is declined like **quī** (Art. 317).

323. 1. Qui est hic imperator nobilis? 2. Quem ad regem misisti? 3. Cujus flores sunt hae? 4. In cujus esseda per urbem iter facies? 5. Cui librum novum magister dabit? 6. In qua navi Romam iter facietis? 7. Quae oppida contra nos colonias juverunt? 8. Qui meum scutum vidit? 9. In quo loco hostes sua castra conlocabunt? 10. Quibus militibus magna praemia argenti dederat?

324. 1. Whom shall we send as an ambassador? 2. By which robber was the consul slain? 3. Who is the horseman who has so bravely defended the bridge? 4. Whom did you see yesterday? 5. Which legions has Caesar taken with him? 6. In which wagon will you place the arrows? 7. What did you do to the man whom you caught? 8. Whose child is that with you? 9. Who are these horsemen whom the king has praised? 10. For whose sake has this monument been erected?

325. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

	M.	F.	N.
Pronouns or Adjectives	**quis,**	quae,	quid, *some one, something*
	aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid, *any one, anything.*
	quispiam,	quaepiam,	quidpiam, *anyone (whatever).*
	quisquam,	. . . . .	quidquam, *anyone at all.*
	quidam,	quaedam,	quiddam, *a certain one.*
	quisque,	quaeque,	quidque. *everyone, everything.*
	quivis,	quaevis,	quidvis, *anyone you please.*
	quicunque,	quaecunque,	quodcunque, *anyone, who* . . . .
	quisquis,	. . . .	quidquid, *everyone, who* . . . . .
Adjectives	**qui,**	quae,	quod, *any at all.*
	aliqui,	aliquae,	aliquod, *any.*
	quispiam,	quaepiam,	quodpiam, *any whatever.*
	quidam,	quaedam,	quoddam, *a certain.*
	quisque,	quaeque,	quodque, *each, every.*
	quivis,	quaevis,	quodvis, *any you please.*
	quicunque,	quaecunque,	quodcunque, *every, who* . . . . .

326. DEPONENT VERBS.

Deponent verbs are *passive in form* but *active in meaning.*

I. Conj. **hortor, hortārī, hortātus,** *to encourage.*
II. Conj. **tueor, tuērī, tuitus,** *to defend.*
III. Conj. **loquor, loquī, locūtus,** *to speak.*
IV. Conj. **potīor, potīrī, potītus,** *to gain possession of.*

INDICATIVE.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
Pres.	hortor	tueor	loquor	potior
	hortāris	tuēris	luqueris	potīris
	hortātur	tuētur	loquitur	potītur
	hortāmur	tuēmur	loquimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	tuēminī	loquiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	tuentur	loquuntur	potiuntur
Imperf.	hortābar	tuēbar	loquēbar	potiēbar
Fut.	hortābor	tuēbor	loquar	potiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	tuitus sum	locūtus sum	potītus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	tuitus eram	locūtus eram	potītus eram
Fut. Perf.	hortātus erō	tuitus erō	locūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	hortor	tuear	loquar	potiar
Imperf.	hortārer	tuerer	loquerer	potīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	tuitus sim	locūtus sim	potītus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	tuitus essem	locūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	hortāre	tuēre	loquere	potīre
Fut.	hortātor	tuētor	loquitor	potītor

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	hortāri	tuērī	loquī	potīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	tuitus esse	locūtus esse	potītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus esse	tuitūrus esse	locūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	hortāns	tuēns	loquēns	potiēns
Fut.	hortātūrus	tuitūrus	locūtūrus	potītūrus
Perf.	hortātus	tuitus	locūtus	potītus
Ger.	hortandus	tuendus	loquendus	potiendus

GERUND.

	hortandī	tuendī	loquendī	potiendī
	hortandō, etc.	tuendō, etc.	loquendō, etc.	potiendō, etc.

SUPINE.

	hortātum, -tū	tuitum, -tū	locūtum, -tū	potītum, -tū

327. A PARTIAL LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS.

I. Verbs conjugated like **hortor.**

1.	**admīror**	**admīrārī**	**admīrātus**	—*to admire.*
2.	**arbitror**	**arbitrārī**	**arbitrātus**	—*to think.*
3.	**conor**	**conārī**	**conātus**	—*to attempt.*
4.	**cunctor**	**cunctārī**	**cunctātus**	—*to hesitate.*
5.	**dominor**	**dominārī**	**dominātus**	—*to rule.*
6.	**īnsidior**	**īnsidiārī**	**īnsidiātus**	—*to lie in wait.*
7.	**moror**	**morārī**	**morātus**	—*to hinder.*
8.	**vagor**	**vagārī**	**vagātus**	—*to wander.*

II. Verbs conjugated like **tueor.**

9.	**confiteor**	**confitērī**	**confessus**	—*to confess.*
10.	**mereor**	**merērī**	**meritus**	—*to deserve.*
11.	**polliceor**	**pollicērī**	**pollicitus**	—*to promise.*
12.	**profiteor**	**profitērī**	**professus**	—*to declare publicly.*
13.	**reor**	**rērī**	**ratus**	—*to think.*
14.	**vereor**	**verērī**	**veritus**	—*to fear.*

III. Verbs conjugated like **loquor.**

15.	**fruor**	**fruī**	**frūctus**	—*to enjoy.*
16.	**fungor**	**fungī**	**fūnctus**	—*to perform.*
17.	**nāscor**	**nāscī**	**nātus**	—*to be born.*
18.	**oblīvīscor**	**oblīvīscī**	**oblītus**	—*to forget.*
19.	**patior**	**patī**	**passus**	—*to suffer.*
20.	**proficīscor**	**proficīscī**	**profectus**	—*to set out.*
21.	**queror**	**querī**	**questus**	—*to complain.*
22.	**revertor**	**revertī**	**reversus**	—*to return.*
23.	**sequor**	**sequī**	**secūtus**	—*to follow.*
24.	**ulcīscor**	**ulcīscī**	**ultus**	—*to avenge.*
25.	**ūtor**	**ūtī**	**ūsus**	—*to use.*

IV. Verbs conjugated like **potior.**

26.	**adorior**	**adorīrī**	**adortus**	—*to attack.*
27.	**experior**	**experīrī**	**expertus**	—*to try.*
28.	**morior**	**morī (morīrī)**	**mortuus**	—*to die.*
29.	**orior**	**orīrī**	**ortus**	—*to arise.*
30.	**partior**	**partīrī**	**partītus**	—*to divide.*

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

328. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS have the

Present, Imperfect and *Future tenses* in the **Active Voice.**
Perfect, Pluperfect and *Fut. Perf. tenses* in the **Passive Voice.**
The meaning is always active.

329. EXAMPLE.

Prin. Parts: **gaudeō, gaudērē, gāvīsus sum,** *to rejoice.*

PRESENT, gaudeō, gaudēs, gaudet, gaudēmus, gaudētis, gaudent.
IMPERFECT, gaudēbam, gaudēbās, gaudēbat, gaudēbāmus, *etc.*
FUTURE, gaudēbō, gaudēbis, gaudēbit, gaudēbimus, *etc.*
PERFECT, gāvīsus sum, gāvīsus es, gāvīsus est, *etc.*
PLUPERF., gāvīsus eram, gāvīsus erās, gāvīsus erat, *etc.*
FUT. PERF., gāvīsus erō, gāvīsus eris, gāvīsus erit, *etc.*

A LIST OF SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

audeō,	**audēre,**	**ausus sum,**	*to dare.*	2nd. Conjugation.
gaudeō,	**gaudēre,**	**gāvīsus sum,**	*to rejoice.*	2nd. Conjugation.
soleō,	**solēre,**	**solitus sum,**	*to be wont.*	2nd. Conjugation.
fīdō,	**fīdere**	**fīsus sum,**	*to trust.*	3rd. Conjugation.
cōnfīdō,	**cōnfīdere,**	**confīsus sum,**	*to trust entirely.*	3rd. Conjugation.

330. Study Rules of Syntax 8, 18, 37 on pages 33, 35, 39.

EXERCISES.

331. 1. Adhuc tempestas iter legionum non morata est. 2. Vir aeger ardore solis fruetur. 3. In eo anno magna multitudo incolarum mortua est. 4. Imperator cum suis militibus praedam partietur. 5. Galli pulchra aedificia Romae admirabantur. 6. Talemne cladem gravem meriti erant Romani? 7. Captivi cantibus avium fruuntur. 8. Tarquinius magna severitate suum populum dominatus est. 9. Explorator tacitus vestigia in silvis secutus erat. 10. Captivi superbi de suis casibus nunquam querebantur.

332. 1. The soldiers used their baggage as a barrier. 2. The sun will rise very early to-morrow. 3. The maritime colonies have promised the leader many ships. 4. The army is performing its duty with great faithfulness. 5. Will the general follow the enemy through the woods? 6. The enemy had gained possession of all the towns in Gaul. 7. The inhabitants have forgotten the great kindness of their ruler. 8. We shall avenge the slaughter of the citizens who were our allies. 9. The cattle had wandered through the fields to the river. 10. The old man was suffering much for the sake of his king.

EXERCISES.

333. 1. Mea soror nobiscum in Italiam revertetur. 2. Nonne consul caedem sui collegae nobilis ultus est? 3. In nocte hostes nuntio regis insidiati erant. 4. Caesar cum paucis militibus Romam proficiscetur. 5. Exploratores defessi somno gratissimo fruuntur. 6. Nuntius cum hominibus breviter locutus est. 7. Feminae liberique fame atque siti passae erant. 8. Magistratus benignis verbis cives hortabantur. 9. Liberi parentibus confiduntur qui eis sunt boni. 10. Pyrrhus virtute militum suorum gavisus est.

334. 1. The Roman slaves were accustomed to cruelty and harshness. 2. The common people had trusted the fidelity and the wisdom of the consul. 3. The robbers fear the power and the severity of the judge. 4. The tiger will defend its offspring with great courage. 5. Has the old man forgotten the name of the lieutenant? 6. A great tumult arose in another part of the city. 7. The consul will use the evidence against the conspirators. 8. Socrates, the philosopher, died in prison. 9. The master encourages the scholars in their difficult tasks.

335. NUMERALS.

Cardinal numbers are used in counting and answer the question **Quot?** *How many?*

Ordinal numbers are used to designate position and answer the question **Quotus?** *Which in order?*

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	
1. **ūnus, -a, -um,** *one.*	**prīmus, -a, -um,** *first.*	I.
2. **duo, duae, duo,** *two.*	**secundus,** *second.*	II.
3. **trēs tria,** *three.*	**tertius,** *third.*	III.
4. **quattuor (quatuor)**	**quārtus**	IV.
5. **quīnque**	**quīntus**	V.
6. **sex**	**sextus**	VI.
7. **septem**	**septimus**	VII.
8. **octō**	**octāvus**	VIII.
9. **novem**	**nōnus**	IX.
10. **decem**	**decimus**	X.
11. **ūndecim**	**ūndecimus**	XI.
12. **duodecim**	**duodecimus**	XII.
13. **tredecim**	**tertius decimus**	XIII.
14. **quattuordecim**	**quārtus decimus**	XIV.
15. **quīndecim**	**quīntus decimus**	XV.
16. **sēdecim,** or **sexdecim**	**sextus decimus**	XVI.
17. **septendecim**	**septimus decimus**	XVII.
18. **duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)**	**duodēvīcēsīmus**	XVIII.
19. **ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)**	**ūndēvīcēsimus**	XIX.
20. **vīgintī**	**vīcēsimus (vigesimus)**	XX.
21. **vīgintī ūnus**	**vīcēsimus prīmus**	XXI.
22. **vīgintī duo**	**vīcēsimus secundus**	XXII.
28. **duodētrīgintā**	**duodētrīcēsimus**	XXVIII.
29. **ūndētrīgintā**	**ūndētrīcēsimus**	XXIX.
30. **trīgintā**	**trīcēsimus**	XXX.
40. **quadrāgintā**	**quadrāgēsimus**	XL.
50. **quīnquāgintā**	**quīnquāgēsimus**	L.
60. **sexāgintā**	**sexāgēsimus**	LX.
70. **septuāgintā**	**septuāgēsimus**	LXX.
80. **octōgintā**	**octōgēsimus**	LXXX.
90. **nōnāgintā**	**nōnāgēsimus**	XC.
100. **centum**	**centēsimus**	C.

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	
101.	centum unus, or centum et unus	centēsimus prīmus, or centēsimus et prīmus	CI.
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	CC.
300.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	CCC.
400.	quadringentī	quadrīngentēsimus	CCCC.
500.	quingentī	quīngentēsimus	IↃ. or D.
600.	sescentī (sexcenti)	sescentēsimus	DC.
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	DCC.
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	DCCC.
900.	nongentī	nōngentēsimus	DCCCC.
1000.	mille	millēsimus	CIↃ. or M.
2000.	duo milia (millia)	bis millēsimus	MM.
5000.	quinque milia (millia)	quīnquiēs millēsimus	IↃↃ.
10000.	decem milia (millia)	deciēs millēsimus	CCIↃↃ.
100000.	centum milia (millia)	centiēs millēsimus	CCCIↃↃↃ.

336. Unus, duo and **tres** are declinable.

For the declension of **unus** see art. 262, page 132,

Duo and **tres** are declined as follows:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. & F.	N.
N.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**	**trēs**	**tria**
G.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**	**trium**	**trium**
D.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**
Ac.	**duōs** (duo)	**duās**	**duo**	**trēs**	**tria**
Ab.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**

Note: **ambō,** *both*, is declined like **duo.**

337. The cardinals from **4** *to* **100** are *indeclinable.*

338. Ducentī (200) **trecentī** (300), etc., are declined like the plural of **bonus** (art. 52, page 20.)

339. Mīlle is indeclinable.

Mīlia is declined as follows:

mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlibus.

(These forms are **nouns** and *take a partitive genitive after them.*)

340. The **ordinals** are all declined like **bonus** (page 20.)

341. STUDY RULES OF SYNTAX 7 AND 21, PAGES 33, 36.

EXERCISES.

342. 1. Imperator auxilio ponti equites quinque reliquit. 2. In diebus duobus ad flumen perveniemus. 3. Tertio die hostes eruptionem ex oppido fecerunt. 4. Annus Romanorum decem menses habuit. Annus noster menses duodecim habet. 5. Kalendae erant dies primi mensis; Nonae erant quinti aut septimi; Idus erant tertii decimi aut quinti decimi. 6. Aedificium ducentos viginti pedes longum sed non quinquaginta pedes latum fuit. 7. Cohors fuit decima pars legionis. Ea circiter quadringentos homines continuit. 8. Legio plures tribus milibus militum continuit. 9. Decima legio fortis atque valida fuit. 10. Numerus hostium erat circiter quadringenti triginta. 11. In pugnam quingentos pedites mittemus. 12. Bellum ab imperatore in tribus annis confectum erat. 13. Caesar secum tria milia militum habebat. 14. Exercitus in tribus diebus sexaginta milia passuum progressus erat.

343. 1. The Gauls had given Caesar fifty hostages. 2. The enemy located camp not more than four miles from us. 3. This man has five brave sons. The fifth is twenty years old. 4. Two thousand men had been slain in the great battle. 5. Have you twenty brave men? 6. There are two hundred and thirty-five buildings in this town. 7. Caesar has sent three legions as an aid to the townsmen. 8. About the fourth hour of the day the ships entered the harbor. 9. The wheel of one chariot had been broken. 10. Two legions sailed in the new ships. 11. The city was besieged by the Greeks for ten years. 12. Send me twenty-five ships within ten days. 13. Caesar has taken the tenth legion with him.

344. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the meaning of each of the following words. Give the declension and gender of each noun.

1. duo
2. ultrā
3. senātor
4. merīdiēs
5. ōrātiō
6. jam
7. lēx
8. fūnis
9. foedus
10. mālō
11. idōneus
12. minimē
13. supersum
14. vectīgal
15. referō
16. dēsum
17. intersum
18. instruō
19. adeō
20. ambō
21. plūs
22. comperiō
23. caput
24. ēruptiō
25. crēdō
26. speciēs
27. mīlle
28. offerō
29. lacus
30. frīgus
31. genus
32. tollō
33. exeō
34. mare
35. pāx
36. mundus
37. fīniō
38. trānsferō
39. animal
40. trēs
41. clārus
42. auxilium
43. quīnque
44. pār
45. facultās
46. causa
47. ferō
48. occāsiō
49. recēns
50. facinus
51. cōnferō
52. ūsus
53. pereō
54. contumēlia
55. imperium
56. arx
57. crēbrō
58. innocēns
59. nōlō
60. dēferō
61. absum
62. incipiō
63. perniciēs
64. conjūrātiō
65. prōsum
66. atque
67. parēns
68. fīrmus
69. inopia
70. paucus
71. audācia
72. obses
73. ineō
74. possum
75. arrogantia
76. praesum
77. differō
78. aetās
79. cōnstituō
80. adferō
81. discrīmen
82. necessārius
83. redeō
84. agmen
85. prex
86. percipiō
87. abeō
88. nunquam
89. praetereō
90. putō

345. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the Latin form for each of the following words.

1. to survive
2. coldness
3. three
4. to offer
5. citadel
6. least
7. to raise
8. two
9. one thousand
10. ruin
11. beyond
12. to bear
13. to determine
14. animal
15. tributary
16. be in command
17. famous
18. senator
19. to begin
20. now
21. power
22. midday
23. occasion
24. to be among
25. scarcity
26. to perish
27. to bear away
28. age
29. to bear to
30. to think
31. recent
32. aid
33. oration
34. cause
35. appearance
36. race
37. to be lacking
38. to bear back
39. to go into
40. to believe
41. be unwilling
42. law
63. peace
44. opportunity
45. to draw up
46. to bear across
47. insolence
48. use
49. world
50. conspiracy
51. insult
52. to perceive
53. frequently
54. innocent
55. lake
56. rope
57. sortie
58. suitable
59. to find out
60. firm
61. treaty
62. head
63. to be absent
64. hostage
65. to put off
66. prayer
67. to go away
68. to go to
69. five
70. deed
71. to prefer
72. to benefit
73. to go out
74. never
75. more
76. equal
77. and also
78. few
79. to be able
80. crisis
81. to pass by
82. boldness
83. to return
84. both
85. sea
86. to limit
87. bring together
88. parent
89. line of march
90. necessary

346. THE VERB—FERO.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum** = *to bear.*

	ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
		INDICATIVE.		
Pres.	**ferō**	**ferimus**	**feror**	**ferimur**
	fers	**fertis**	**ferris**, *or* **-re**	**feriminī**
	fert	**ferunt**	**fertur**	**feruntur**
Imperf.	**ferēbam***		**ferēbar**	
Fut.	**feram, ferēs**, *etc.*		**ferar, -ferēris**, *etc.*	
Perf.	**tulī**		**lātus sum**	
Plup.	**tuleram**		**lātus eram**	
F. P.	**tulerō**		**lātus erō**	
		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Pres.	**feram, ferās**, *etc.*		**ferar, ferāris**, *etc.*	
Imperf.	**ferrem**		**ferrer**	
Perf.	**tulerim**		**lātus sim**	
Plup.	**tulissem**		**lātus essem**	
		IMPERATIVE.		
Pres.	**fer**	**ferte**	**(ferre)**	**feriminī**
Fut.	**fertō**	**fertōte**	**fertor**	
	fertō	**feruntō**	**fertor**	**feruntor**
		INFINITIVE.		
Pres.	**ferre**		**ferrī**	
Perf.	**tulisse**		**lātus esse**	
Fut.	**lātūrus esse**		**lātum īrī**	
		PARTICIPLES.		
Pres.	**ferēns**		*Ger.* **ferendus**	
Fut.	**lātūrus**		*Perf.* **lātus**	

GERUND.

G. **ferendī** Ac. **ferendum**
D. **ferendō** Ab. **ferendō**

SUPINE.

Ac. **lātum** Ab. **lātū**

*From this point on **fero** is conjugated like **rego**, page 94.

347. PRACTICE ON FERO.

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. ferō
2. ferātur
3. feror
4. fertur
5. tulerit
6. ferre
7. tulērunt
8. tulissem
9. feret
10. ferēbant
11. fers
12. ferrent
13. lātus erit
14. tulistī
15. ferimur
16. ferēbam
17. ferant
18. ferēns
19. tulerint
20. lātī essent
21. ferrī
22. feruntur
23. ferēmus
24. ferat
25. lātus sim
26. tuleram
27. ferrer
28. tulisse
29. tulerant
30. ferāmus
31. fert
32. tulit
33. lātus sit
34. tulisset
35. tulerim
36. lātum īrī
37. ferar
38. lātus erō
39. ferunt
40. tulissent
41. tulī
42. lātus est
43. fer
44. tulerat
45. ferrētur
46. ferimus
47. lāti sunt
48. lātus erat
49. ferēbat
50. feram
51. lātūrus esse
52. fertō
53. tulerō
54. lāti erunt
55. fertis
56. ferāmus
57. lātus esset
58. feriminī
59. ferrem
60. tulerimus

* Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

348. PRACTICE ON FERO.

Give the mood, tense, voice, number and person of each form and translate.

1. they bear
2. he has been borne
3. to be borne
4. I shall bear
5. you are borne
6. bear ye
7. you had borne
8. to bear
9. he will bear
10. he *shall* bear
11. they will be borne
12. we have borne
13. for bearing
14. we have been borne
15. you have borne
16. he had been borne
17. I am borne
18. being about to bear
19. we shall be borne
20. we shall bear
21. by bearing
22. they are borne
23. they *shall* bear
24. bearing
25. you will bear
26. he had borne
27. having been borne
28. they have borne
29. you had been borne
30. to have borne
31. they were borne
32. bear thou
33. he bore
34. he will be borne
35. of bearing
36. they had borne
37. I was borne
38. thou hast borne
39. they had been borne
40. he *shall* be borne
41. thou wilt bear
42. he was borne
43. he bears
44. you bore
45. thou wast borne
46. to be about to bear
47. I had borne
48. thou *shalt* bear
49. you will be borne
50. he has borne
51. he will have been borne
52. to have been borne
53. thou hadst borne
54. they will bear
55. they have been borne
56. thou art borne
57. we bear
58. I have been borne
59. they will have borne
60. I had borne

349. SOME COMPOUNDS OF FERO.

The compounds are conjugated just like the simple verb.

(See page 159).

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*P. P. P. N.**	*Meaning.*
auferō	auferre	abstulī	ablātum	*to bear off.*
adferō	adferre	attulī	allātum	*to bring to.*
anteferō	anteferre	antetulī	antelātum	*to place before.*
cōnferō	cōnferre	contulī	collātum	*to bring together.*
dēferō	dēferre	dētulī	dēlātum	*to carry down.*
differō	differre	distulī	dīlātum	*to put off.*
efferō	efferre	extulī	ēlātum	*to carry away.*
īnferō	īnferre	intulī	illātum	*to bring against.*
offerō	offerre	obtulī	oblātum	*to offer.*
perferō	perferre	pertulī	perlātum	*to carry through.* *to endure.*
prōferō	prōferre	prōtulī	prōlātum	*to bring out.*
referō	referre	rettulī	relātum	*to bring back.*
tollō	tollere	sustulī	sublātum	*to carry off.*
trānsferō	trānsferre	trānstulī	trānslātum	*to carry over.*

350. Study Rule of Syntax 12, page 34.

EXERCISES.

351. 1. Legiones conjunxerunt atque signa in hostes intulerunt. 2. Nos comitibus subsidium feremus. 3. Multi servi servitutem patienter perferunt. 4. Navis in eam partem vento ferebatur. 5. Omnia impedimenta in unum locum collata sunt. 6. Non longius iter Romam differam. 7. Oppidani impetum Romanorum non longe tulerant. 8. In itinere onera a calonibus ferebantur. 9. Nostrae naves tempestatem facilius quam naves hostium ferent. 10. Milites vulneratos in carris novis rettulerunt.

*Perfect Passive Participle, neuter.

352. 1. Our strong ships will endure the storm easily. 2. The soldier bears his wounds with great bravery. 3. On the following day the general offered peace to the townsmen. 4. Caesar is carrying the booty away with him to Rome. 5. Will the merchant bring his wares to the camp? 6. The swords and the javelins had been collected by the victors. 7. Now we shall bring war against the pirates of our seas. 8. Many men put off their tasks from day to day. 9. I shall not bring back the slave whom I have freed. 10. Such injuries and insults will not be endured.

EXERCISES.

353. 1. Barbari in silvas paludesque omnes suas possessiones tulerunt. 2. Desertores famam proelii perferunt. 3. Non inferte bellum in pueros atque mulieres innocentes! 4. Tempestas naves in litora Italiae referebat. 5. Distulistine pensum quod faciebas? 6. Populus regi pro meritis gratiam referet. 7. Hic miles suas injurias patienter perfert. 8. Oppidani cibum atque vestes nautis defessis ferent. 9. Dux omnibus suis hostibus veniam obtulerat. 10. Homo propter vulnus in pectore multum sustulit.

354. 1. The citizens took away all the gold from the temples. 2. The day of the conference has been put off by the generals. 3. A great reward was offered by the king. 4. The spies had brought back a good report concerning the land. 5. Will they bring aid to the tired defenders of the town? 6. The messenger will compare the size of the king's army with that of the Romans. 7. The children of the chief have been carried off by the robbers. 8. The old men are bringing back the gift. 9. We have compared the poems of the new writer with these. 10. The man bears in his hands a golden cup.

355. THE VERB EO, *to go.*

PRIN. PARTS:

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum.

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	eō	īmus
	īs	ītis
	it	eunt
Imperf.	**ībam**	
Fut.	**ībō**	
Perf.	**iī (īvī)**	
Plup.	**ieram (īveram)**	
F. P.	**ierō (īverō)**	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	**eam, -ās,** *etc.*
Imperf.	**īrem**
Perf.	**ierim (īverim)**
Plup.	**iissem (īvissem)**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	ī	īte
Fut.	ītō	ītōte
	ītō	euntō

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	**īre**
Perf.	**iisse (īvisse)**
Fut.	**itūrus esse**

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	**iēns, euntis,** *etc.*
Fut.	**itūrus**

GERUND.

G. **eundī**
D. **eundō**
Ac. **eundum**
Ab. **eundō**

SUPINE.

Ac. **itum**
Ab. **itū**

356. THE VERB FIO, *to become.*

PRIN. PARTS:

fīō, fierī, factus sum.

INDICATIVE.

fīō	**fīmus**
fīs	**fītis**
fit	**fīunt**

fīēbam
fīam, -ēs, *etc.*
factus sum
factus eram
factus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

fīam, -ās, *etc.*
fierem
factus sim
factus essem

IMPERATIVE.

fī	**fīte**

INFINITIVE.

fierī
factus esse
factum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. ————
Ger. **faciendus**
Perf. **factus**

NOTE: The verb **fīō** is used in place of the passive voice of **faciō**.

357. PRACTICE ON EO AND FIO.

Give the mood, tense, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. eō	21. itum	41. factus erit
2. ierim	22. eunt	42. fīs
3. īre	23. īret	43. factī sint
4. iissent	24. ierit	44. factus
5. iī	25. iisse	45. factus erat
6. ībit	26. īs	46. fīēbat
7. iērunt	27. ierant	47. factus est
8. ībat	28. ierat	48. fīēs
9. iēns	29. ītō	49. fit
10. ī	30. ierātis	50. fierī
11. ierint	31. fīō	51. fīēbant
12. iissēmus	32. fieret	52. fīam
13. it	33. factus esse	53. factum īrī
14. itūrus esse	34. fīēbāmus	54. factī erant
15. eam	35. fī	55. fīmus
16. ībant	36. fīētis	56. fīās
17. iit	37. fītis	57. fīet
18. ībam	38. factī sunt	58. factī essent
19. iissem	39. fīte	59. fīunt
20. itūrus	40. factus sit	60. fierem

* Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

358. PRACTICE ON EO AND FIO.

Give the mood, tense, number and person of each form and translate.

1. he goes
2. you had gone
3. I have gone
4. go thou
5. they go
6. he has gone
7. we shall go
8. to go
9. you went
10. he *shall* go
11. he went
12. going
13. thou wilt go
14. they went
15. I shall go
16. to have gone
17. you will go
18. he will go
19. of going
20. they have gone
21. thou dost go
22. we have gone
23. to be about to go
24. they will go
25. you have gone
26. I shall have gone
27. we went
28. he had gone
29. I went
30. they had gone

1. I shall become
2. thou dost become
3. he became
4. you will become
5. I became
6. they will become
7. thou wilt become
8. we have become
9. become thou
10. we shall become
11. they had become
12. he has become
13. thou hadst become
14. to become
15. you had become
16. they have become
17. to be about to become
18. I have become
19. he will become
20. we had become
21. to have become
22. they became
23. he becomes
24. you have become.
25. thou hast become
26. become ye
27. I become
28. we became
29. they become
30. he had become

COMPOUNDS OF EO.

359. The **Principal Parts** of the compounds are formed by prefixing the preposition to each part of **eō, īre, iī, itum.**

Ex. **abeō**, *to go away*. P. P. abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum

359a. Give the PRINCIPAL PARTS of:

1. **abeō**, *to go away.*
2. **adeō**, *to go to (a place).*
3. **circumeō**, *to go around.*
4. **coeō**, *to come together.*
5. **exeō**, *to go out.*
6. **ineō**, *to go into.*
7. **introeō**, *to enter.*
8. **intereō**, *to perish.*
9. **obeō**, *to go to meet.*
10. **pereō**, *to perish.*
11. **praetereō**, *to pass by.*
12. **prōdeō**, *to go forward.*
13. **redeō**, *to go back (return).*
14. **subeō**, *to undergo.*
15. **transeō**, *to go across.*
16. **vēneō**, *to go on sale.*

EXERCISES.

360. 1. Rex certior factus est de magnitudine exercitus hostium. 2. Multi milites frigore atque fame perierant. 3. Magna manus Germanorum Rhenum transit. 4. Prima luce omnes milites ex urbe exibunt. 5. Viri pro conjungibus atque liberis omnes labores subibant. 6. Die constituta legati ad imperatorem redibunt. 7. Impetus in equites hostium a militibus acriter fiebat. 8. Hic dux virtute omnibus aliis anteit. 9. Orator in oratione omnes has res praeterivit. 10. Iter per silvas a nostris cum difficultate factum est. 11. Rex fit vetus invalidusque. 12. Post duos annos Caesar Romam redibit.

361. 1. In a short time these flowers will have perished. 2. A large bridge is being made. 3. There are many things which I shall pass by. 4. Has this man become a soldier? 5. On the next day the ambassador did not return. 6. The enemy have crossed the river. 7. An attack will be made to-night. 8. Our soldiers excel the enemy in bravery* and in strength. 9. Many men have gone away from Rome. 10. The journey was quickly made. 11. We shall return to Rome. 12. How many soldiers became ill on the march? 13. Part of the army has gone. 14. Many horses had perished.

*See Rule of Syntax 30, page 38.

THE INFINITIVE.

362. The infinitive mood has **four** chief uses.

It may be used as follows:

1. As the **Subject** of a verb.
   Legere est gratum, **To read** is pleasant.

2. As the **Object** of a verb.
   Puer vult **legere,** The boy wishes **to read.**

3. As **Complementary** Infinitive.
   Vir potest **laborare,** The man is able **to work.**

4. In **Indirect Discourse** after verbs of *saying*, *knowing*, *thinking*, *perceiving* and the like.

363. Indirect Discourse.

[If the statement made by anyone, is quoted without change, the statement is said to be **Direct Discourse (Orātiō Rēcta)**.]

If the statement made by anyone is placed after a verb of *saying*, *knowing*, etc., the statement is said to be in **Indirect Discourse (Orātiō Oblīqua)**.

DIRECT DISCOURSE, **"Rex est aeger."**

"The king is sick."

INDIRECT DISCOURSE, Vir dicit **regem esse aegrum.**

The man says **that the king is sick.**

Rule.—The verb becomes an **infinitive** and its subject becomes an **accusative.**

Rule.—Any tense of the infinitive may follow any tense of the indicative, (or subjunctive) on this condition, that the **present** infinitive denotes the *same time* as that of the main verb, the **future** infinitive denote *time later* than that of the main verb, and the **perfect** infinitive denotes *time prior* to that of the main *verb.*

NOTE:—Do not use the infinitive to express purpose.

364. **Study Rule of Syntax 20, page 36.**

EXERCISES.

365. 1. Rex audivit omnes cives arma ferre. 2. Caesar hostes exspectare equites atque ejus rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur. 3. Dux jussit milites obsides ad se adducere. 4. Milites de rebus suis cum Caesare agere decreverunt. 5. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et milites timore perterritos esse. 6. Ariovistus gentes suum imperium non diutius sustinere percipit. 7. Idem scit miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum. 8. Galli putaverunt eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse. 9. Caesar certior factus est hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo. 10. Senex dicit se tecum velle dicere de certis rebus.

366. 1. Caesar knew that the Germans had crossed the Rhine. 2. The man says that he saw a great multitude of soldiers in the camp. 3. I hear that the ambassadors are treating with Caesar concerning peace. 4. He has determined to do the leaders a great injury. 5. I expect that the battle will be fought within a few days. 6. It is not necessary to hasten. 7. The soldiers had tried to cross the river with their horses. 8. The commander responded that he would neither return the hostages to the citizens nor would he bring war upon them or their allies. 9. Caesar said that he had built a bridge across the Rhine. 10. Tell the enemy that we have not surrendered the city to them. 11. I know that this man is brave. 12. The citizens saw that the ships were approaching the shore.

367. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Volō, velle, voluī—*to be willing, (wish).*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī—*to be unwilling.*
Mālō, mālle, māluī—*to prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

Prcs.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultus	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imperf.	volēbam*	nōlēbam*	mālēbam*
	volēbās, *etc.*	nōlēbās, *etc.*	mālēbās, *etc.*
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
	volēs, *etc.*	nōlēs, *etc.*	mālēs, *etc.*
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	māluēram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs, *etc.*	nōlīs, *etc.*	mālīs, *etc.*
Imperf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs, *etc.*	nōllēs, *etc.*	māllēs, *etc.*
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	.....	nōlī	.....
		nōlīte	
Fut.	.....	nōlītō, *etc.*	.....

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns	.....

*From this point **volo, nolo, malo** are conjugated like **rego**, p.94

368. PRACTICE ON VOLO, NOLO, MALO.

Give the mood, tense, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. volāmus
2. voluit
3. volēbant
4. velle
5. vult
6. velint
7. volueritis
8. vīs
9. volunt
10. volet
11. volēns
12. voluerāmus
13. velītis
14. voluerit
15. voluisse
16. vellet
17. vultis
18. volō
19. vellent
20. voluissem
21. nōllent
22. nōlit
23. nōlīs
24. nōn vultis
25. nōlint
26. nōluerimus
27. nōlet
28. nōlēns
29. nōlēbās
30. nōluistis
31. nōlī
32. nōllet
33. nōluimus
34. nōlent
35. nōlle
36. nōn vult
37. nōlītis
38. nōluī
39. nōlunt
40. nōluisse
41. māluimus
42. māllent
43. māllem
44. mālēbat
45. mālle
46. mālunt
47. māvīs
48. māluit
49. māllēmus
50. māvultis
51. māllet
52. mālam
53. mālīs
54. mālint
55. mālit
56. mālētis
57. māluisse
58. māllētis
59. māluerant
60. mālluissent

* Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

369. PRACTICE ON VOLO, NOLO, MALO.

Give the mood, tense, number and person of each form and translate.

1. we have been willing
2. he is willing
3. you were willing
4. they are willing
5. he has been willing
6. to be willing
7. you will be willing
8. he had been willing
9. we shall be willing
10. thou art willing
11. he was willing
12. they had been willing
13. willing
14. they were willing
15. to have been willing
16. you have been willing
17. he will be willing
18. thou hast been willing
19. we were willing
20. they will be willing
21. he had been unwilling
22. you are unwilling
23. we shall be unwilling
24. they will be unwilling
25. to be unwilling
26. you will be unwilling
27. he is unwilling
28. thou wast unwilling
29. thou art unwilling
30. we have been unwilling
31. he was unwilling
32. unwilling
33. they have been unwilling
34. he will be unwilling
35. you were unwilling
36. we had been unwilling
37. they were unwilling
38. to have been unwilling
39. thou hast been unwilling
40. he will have been unwilling

---

41. you prefer
42. he will prefer
43. we shall prefer
44. they prefer
45. thou preferest
46. you will prefer
47. he has preferred
48. thou hast preferred
49. we prefer
50. they have preferred
51. to have preferred
52. he prefers
53. you had preferred
54. to prefer
55. they will prefer
56. he preferred
57. thou wilt prefer
58. we preferred
59. he had preferred
60. they preferred

EXERCISES.*

370. 1. Agricolae divites militibus pauperibus cibum praebere voluerant. 2. Volebasne iter facere? 3. Dux incolas interficere nolet. 4. Liberi in elephanto vehi volunt. 5. Nocte flumen transire exercitus maluerat. 6. Discipuli magistri boni sua pensa facere noluerunt. 7. Legatus in urbem in tertio die ire mavult. 8. Agricola servo misero subvenire non vult. 9. Noli tuis servis injuriam facere. 10. Dominus sine te ambulare malet. 11. Dux pugnare potius quam se dedere mavult. 12. Nolite milites mittere contra bonos viros urbis. 13. Cives Caesari se dedere potius quam interfici malent. 14. Imperator pacem accipere vult. 15. Caesar captivos tradere noluit.

371. 1. We prefer to walk through the woods. 2. The master has not been willing to punish the boy. 3. I am willing to walk with you. 4. We shall prefer to die rather than be captured. 5. The ambassadors have been willing to furnish food and clothing for the army. 6. The women will be willing to seek the protection of the fort. 7. At the end of the journey the soldiers will be willing to rest. 8. The king had not been willing to review the soldiers. 9. The prisoners have preferred to wait until daybreak. 10. The soldiers were not willing to burn the town. 11. The citizens did not wish to toil in the heat of the sun. 12. The soldiers preferred to go with the leader. 13. The horsemen were willing to cross the river. 14. The women had preferred to follow the army. 15. The scouts had been willing to aid the fugitives.

*See Art. 362, page 168.

372. SUM—COMPOUNDS.

THE VERB **POSSUM**,* *to be able.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī, ——.**

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres.	**possum**,* *I am able (can).*	**possim**
	potes, *thou art able.*	**possīs**
	potest, *he is able.*	**possit**
	possumus, *we are able.*	**possīmus**
	potestis, *you are able.*	**possītis**
	possunt, *they are able.*	**possint**
Impf.	**poteram**, *I was able (could).*	**possem**
	poterās, *thou wast able.*	**possēs**
	etc.	*etc.*
Fut.	**poterō**, *I shall be able.*	
	poteris, *thou wilt be able.*	
	etc.	
Perf.	**potuī**, *I have been able.*	**potuerim**
	potuistī, *thou hast been able.*	**potueris**
	etc.	*etc.*
Pluperf.	**potueram**, *I had been able.*	**potuissem**
	potuerās, *thou hast been able.*	**potuissēs**
	etc.	*etc.*
Fut. Perf.	**potuerō**, *I shall have been able.*	
	potueris, *thou wilt have been able.*	
	etc.	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. **posse**, *to be able.* Perf. **potuisse**, *to have been able.*

*Possum is a compound of **potis** + **sum** or rather **pot** + **sum**. Before an **s** the **t** changes to an **s**, otherwise the **t** remains. An **f** after the **t** is dropped.

373. SUM—COMPOUNDS.

THE VERB **PROSUM**,* *to benefit.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, ——**

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres.	**prōsum**,* *I help.*	**prōsim**
	prōdes, *thou helpest.*	**prōsīs**
	prōdest, *he helps.*	**prōsit**
	prōsumus, *we help.*	**prōsīmus**
	prōdestis, *you help.*	**prōsītis**
	prōsunt, *they help.*	**prōsint**
Impf.	**prōderam**, *I helped.*	**prōdessem**
	prōderās, *thou helpedst.*	**prōdessēs**
	etc.	*etc.*
Fut.	**prōderō**, *I shall help*	
	prōderis, *thou wilt help.*	
	etc.	
Perf.	**prōfuī**, *I have helped.*	**prōfuerim**
	prōfuistī, *thou hast helped.*	**prōfueris**
	etc.	*etc.*
Pluperf.	**prōfueram**, *I had helped.*	**prōfuissem**
	prōfuerās, *thou hadst helped.*	**prōfuissēs**
	etc.	*etc.*
Fut. Perf.	**prōfuerō**, *I shall have helped.*	
	prōfueris, *thou wilt have helped.*	
	etc.	

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. **prōdes**, *help thou.* Fut. **prōdestō**, *thou shalt help.*
prōdeste, *help ye.* **prōdestōte**, *ye shall help.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. **prōdesse**, *to help.* Perf. **prōfuisse**, *to have helped.*
Fut. **prōfutūrus esse**, *to be about to help.*

PARTICIPLE.

Fut **prōfutūrus**, *about to help.*

*__Prosum__ is a compound of **prod** + **sum**. Before a vowel the **d** is retained, otherwise the **d** is dropped.

374. PRACTICE ON **POSSUM** AND **PROSUM.**

Give the mood, tense, number and person of each form and translate wherever possible.*

1. poterō
2. posset
3. possumus
4. possim
5. potueris
6. potuisse
7. potuit
8. poterimus
9. poteris
10. possum
11. potuissent
12. poterit
13. potestis
14. poterat
15. potuimus
16. potes
17. possem
18. possint
19. poteram
20. possent
21. possunt
22. potuerat
23. posse
24. poterās
25. potest
26. potuissem
27. potuerant
28. poterant
29. potuerit
30. possit
31. prōsum
32. prōfuērunt
33. prōfuit
34. prōderant
35. prōsit
36. prōfuerant
37. prōdesse
38. prōsumus
39. prōdeste
40. prōsint
41. prōdestis
42. prōfuissem
43. prōderit
44. prōdessent
45. prōfuisse
46. prōdes
47. prōdesset
48. prōderat
49. prōsim
50. prōfuerint
51. prōsunt
52. prōfuistis
53. prōfuisset
54. prōfuerat
55. prōdest
56. prōfuerit
57. prōfuissēmus
58. prōfueris
59. prōfutūrus
60. prōfuī

* Subjunctive forms take their meanings from the context.

375. PRACTICE ON **POSSUM** AND **PROSUM.**

Give the mood, tense, number and person of each form and translate.

1. you are able
2. he had been able
3. to have been able
4. they will be able
5. I am able
6. thou wilt be able
7. I shall have been able
8. he has been able
9. thou art able
10. we are able
11. I shall be able
12. they are able
13. to be able
14. he is able
15. we were able
16. thou wast able
17. they were able
18. I have been able
19. you have been able
20. he was able
21. they had been able
22. we shall be able
23. I was able
24. thou hast been able
25. he will be able
26. they will have been able
27. you were able
28. I had been able
29. we have been able
30. you had been able
31. they will have helped
32. I had helped
33. you help
34. he will help
35. they have helped
36. I help
37. he helped
38. they had helped
39. I have helped
40. you helped
41. they help
42. we have helped
43. you will help
44. he helps
45. I shall have helped
46. to help
47. they helped
48. we shall help
49. you have helped
50. I helped
51. he will have helped
52. we had helped
53. he has helped
54. you had helped
55. I shall help
56. to have helped
57. they will help
58. thou wilt help
59. help thou
60. he had helped

376. THE COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

absum	**abesse**	**āfuī,**	*to be away, absent.*
adsum	**adesse**	**adfuī,**	*to be present.*
dēsum	**dēesse**	**dēfuī,**	*to be lacking.*
īnsum	**īnesse**	**īnfuī,**	*to be in.*
intersum	**interesse**	**interfuī**	*to be between, or among.*
obsum	**obesse**	**obfuī,**	*to be a hindrance to.*
possum	**posse**	**potuī,**	*to be able.*
praesum	**praeesse**	**praefuī,**	*to be at the head of.*
prosum	**prodesse**	**profuī ,**	*to benefit, help.*
subsum	**subesse**	**subfuī**	*to be under.*
supersum	**superesse**	**superfuī,**	*to survive, remain over.*

377. Rule of Syntax.—The compounds of **sum** take a *dative* of the person or thing affected, (except **possum, absum** and **intersum**).

EXERCISES.

378. 1. Nostri equites fugitivos non longius persequi potuerant. 2. Potestas magna in numeris inest. 3. Amicitia firma inter milites decimae legionis interfuit. 4. Fugitivo vis equi multum profuit. 5. Equites hostium a nobis non longissime absunt. 6. Dux fortis eis omnibus militibus praefuerat. 7. Fortes viri Romanis nullo tempore defuerunt. 8. Nostrae naves rostris navium hostium noceri non potuerunt. 9. Perexigua pars sola illius exercitus superfuerat. 10. Decima legio auxilio civibus aderat.

379. 1. I am not able to persuade the leader. 2. From this battle only five hundred of the enemy remain. 3. Our cohort is two miles from the city. 4. The scouts were not able to see the ships in the harbor. 5. The soldiers will not fail the king in time of danger. 6. On that day all the senators were present. 7. Will you help us with wagons and food? 8. A long road is between us and the end of our journey. 9. In a few days the sick man will be able to walk. 10. There is much wisdom in this plan of the king.

EXERCISES.

380. 1. Nautae vim tempestatis pati non poterant. 2. Legatus Romanus omnibus copiis sociorum praeerat. 3. Flumen atque silvae inter nos et oppidum intersunt. 4. Propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem oppidum expugnare non potuerunt. 5. Nox aderat itaque castra conlocavimus. 6. Ex eo proelio circiter milia hominum decem superfuerunt. 7. Hoc bellum nulli profuit. 8. Exercitus ab oppido circiter milia passuum quinque abest. 9. Multae res necessariae exercitui deerant. 10. Magnus terror in animis civium infuerat.

381. 1. We are all present as an aid to our friends. 2. Ships and grain-supply had been lacking to the commander. 3. On account of the calm the ships were not able to be moved from the place. 4. Who is in command of all the ships of the allies? 5. There is great reward in true friendship. 6. We shall help all our friends with our money. 7. We cannot send more than three ships. 8. Not much of the summer remains to us. 9. This man alone remains from a whole tribe. 10. We cannot be more than three miles away from Rome.

382. 1. Somnus gratus militibus defessis proderit. 2. Non multum temporis ad solis occasum supererat. 3. Cives defessi oppidum non longius defendere possunt. 4. Pater ac dominus multis modis intersunt. 5. Flumen a nostris castris non amplius quam milia passuum decem aberat. 6. Nulla omnium navium cursum tenere poterat. 7. Oppidum a nobis paucorum dierum iter abest. 8. Nonne Barbari Romanos e suis finibus expellere poterant? 9. Omnia deerant, quae ad bellum erant usui. 10. Propter custodes flumen clam transire non poterimus.

383. PARTICIPLES.

Participles may be used as **adjectives,** coming either *before* the noun (attributive position) or *after* the noun, in meaning, (predicate position).

Present Participles are declined like **amāns** (see art. 384),

Perfect and **Future** Participles. . . . like **bonus** (see art. 52).

The **time** of the Participle is relative to the time of the main verb.

A **Present** Participle represents the **same time** as that of the main verb.

A **Perfect** Participle represents time **prior** to that of the main verb.

A **Future** Participle represents time **later** than that of the main verb.

Examples.

1. Milites fortiter **pugnantes** ceciderunt.
   The soldiers fell **fighting** bravely.
2. Vidi regem in esseda **fugientem.**
   I saw the king **fleeing** in his chariot.
3. Eques **vulneratus** illa nocte mortuus est.
   The horseman, **having been wounded**, died that night.
4. Dux, **pugnaturus,** suam aciem instruit.
   The leader, **being about to fight,** is drawing up his line of battle.

384. Present Participles are declined as follows.

Amāns, *loving.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.V.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
G.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
D.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Ac.	amantem	amāns	amantēs (īs)	amantia
Ab.	amante, ī	amante, ī	amantibus	amantibus

Perfect and **Future** Participles are declined like **bonus.** (See page 20.)

EXERCISES.

385. 1. Sol oriens nubes fugat. 2. Custos equites ad flumen fugientes vidit. 3. Rex multas naves in portum coactas habet. 4. Magister discipulo studenti diligentissime librum dabit. 5. Haec locutus nuntius tacuit. 6. Liberi agricolas in agris arantes spectant. 7. Servi militibus urbem defendentibus cibum ferent. 8. Speculatores captivos vinctos ad castra ducunt. 9. Numerus hominum in pugna interfectorum erat maximus. 10. Barbari eis rebus commoti bellum gerere incipiebant.

386. 1. Tired out with their wounds the soldiers began to retreat. 2. The leader with his men pursued the fleeing enemy. 3. The king and his companions are making the journey in chariots gathered by the citizens. 4. Will you carry this food to the men working in the fields? 5. Having encouraged the foot-soldiers he engaged in battle with the Romans. 6. The Romans will slay all those who are bearing arms against them. 7. When the king had been informed of this, he drew up his line of battle. 8. The faithfulness of those guarding the children is very great. 9. This city has been built by men captured in war. 10. We think that the horsemen terrified with fear have departed.

387. 1. Crassus suos equites cohortatus contra hostes adduxit. 2. Vidimus arma a militibus capta. 3. Flentes cum pluribus verbis pacem a rege petebant. 4. Hic pons a fabris missis Roma aedificatus est. 5. Hostes pulsi in fuga salutem petiverunt. 6. Filius viri in ponte stantis est judex. 7. Imperator arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse eo exercitum duxit. 8. Arma Gallorum captorum in pugna novissima efferentur. 9. Urbs a legionibus missis a rege servata est. 10. Perspiciens periculum miles ad oppidum contendit.

388. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The **dependent clause** of a complex sentence may be expressed by an **ablative absolute,** provided its subject is not the same as the subject of the main clause.

The **subject** is put in the **ablative case** and the **verb** becomes a **participle modifying the noun.**

EXAMPLES.

When he had captured the fleet, Pompey returned to Italy.
i. e. **The fleet having been captured,** *Pompey returned to Italy.*
Classi capta, Pompejus in Italiam rediit.

Because the bridge had been destroyed, the army was hindered.
i. e. **The bridge having been destroyed,** *the army was hindered.*
Ponte deleto, exercitus impeditus est.

If this has been done, the general will conquer.
i. e. **This having been done,** *the general will conquer.*
Hoc facto, imperator vincet.

Sometimes a present active participle is used.

When the sun rose, the air became clear.
i. e. **The sun rising,** *the air became clear.*
Sole oriente, aer clarus fiebat.

Sometimes two nouns stand as an ablative absolute.

If Caesar is leader, the town will be taken.
i. e. **Caesar being leader,** *the town will be taken.*
Caesare duce, oppidum capietur.

During the consulship of Lepidus and Tullus, a conspiracy was formed *i. e.* **Lepidus and Tullus being consuls,** *a conspiracy was formed.*
Lepido et Tullo consulibus, conspiratio facta est.

Sometimes a noun and an adjective are used.

Because the sea was calm, they made the journey quickly.
i. e. **The sea being calm,** *they made the journey quickly.*
Mari sereno, iter celeriter fecerunt.

389. Rule of Syntax.—The **Ablative Absolute** may express **time, cause, means, condition,** or some other circumstance on which the action of the main clause depends.

EXERCISES.

390. 1. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum ad mare reducit. 2. Summa tranquilitate consecuta omnes naves incolumes perduxit. 3. Isdem viris ducibus Romani Gallos superabunt. 4. Hoc facto feminae domum redibant. 5. Ea re constituta milites e castris egressi sunt. 6. Castris munitis tela comparare coepit. 7. Hoc responso dato discessit. 8. Rejectis pilis cominus gladiis pugnatum est. 9. Cognito Caesaris adventu Galli legatos ad eum mittunt. 10. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis iterum ad eum Caesar nuntium misit. 11. His rebus cognitis Caesar virorum animos verbis confirmavit. 12. Hac oratione habita omnes a militibus auxilium petere coeperunt. 13. Hoc proelio facto imperator exercitum trans flumen ducet.

391. 1. When they have reported these things to their chiefs, the ambassadors will return. 2. In the consulship of Piso, Pompey was sent into Asia. 3. Since the battle has been fought, Caesar will return to Rome. 4. Since no one opposed the commander, he made his way through the province. 5. Although the war was finished, the soldiers remained in the colony. 6. The men drew their swords and made an attack upon the enemy. 7. Although the enemy have been routed, the army will not return to camp. 8. The soldiers fortified the camp and awaited the attack of the enemy. 9. With this man as leader, we shall conquer our enemies. 10. After the messengers had made their answer, they had departed.

THE GERUND AND THE GERUNDIVE.

392. The **Gerund** is a *noun*. The **Gerundive** is an *adjective*.

The Gerund can have only the endings—**dī** (gen.),—**dō** (dat.),—**dum** (acc.),—**dō** (abl.).

The Gerundive is declined like **bonus** (see art. 52).

---

393. We may use either the Gerund or the Gerundive to express the **verbal ideas**, such as *running*, *ruling*, *preparing*, etc.

When the **Gerund** is used, it *is put into the proper case* and may take an object.

When the Gerundive is used, the **noun** *is put into the proper case* and the **gerundive** *agrees* with that noun.

394. **EXAMPLES.**

1. The leader had great hopes **of taking the city.**

GERUND: Dux **urbem expugnandi** spes magnas habuit.
GERUNDIVE: Dux **urbis expugnandae** spes magnas habuit.

2. The ships were useful **for waging war.**

GERUND: Naves **bellum gerendo** erant utiles.
GERUNDIVE: Naves **bello gerendo** erant utiles.

3. The soldiers had been sent **to aid the citizens.**

GERUND: Milites **ad* cives juvandum** missi erant.
GERUNDIVE: Milites **ad cives juvandos** missi erant.

4. We shall save the city **by sending aid.**

GERUND: Urbem **auxilium mittendo** servabimus.
GERUNDIVE: Urbem **auxilio mittendo** servabimus.

395. Study Rule of Syntax 11, page 34.

***ad** with the accusative of the gerund is another way of expressing purpose.

EXERCISES.

396. 1. Legiones Romanae pugnandi causa convenient. 2. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt. 3. Hostes parati ad omnia pericula subeunda fuerunt. 4. Occasio negoti bene gerendi non a legato amissa erat. 5. Helvetii fuerunt homines bellandi cupidi. 6. Intellexitne rex de expugnando oppido? 7. Nobis est nulla spes urbem capiendi. 8. Haec omnia ad proficiscendum pertinent. 9. Nos captivos liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos facultatem non dimittemus. 10. Corpus edendo alitur.

397. 1. An opportunity of making their way through the province was granted. 2. Night made an end of the fighting. 3. There was the greatest difficulty of making a bridge on account of the river's depth. 4. Caesar had learned concerning their crossing the river. 5. The foot-soldiers made a beginning of crossing the river. 6. They had come into Gaul for the sake of plundering the villages. 7. The horsemen had no opportunity of carrying on war. 8. The commander will delay in this place for the sake of preparing the ships. 9. The general has sent a part of the soldiers to pursue the enemy. 10. An army will be collected for the sake of waging war against the Romans.

398. 1. Dies tres a duce ad deliberandum sumpti sunt. 2. Omnia haec nobis magno usui ad bellum gerendum erant. 3. Difficultas navigandi est maxima. 4. Duo legiones ad Caesarem auxili ferendi causa proficiscuntur. 5. Regi ex esseda desiliendi facultas non data est. 6. Hostes in agris vastandis magnam injuriam faciunt. 7. Minimum spati ad se armandos civibus dabatur. 8. Ars bene scribendi non est facilis. 9. Mens militis ad calamitates perferendas est firma. 10. Vos cunctando nihil conficere poteritis.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

399. There are *two* Periphrastic Conjugations.

1. **Active.** 2. **Passive.**

400. The **Active Periphrastic Conjugation** is formed by placing the **Future Active Participle** before each part of the verb **sum.**

Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. **amātūrus (-a, -um) sum, es est,** etc., *I am about to love, etc.*
Impf. **amātūrus eram, erās, erat,** etc., *I was about to love, etc.*
Fut. **amātūrus erō, eris, erit,** etc., *I shall be about to love, etc.*
Perf. **amātūrus fuī, fuistī, fuit,** etc., *I have been (was) about to love, etc.*
Plup. **amātūrus fueram, fuerās,** etc., *I had been about to love, etc.*
Fut. P. **amātūrus fuerō, fueris,** etc., *I shall have been about to love, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. **amātūrus sim, sīs, sit,** etc., (*I may be about to love, etc.*)
Impf. **amātūrus essem, essēs, esset,** etc., (*I might be about to love, etc.*)
Perf. **amātūrus fuerim, fueris,** etc., (*I may have been about to love, etc.*)
Plup. **amātūrus fuissem, fuissēs,** etc., (*I might have been about to love, etc.*)

INFINITIVE.

Pres. **amātūrus esse,** *to be about to love.*
Perf. **amātūrus fuisse,** *to have been about to love.*

401. The **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** is formed by placing the **Gerundive** before each part of the verb **sum.**

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. **amandus (-a, -um) sum, es,** etc., *I am (must) (ought) to be loved, etc.*
Impf. **amandus eram, erās, erat,** etc., *I was to be loved, etc.*
Fut. **amandus erō, eris, erit,** etc., *I shall be (worthy) to be loved, etc.*
Perf. **amandus fuī, fuistī, fuit,** etc., *I have been (worthy) to be loved, etc.*
Plup. **amandus fueram, fuerās, fuerat,** etc., *I had been (worthy) to be loved, etc.*
Fut. P. **amandus fuerō, fueris, fuerit,** etc., *I shall have been (worthy) to be loved, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. **amandus sim, sīs, sit,** etc., [*I may be (worthy) to be loved, etc.*]
Impf. **amandus essem, essēs, esset,** etc., [*I might be (worthy) to be loved, etc.*]
Perf. **amandus fuerim, fueris,** etc., [*I may have been (worthy) to be loved, etc.*]
Plup. **amandus fuissem, fuissēs,** etc., [*I might have been (worthy) to be loved, etc.*]

INFINITIVE.

Pres. **amandus esse,** *to be (worthy) to be loved.*
Perf. **amandus fuisse,** *to have been (worthy) to be loved.*

402. The **Active Periphratic Conjugation** expresses *purpose, intention*, or an *emphatic* future idea, from the stand point of present, past or future time.

1. Caesar in Gallos bellum **gesturus est.**
   Caesar **is about to wage** war on the Gauls.
2. Milites virum **interfecturi fuerant.**
   The soldiers **had been about to kill** the man.

403. The **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** expresses *necessity, duty* or *obligation.*

1. Pons in Rhenum **faciendus est.**
   A bridge **must be made** over the Rhine.
2. Pons Caesari in Rhenum **faciendus fuerat.**
   A bridge **had to be made** over the Rhine by Caesar.

404. Study Rule of Syntax 11, Page 34.

EXERCISES.

405. 1. Omnia Caesari uno tempore agenda erant. 2. In Galliam magnum numerum militum missuri sumus. 3. Dux vulneratus in carro Romam referendus fuerat. 4. Ante primam lucem oppidum nobis capiendum erit. 5. Romanus clarus dixit Carthaginem delendam esse. 6. Prima luce castra longius ab hostibus remotura erant. 7. Non existimo nos victoriam reportaturos esse. 8. Hic servus propter suam fortitudinem tibi liberandus fuit. 9. Impetus in hostes a nostris militibus facturus erat. 10. Caesar pontem in Rhenum faciendum esse curavit.

406. 1. The signal had to be given with the trumpets. 2. We are about to send you a large supply of money. 3. The leader has determined that the city must be taken at once. 4. The horsemen do not intend to wait for the leader. 5. At day-break the camp will have to be more strongly fortified. 6. The two armies were about to engage in battle. 7. The fugitives ought to be overtaken by the cavalry within three hours. 8. The king was on the point of sending a second messenger. 9. I must procure a large number of boats for our army. 10. On the third day the citizens were about to surrender themselves to the Romans.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

407. An Impersonal Verb is a verb whose subject is not a person, but the indefinite "**it.**" Hence, in Latin, the subject of an impersonal verb is a **clause,** a **phrase** or simply "**it.**" (tonat, *it thunders*).

EXAMPLES.

1. Mihi **licet** remanere. (**It is permitted** *to me to remain.*) *I may remain.*

2. Eum **pudet** turpitudinis suae. (**It shames** *him of his baseness.*) *He is ashamed of his baseness.*

3. Te ducere **decet.** (*You to lead* **is fitting.**) *It is fitting that you should lead.*

4. Consuli **placuit** ut pacem faceret. (**It was pleasing** *to the consul that he should make peace.*) *The consul decided to make peace.*

408. A List of the Chief Impersonal Verbs.

1. **appāret,** appāruit—*it is apparent, evident.*
2. **cōnstat,** cōnstitit—*it is settled.*
3. **contingit,** contigit—*it happens.*
4. **decet,** decuit—*it is fitting, proper.*
5. **dēdecet,** dēdecuit—*it is not fitting, not proper.*
6. **interest,** interfuit—*it is of importance, concerns.*
7. **libet,** libuit—*it is agreeable.*
8. **licet,** licuit—*it is permitted.*
9. **miseret,** miseruit—*it makes miserable.*
10. **oportet,** oportuit—*it is necessary* (*one ought*).
11. **paenitet,** paenituit—*it repents.*
12. **piget,** piguit—*it disgusts.*
13. **placet,** placuit—*it pleases.*
14. **praestat,** praestitit—*it is better.*
15. **pudet,** puduit—*it shames.*
16. **stat,** stetit—*it remains fixed.*
17. **taedet,** taeduit—*it tires, wearies.*

409. Rule of Syntax.—The impersonal verbs **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet** take the **accusative** of the *person* and the **genitive** of the *cause* of the feeling.

410. Sometimes an **Intransitive Verb** is used **impersonally**. The verb is then always *passive* and the person or thing acted upon is in the *dative case*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Diu atque acriter **pugnabatur**, **It was fought** *long and sharply.*

2. Consuli **persuasum est**, (**It was persuaded** *to the consul*) *The consul was persuaded.*

3. Jussibus imperatoris **parebatur**, (**It was being obeyed** *to the orders of the commander*) *The orders of the commander were being obeyed.*

EXERCISES.

411. 1. Hostes timere apparuit. 2. Nos temeritatis nostrae pudet. 3. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. 4. Eis ex urbe exire licuit. 5. Eis facillime persuasum est. 6. Eos suae crudelitatis paenitere necesse est. 7. Ducemne belli longi taedet? 8. Milites se in castra receperunt ut erat imperatum. 9. Vos Romam redire praestat. 10. Ubi eo ventum est, dux castra conlocavit. 11. Interest vos celerrime venire. 12. Regi huic viro donum dare placuit. 13. Legibus civitatis paretur, 14. Vos nobis esse socios decet. 15. Consulem regem videre interest.

412. 1. It is important that I return into Italy. 2. The king was pleased with my work. 3. It was apparent that the enemy were not far away. 4. The commands of the consul will be obeyed. 5. We ought to send men to the river. 6. It is better for us to keep silent. 7. This man is not weary of the journey. 8. We are disgusted with you. 9. It was fought long and eagerly. 10. You may leave the camp. 11. Is he not ashamed of his boldness? 12. It is not fitting for a soldier to fear. 13. It will not be permitted that he go out of the city.

413. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the meaning of each of the following words. Give the declension and gender of each noun.

1. ācriter
2. celeriter
3. epistula
4. cōnor
5. lēnis
6. polliceor
7. ūllus
8. custōdiō
9. cōnfiteor
10. vereor
11. līberē
12. citō
13. audeō
14. potior
15. aperiō
16. bene
17. rūmor
18. effugiō
19. largiter
20. ipse
21. cunctor
22. perfacilis
23. cohortor
24. crūdēlis
25. dēprecor
26. similis
27. sequor
28. dominor
29. mihi
30. nūllus
31. frāter
32. tālis
33. nōbilis
34. jūs jūrandum
35. queror
36. audācter
37. horribilis
38. īnsidior
39. orior
40. humilis
41. grātulor
42. proficīscor
43. alter
44. ille
45. dīripiō
46. hīc
47. ūtilis
48. turpiter
49. dēsertor
50. ūtor
51. profiteor
52. alacritās
53. tueor
54. is
55. magis
56. vagor
57. optimus
58. nāscor
59. saepe
60. partior
61. alius
62. aliquis
63. tuus
64. admīror
65. soleō
66. diū
67. morior
68. tōtus
69. adorior
70. sibi
71. melior
72. oblīvīscor
73. vēlōx
74. arbitror
75. impūne
76. vīs
77. dīves
78. moror
79. turpis
80. sē
81. gaudeō
82. mollitiēs
83. fortiter
84. grandis
85. lābor
86. fruor
87. incolumis
88. loquor
89. fungor
90. fēlīciter

414. VOCABULARY REVIEW.

Give the Latin form for each of the following words.

1. to dare
2. none
3. low
4. to be master
5. to wander
6. quickly
7. such
8. keenly
9. to follow
10. thy
11. swiftly
12. useful
13. base
14. to rise
15. nobility
16. strength
17. to congratulate
18. letter
19. someone
20. to promise
21. rather
22. to try
23. basely
24. rumor
25. to attack
26. to protect
27. to share
28. to delay
29. himself
30. successfully
31. deserter
32. to set out
33. gentle
34. this
35. similar
36. brother
37. well
38. to disclose
39. swift
40. to beseech
41. often
42. any
43. to complain
44. to plunder
45. to escape
46. to lie in wait
47. with impunity
48. eagerness
49. boldly
50. to admire
51. he, they
52. to enjoy
53. best
54. to be born
55. I, we
56. to guard
57. cruel
58. freely
59. memorable
60. whole
61. to confess
62. to encourage
63. another
64. to forget
65. rich
66. smoothness
67. to slip
68. unharmed
69. liberally
70. the other
71. to use
72. to dread
73. to be wont
74. noble
75. to speak
76. certain
77. that
78. joyful
79. to choose
80. to consider
81. to rejoice
82. to perform
83. better
84. bravely
85. name
86. oath
87. horrible
88. to profess
89. and so
90. bitter

THE SUPINES.

415. A Supine is a **verbal noun;** i. e. it has a *verbal meaning*, but is used as a *noun*.

416. There are only two supines to a verb:—one in **um** (acc. case) and the other in **u** (abl.). They are not declined.

417. Rule of Syntax: The **Supine** in **um** is used after a verb of motion to express *purpose*.*

418. Rule of Syntax: The **Supine** in **u** expresses *specification*.

419. **EXAMPLES.**

Rex legatos pacem **petitum** misit.
The king has sent ambassadors **to seek** peace.
Hoc est facile **factu.**
This is easy **to do** (i.e., easy **in the doing**).

EXERCISES.

420. 1. Principes civitatum ad imperatorem gratulatum convenerunt. 2. Perfacile factu esse illis probat. 3. Haedui Romam ad senatum auxilium postulatum veniunt. 4. Oppidum expugnatu facile erit. 5. Hoc est optimum factu. 6. Nos legatos pacem petitum ab Caesare mittemus. 7. Cives naves spectatum conveniunt. 8. Vulnera militum fuerunt horribilia visu. 9. Vox oratoris fuit jucunda auditu. 10. Fatum exercitus cognitu difficile est.

421. 1. We shall send a man to the consul to obtain pardon. 2. This is very easy to do. 3. The soldiers are coming together to look at the chariots. 4. That is not so difficult to learn. 5. Such words are not pleasing to hear. 6. The men have gone to procure fodder. 7. A part of the horsemen have gone pursuing the enemy. 8. The kindness of the old-man was pleasing to see. 9. The gentle voice of the queen is pleasing to hear. 10. Pleasant things are not hard to tell.

*We have similar expressions in English: e. g. I go *afishing*. We shall go *awalking*, etc.

INTRODUCTION TO THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

422. The Subjunctive Mood is a mood of *doubt*, *i. e.*, the subjunctive mood rarely expresses a fact but is used wherever the person is not absolutely positive as to whether or not a thing is true.

The Subjunctive is used chiefly in **Dependent** Clauses. (Sometimes in an Independent clause, see Arts. 443, 453.)

423. The translation of a subjunctive form depends upon the clause in which the form stands. Sometimes it is translated by the English *Indicative;* sometimes by the *Subjunctive;* sometimes by the *Infinitive;* sometimes by the *Imperative;* sometimes by the use of *may*, *might*, *would*, *should*.

Examples.

1. Cum milites venissent, *When the soldiers had come, etc.*
2. Rex aderat ut naves videret. *The king was present in order to see the ships.*

or *The king was present that he might see the ships.*

or *The king was present to see the ships.*

3. Omnes eamus. *Let us all go.*
4. Licet domum eas. *You may go home.*

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

424. The tenses of the Indicative and those of the Subjunctive mood are divided into two classes—(1) **Primary.** (2) **Secondary.**

RULE.—Primary tenses of the Subjunctive must follow primary tenses of the Indicative. Secondary tenses of the Subjunctive must follow secondary tenses of the Indicative.

Indicative.			Subjunctive.
Primary.	Present, Future, Perfect (has), *or* Fut. Perfect	*followed by*	Present *or* Perfect
Secondary.	Imperfect, Perfect (=*Imperf*), *or* Pluperfect	*followed by*	Imperfect *or* Pluperfect.

425. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The chief uses of the Subjunctive Mood are as follows:

1. **PURPOSE.** (a) **ut** (*in order that*) + **Subjunctive.**
(b) **ne** (*in order that not*) + **Subjunctive.**
(c) **relative pronoun + Subjunctive.**

(a) Caesari obsides dederunt **ut** pacem haberent.
They gave hostages to Caesar **in order that** *they might have peace.*
(b) Viri fugiunt **ne** capiantur.
The men flee **in order that** *they may* **not** *be captured.*
(c) Galli nuntios mittunt **qui** pacem petant.
The Gauls send messengers **who** *should seek peace.*

2. **RESULT.** (a) **ut** (*so that*) + **Subjunctive.**
(b) **ut non** (*negative*) + **Subjunctive.**
(c) **relative pronoun + Subjunctive.**

(a) Milites ita acriter pugnaverunt **ut** hostes vincerent.
The soldiers fought so earnestly **that** *they conquered the enemy.*
(b) Milites ita defessi erant **ut** hostes **non** vincerent.
The soldiers were so tired **that** *they did* **not** *conquer the enemy.*
(c) Caesar milites defessos habebat **qui** bene non pugnarent.
Caesar had tired soldiers **who** *did not fight well.*

3. **AFTER WORDS OF DOUBT.—quin** (*but that*) + **Subjunctive.**
Dubium non est **quin** nuntium mittat.
There is no doubt **but that** *he is sending a messenger.*

4. **AFTER WORDS OF FEAR.** (a) **ne** (*lest*) + **Subjunctive.**
(b) **ut** (*lest not*) + **Subjunctive.**

(a) Milites timent **ne** vir capiatur.
The soldiers fear **that** *the man is being captured.*
(b) Viri timent **ut** Caesar cibum mittat.
The men fear **that** *Caesar is* **not** *sending food.*

5. **TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—cum** (*when*) + **Subjunctive.**
Cum id Caesari nuntiatum esset ab urbe profectus est.
When *this had been announced to Caesar he set out from the city.*

6. **CAUSAL CLAUSES.—cum** (*because*) + **Subjunctive.**
Caesar finem pugnandi fecit **cum** milites essent defessi.
Caesar made an end of fighting **because** *the soldiers were tired.*

7. **CONCESSION CLAUSES.—cum** (*although*) + **Subjunctive.**
Cum hostes fortiter pugnent Caesar eos vincet.
Although *the enemy are fighting bravely Caesar will conquer them.*

8. **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—Subjunctive.**
Caesar ab eis quaesivit **qui** essent.
Caesar asked them **who** *they were.*

9. **HORTATORY.—Subjunctive** Present, 1st person, Plural.
Legatos ad Caesarem **mittamus.**
Let us send *ambassadors to Caesar.*

10. **CONDITIONS.—si** (*if*) + **Subjunctive.**
(a) **Simple**—(Present or Fut. Ind. in both clauses).
(b) **Less Vivid Future**—(Pres. Subj. in both clauses).
(c) **Present Contrary to Fact**—(Imperf. Subj. in both clauses).
(d) **Past Contrary to Fact**—(Pluperf. Subj. in both clauses).
(a) Si transire **conantur** eos **prohibebimus.**
If **they try** *to cross* **we shall prevent** *them.*
(b) Si transire **conentur** eos **prohibeamus.**
If **they should try** *to cross* **we would prevent** *them.*
(c) Si transire **conarentur** eos **prohiberemus.**
If **they were trying** *to cross* **we would be preventing** *them.*
(d) Si transire **conati essent** eos **prohibuissemus.**
If **they had tried** *to cross* **we would have prevented** *them.*

11. **WISHES.—utinam** (*would that*) + **Subjunctive.**
(a) **Simple**— Utinam + Pres. or Fut. Ind.
(b) **Less Vivid Future**— Utinam + Pres. Subj.
(c) **Present contrary to fact**— Utinam + Imperf. Subj.
(d) **Past contrary to fact**— Utinam + Pluperf. Subj.
(a) Utinam vir cibum **habebit.**
Would that the man **may have** *food.*
(b) Utinam vir cibum **habeat.**
Would that the man **might have** *food.*
(c) Utinam vir cibum **haberet.**
Would that the man **were having** *food.*
(d) Utinam vir cibum **habuisset.**
Would that the man **had had** *food.*

426. PURPOSE AND RESULT.

1. **PURPOSE.** (*a*) **ut** (*in order that*) + Subjunctive.
(*b*) **ne** (*in order that not*) + Subjunctive.
(*c*) **relative pronoun** + Subjunctive.

(*a*) Caesari obsides dederunt **ut** paeem haberent.
They gave hostages to Caesar **in order that** they might have peaee.

(*b*) Viri fugiunt **ne** eapiantur.
The men flee **in order that** they may **not** be eaptured.

(*c*) Galli nuntios mittunt **qui** paeem petant.
The Gauls send messengers **who** should seek peaee.

2. **RESULT.** (*a*) **ut** (*so that*) + Subjunctive.
(*b*) **ut not** (*negative*) + Subjunctive.
(*c*) **relative pronoun** + Subjunctive.

(*a*) Milites **ita** aeriter pugnaverunt **ut** hostes vineerent.
The soldiers fought **so** earnestly **that** they eonquered the enemy.

(*b*) Milites **ita** defessi erant **ut** hostes **non** vincerent.
The soldiers were **so** tired **that** they did **not** conquer the enemy.

(*c*) Caesar milites defessos habebat **qui** bene non pugnarent.
Caesar had tired soldiers **who** did **not** fight well.

EXERCISES.

427. 1. Imperator ad militem litteram misit ne virum cibo juvaret. 2. Caesari placuit ut ad Gallos nuntium mitteret. 3. Caesar militibus dissuaserat ut pugnae fortunam non experti essent. 4. Accidit ut milites castra prope flumen conlocarent. 5. Milites ex oppido exire jussit ne quam* injuriam oppidani acciperent. 6. Legati venerunt ut locum conloquio deligerent. 7. Equus tam validus est ut servus eum coercere non possit. 8. Caesar pro castris milites produxit ut proelio contenderet. 9. Puer virum oravit ut sibi scutum daret. 10. Mitte militem ad me ne quam injuriam faciat.

*Any form of **quis** or **qui** after **ne** or **si** means "*any* . . ."

428. 1. The Romans had so large an army that they easily drove the Germans out of Gaul. 2. The man hastens in order to see the commander. 3. He will command the townsmen that they give food to the soldiers. 4. The soldiers had set out so quickly from the camp that they intercepted the men. 5. The commander will be requested to come to a conference. 6. We must fortify the camp lest the enemy capture our baggage. 7. The men had such sharp weapons that they conquered the horsemen. 8. We shall ask the townsmen to give us food and water.

EXERCISES.

429. 1. Viri ad urbem maturant ne tempus dimittant. 2. Quam ob rem secutum est hostes adoriri non possemus. 3. Postulabo ne milites trans flumen traducas. 4. Mittam equum in quo in oppidum veharis. 5. Jus jurandum acceperunt ne in populum Romanum bellum inlaturi essent. 6. Dux milites multos habet quibuscum oppidum oppugnare possit. 7. Imperator multum curaverat ut cibus militibus non defuisset. 8. Virum fortem desidero quem in urbem mittam.

430. 1. The master has sent five books which the children are to study. 2. The commander will send soldiers who will help us fight with the enemy. 3. Three men were chosen who should seek aid from the townsmen. 4. You will send a man whom I may use as a spy. 5. They built a bridge so that they were able to bring over the horses and the men. 6. The enemy had selected a messenger whom they would send to the town. 7. I have summoned the messenger whose response I shall receive. 8. The woman brought so much food to the leader that the soldiers received a share.

431. CLAUSES OF DOUBT AND FEAR.

AFTER WORDS OF **DOUBT.**—**quin** (*but that*) + **Subjunctive.**

Dubium non est **quin** nuntium **mittat.**

There is no doubt **but that he is sending** a messenger.

(After an affirmative doubt use an *infinitive clause.*)

AFTER WORDS OF **FEAR.**—

(a) **ne** (*lest*) + **Subjunctive.**

(b) **ut** (*lest not*) + **Subjunctive.**

(a) Milites timent **ne** vir **capiatur.**

The soliders fear **lest** the man **be captured.**

(b) Viri timent **ut** Caesar cibum **mittat.**

The men fear **lest** Caesar **is not sending food.**

Note: The **future idea** in the subjunctive is expressed by the **Active Periphrastic Conjugation** (see page 186.)

EXERCISES.

432. 1. Non dubium est quin omnes vos sitis milites fortes. 2. Timeo ne hostes in nostris militibus prope pontem impetum faciant. 3. Dux timebat ut auxilium ad se ante primam lucem perventurum esset. 4. Quis dubitat quin Romani victoriam reportaturi sint. 5. Omnes timuerant ne naves tempestate deletae essent. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin consul futurus esset fortis atque sapiens. 7. Timemus ut fugitivi locum salutis perventuri sint. 8. Quis dubitare poterat quin imperator celeriter bellum confecturus esset? 9. Socii timent ut Romani auxilium missuri sint. 10. Nos non dubitamus quin vos quam plurimum contendetis.

433. 1. There is no doubt but that the enemy are brave. 2. The general feared lest the bridge might be torn down. 3. The citizens did not doubt that the good king was wise. 4. We all fear that the ships will not reach the shore safely. 5. I feared lest the town was about to be taken. 6. There can be no doubt that the general will win the battle. 7. The spies had feared that they would be captured by the horsemen. 8. I did not doubt but that the city had been destroyed by him. 9. Who has doubted that we were about to offer pardon to the captive? 10. The captives had feared that they would be put to death by order of the king.

EXERCISES.

434. 1. Nobis non dubium est quin ante noctem ad urbem perventuri simus. 2. Non dubium erat quin consilium senis esset optimum. 3. Nihil impedit quin iter celerrime facere possint. 4. Quis timet ut in quinque diebus urbem occupaturi simus. 5. Consules timuerant ne plebes contra nobilitatem se armaturi essent. 6. Nos non dubitamus quin haec omnia nobis magno usui futura sint. 7. Nemo dubitare poterat quin rex esset benignus atque clemens. 8. Dubito imperatorem Romam aditurum esse.

435. 1. There can be no doubt of his gaining a victory 2. We are in fear lest we shall not reach a place of safety before night. 3. Who feared that the river would be too wide? 4. There was no doubt that the army could make the journey in nine days. 5. Why do you fear that the work will not be well done? 6. Do you doubt that the ships are strong and swift? 7. The ambassadors are afraid that the king will not receive them kindly. 8. Who can doubt but that all these things are useful for carrying on war?

436. CUM CLAUSES.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES—**cum** (*when*) + **Subjunctive.**

Cum id Caesaris **nuntiatum esset,** ab urbe profectus est.

When this **had been announced** to Caesar, he set out from the city.

CAUSAL CLAUSES—**cum** (*because, since*) + **Subjunctive.**

Caesar finem pugnandi fecit, **cum** milites **essent** defessi.

Caesar made an end of fighting **because** the soldiers **were** tired.

CONCESSION CLAUSES—**cum** (*although*) + **Subjunctive.**

Cum hostes fortiter **pugnent,** Caesar eos vincet.

Although the enemy **are fighting** bravely, Caesar will conquer them.

437. Rule of Syntax—Cum *causal* and **cum** *concession* clauses have the verb in the **Subjunctive mood.**

438. Rule of Syntax—Cum *temporal* (*time*) clauses have the verb in the **Subjunctive mood** (**Imperfect** or **Pluperfect** tense) but in the **Indicative** mood (**Present, Future, Perfect** or **Future Perfect**).

EXERCISES.

439. 1. Cum Caesar de moribus Barbarorum quaereret, multas res reperiebat. 2. Cum iter agminis nostri impediatur hic castra ponemus. 3. Cum Caesari non sint multi milites, cum hostibus proelium committet. 4. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, ad magnum locum pervenit. 5. Cum in Italiam multi equites profecti sint, nos in Gallia remanebimus. 6. Cum primi hostium cecidissent, proximi ex eorum corporibus pugnabant. 7. Quae cum ita sint, Romam redibimus. 8. Cum flentes pacem petiverimus, rex nobis veniam dare non vult. 9. Cum sua vitia animadvertit, ea corrigere conatur.

440. 1. Since the ships are useless for sailing, we shall remain here. 2. Although we have few ships, we shall begin battle. 3. When the leader had returned, he encouraged the soldiers. 4. Since this man is wise, we shall make him consul. 5. When my father comes, he will give you the money. 6. Although the journey was long, we were not tired. 7. Because the children prefer to read, we have given them books. 8. Since you are my friend, I shall help you. 9. Although the enemy were fleeing, the cavalry did not pursue them.

EXERCISES.

441. 1. Cum dux hoc animadvertisset, naves militibus compleri jussit. 2. Cum bellum sine causa intulissent, Caesar ab se obsides impetravit. 3. Cum multi milites a hostibus interfecti sint, in eos impetum secundum faciemus. 4. Cum vir haec fecerit, judex eum punivit. 5. Cum naves Britanniae appropinquarent, magna tempestas coörta est. 6. Cum acies instructa sit, nostri non proelium committent. 7. Cum imperator castra prope oppidum poneret, legati ad eum venerunt. 8. Cum nos defendere non possimus, legatum ad regem mittemus. 9. Cum exploratores densiores silvas petiverint, non longius persequemur.

442. 1. Since these things are so, we shall go to the king. 2. Although we are tired, we shall make the journey with you. 3. When the ships arrived in the harbor, the merchants were there. 4. When you send me a letter, I shall answer. 5. Since the ships moved very swiftly, we soon arrived at port. 6. Although the judge is an old man, he is strong. 7. Because you have done this you will be punished. 8. When the army reached the river, the bridge had been destroyed.

443. INDIRECT QUESTIONS and HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

Indirect Questions.—Subjunctive.

Caesar ab eis quaesivit **qui essent.**
Caesar asked them **who they were.**

Indirect **Double** Questions are introduced by:

utrum . . . . . **an**; *whether* . . . . . *or*
—ne . . . . . **an**; *whether* . . . . . *or*
utrum . . . . . **necne**; *whether or not.*

Hortatory.—Subjunctive present, **first person, plural.**

Legatos ad Caesarem **mittamus.**
Let us send ambassadors to Caesar.

Jussive Subjunctive.—Present, **third person sing.** or **plur.**

The negative particle (for Hortatory or Jussive Subjunctive) is **ne.**

EXERCISES.

444. 1. Video quas in partes hostes iter faciant. 2. Cum militibus ad litora quam plurimum contendamus. 3. A captivis quaerit quae civitates quantaeque in armis sint. 4. Ne flumen transeamus cum hostes nobis insidientur. 5. Mihi dic utrum hi viri amici an inimici sint. 6. Mittamus ad socios auxilio tertiam legionem. 7. Dux non reperire poterat quanta esset insulae magnitudo. 8. Homo nobis dicat quis sit atque a quo loco veniat. 9. Consules videre non poterant naves utrum salvae necne essent. 10. Ne hostes videant quid faciamus.

445. 1. Let us hasten into the territory of our enemies. 2. We do not know why the consul has left the city. 3. Let the guard place the spy in the new prison. 4. The king soon found out who the conspirators were. 5. Within two days the horseman will know whether or not his children are safe. 6. Tell us whether you will be an ally to us or an enemy. 7. Let us not try to cross the river in such a storm. 8. The king has been informed what the number of the enemy is. 9. I do not know who the man is nor whence he has come. 10. Let not these fugitives perish on account of hunger.

EXERCISES.

446. 1. Intellegimus quanto cum periculo id faciat. 2. Hunc virum cum epistulis ad imperatorem mittamus. 3. Ne speculatores videant quid in castris fiat. 4. Hic vir cognoscit qui essent ad navium magnitudinem idonei portus. 5. Contendamus Romam quam maximis itineribus. 6. Caesar a legato quaesivit quam ob causam de eo tacuisset. 7. Ab hominibus quaesivi rex benignusne an crudelis sit. 8. Nuntius nobis dicat quid rex nos facere velit.

447. 1. I shall ask the commander how many soliders he has. 2. Let us march as rapidly as possible to the besieged city. 3. He does not know for what reason his father has called him. 4. Do not let him cross the lake during such a storm. 5. Who can tell us at what hour the king will come? 6. Let us all be brave and we shall capture the citadel. 7. The farmer told us which was the shortest road to the town. 8. Let us not devastate the fields of the good townsmen.

448. CONDITIONS.

CONDITIONS.—**si** (*if*) + **Subjunctive.**

(a) **Simple**—(Present or Fut. Ind. in both clauses).

(b) **Less Vivid Future**—(Pres. Subj. in both clauses).

(c) **Present Contrary to fact**—(Imperf. Subj. in both clauses).

(d) **Past Contrary to fact**—(Pluperf. Subj. in both clauses).

(*a*) Si transire **conantur** eos **prohibebimus.**
If **they try** *to cross* **we shall prevent** *them.*

(*b*) Si transire **conentur** eos **prohibeamus.**
If **they should try** *to cross* **we would prevent** *them.*

(*c*) Si transire **conarentur** eos **prohiberemus.**
If **they were trying** *to cross* **we would be preventing** *them.*

(*d*) Si transire **conati essent** eos **prohibuissemus.**
If **they had tried** *to cross* **we would have prevented** *them.*

EXERCISES.

449. 1. Auxilium vobis non mittere possimus si etiam velimus. 2. Si hic homo cibum habuisset nautae dedisset. 3. Hostes pontem aedificabunt nisi flumen latius est. 4. Si etiam oppida nostrorum sociorum oppugnetis, non timeamus. 5. Hos libros pulchros liberis dare possemus si ii adessent. 6. Ibo ad urbem nisi viri veniunt. 7. Si naves firmiores fuissent nautae fortes ad oras pervenissent. 8. Gladii novi acres essent nisi in pugna usi essent. 9. Hi milites cum imperatore ibunt si veniet. 10. Si equitatus flumen transiisset hostes in eum impetum fecissent.

450. 1. The army of the great general will make war upon the townsmen unless they furnish food. 2. If the Romans had ten legions, they could easily conquer the enemy in many battles. 3. Caesar would send another legion to aid us if we should need it. 4. I cannot send you aid unless I can find more soldiers. 5. We would be setting out for town if we had enough wagons. 6. If aid had come, the men would have been able to hold the town against the soldiers. 7. The gate of the town will be opened if the general comes. 8. If the horses were not tired, we could make longer journeys.

EXERCISES.

451. 1. Haec urbs nova incolas multas haberet si bona copia aquae esset. 2. Cibum et aquam nautae dem si ab me petat. 3. Magnus numerus virorum interfectus esset nisi imperator eis auxilio legionem misisset. 4. Mitte mihi puerum si tibi placet. 5. Dux victoriam reportaret si sui milites fortiores essent. 6. Naves videre non poteritis nisi nobiscum venitis. 7. Portae urbis claudentur si fugitivi pervenientur.

452. 1. If we march six miles to-day, we shall arrive at Rome. 2. If the townsmen try to force their way into the house, I shall do them injury. 3. This messenger would have been captured had we not arrived. 4. The army will remain in camp three days if the enemy do not come. 5. If the men do not obey the laws of the state they will suffer. 6. He would have sent a letter to his father, if he had had a messenger. 7. If the soldiers did their duty they would obey their commander.

453. WISHES.

WISHES.—**utinam** (*would that*) + **Subjunctive.**

(a) **Simple** —Utinam + Pres. or Fut. Ind.

(b) **Less Vivid Future** —Utinam + Pres. Subj.

(c) **Present Contrary to fact** —Utinam + Imperf. Subj.

(d) **Past Contrary to fact** —Utinam + Pluperf. Subj.

(*a*) Utinam vir cibum **habebit.**
Would that the man **may have** *food.*

(*b*) Utinam vir cibum **habeat.**
Would that the man **might have** *food.*

(*c*) Utinam vir cibum **haberet.**
Would that the man **were having** *food.*

(*d*) Utinam vir cibum **habuisset.**
Would that the man **had had** *food.*

EXERCISES.

454. 1. Utinam hic homo cibum habuisset! 2. Utinam naves firmiores essent! 3. Utinam equitatus flumen transeant! 4. Utinam haec urbs nova incolas multas habebit! 5. Utinam dux victoriam reportet! 6. Utinam naves videre possemus! 7. Utinam portae urbis non clauderentur! 8. Utinam cibum et aquam habebo!

455. 1. Oh that I had had five legions! 2. Would that the enemy had been conquered! 3. Oh that the sick man may have water! 4. Would that I might send you aid! 5. O that the horses were not tired! 6. Would that we had remained in the town! 7. O that the messenger may not be captured! 8. Would that we were safe!

LATIN AND ENGLISH SELECTIONS.

456. Translate into English:

a Diem dicunt, qua die in unum locum conveniant.

b Pace facta Ceasar exercitum suum reduxit.

c Oppidum muro muniri iussit.

d Vidit hunc locum ad pugnandum idoneum esse

e Timebant ne Romani suos fines vastarent.

457. Translate into Latin:

a The soldiers were fighting with swords.

b We must conquer the enemy.

c The general went to lead the army into Gaul.

d He says that he will come with all his forces.

e They were men of great courage.

458. Translate into English:

Prima *luce*, cum summus mons a *Labieno tenereturr*, et Caesar ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis *passibus* abesset, Considius ad eum accurrit et dicit *montem* ab hostibus teneri. Caesar suas copias in pròximum collem subducit aciemque instruit.

Give the reason for the case of *luce*, *Labieno*, *passibus*, *montem;* for the mode of *teneretur*.

459. Translate into English:

Helvetii per Sequanorum fines iter facere constituerunt. Caesar autem in Italiam contendit et ibi *duas novas legiones* conscribit, et tres ab hibernis ducit. Cum iis copiis per Alpes in Galliam iter facit.

460 Translate into Latin:

a Let us capture the camp.
b Caesar orders the Gauls to send horsemen to him.
c Your industry has been praised by your friends.
d Have you the book that I gave you?
e Caesar is about to go to Rome.

461. Translate into English:

Bello Helvetiorum *confecto*, principes Galliae ad Caesarem convenerunt, quod *Germanos timebant*. Pro his Divitiacus locutus est: "Multi Germani in Gallia sunt, quibuscum saepe contendimus. *Eorum* superbiam *sustinere* non *possumus*. Ad te *venimus* ut auxilium *petamus*."

Give the reason for the case of *bello*, *Germanos*, *eorum;* for the mode of *sustinere*, *petamus*.

Conjugate *confecto* in the present indicative active, in the pluperfect subjunctive active; *timebant* in the future and the perfect indicative active.

462. Translate into English:

Cum celerrime ad fines *eorum venisset*, Remi, qui proximi *Galliae* sunt, ad eum legatos, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui *dicerent* se in potestatem populi Romani *permittere*. Hoc ab his factum est.

Give the reason for the care of *eorum*, *Galliae;* for the mode of *venisset*, *dicerent*, *permittere*.

463. Translate into Latin:

a They called him the father of his country.
b You had been conquered by the Romans.
c The cities of Italy were very famous.
d I can carry a letter to Hannibal.
e Give me the large sword.

464. Translate into English:

Postquam Caesar equitatum praemisit, secutus est omnibus copiis. Equites nostri flumen transierunt atque cum hostium equitatu proelium *commiserunt*. Reliqui hostes, qui in silvas fugerant, in nostros milites impetum *fecerunt*.

Conjugate *commiserunt* in the pluperfect subjunctive active, in the future indicative passive; *fecerunt* in the imperfect subjunctive active, in the perfect indicative passive.

465. Translate into English:

Cum Dareus ad Atticam cum copiis *accessisset*, Athenienses nuntium *Spartam* miserunt ut auxilium *peteret*. Postea Athenienses copias ex urbe *eduxerunt* castraque fecerunt. Secundo *die* sub monte *acie* instructa, proelium cum hostibus commiserunt.

Give the reasons for the case of *Spartam*, *die*, *acie;* for the mode of *accessisset*, *peteret*.

466. Translate into Latin:

a The citizens were going home.

b They were ordered to cross the river.

c Let us fight bravely, my friends.

d Did you tell that to the general?

e We shall depart from the town.

467. Translate into English:

Postquam omnes Belgarum copiae in *unum locum venerunt*, Caesar flumen, *quod* est in hostium finibus exercitum transduxit atque ibi castra *posuit*. In *eo flumine* pons erat. Ibi Caesar unam legionem et in altera parte fluminis duas legiones reliquit.

Conjugate *venerunt* in the imperfect indicative active, in the imperfect subjunctive active; *posuit* in the future indicative passive, in the pluperfect subjunctive passive.

Decline in the singular *unum locum*, *eo flumine*, the masculine of *quod*.

468. Translate into English:

Equites nostri, ut eos subito adoriri *possent*, celeriter ad eum locum venerunt. *Clamore* ab ea parte audito pedites nostri magna *virtute* oppugnare coeperunt. Hostes, cum *se* superatos *viderent*, fuga salutem petiverunt.

Give the reasons for the case of *clamore*, *virtute*, *se;* for the mode of *possent*, *viderent*.

469. Translate into Latin:

a We are about to depart from the state.

b Let us go into the territories of the Helvetians.

c Have you announced this thing to him?

d They say that they will send ambassadors to Caesar.

e We shall march through their province.

470. Translate into English:

Hostes magnam classem contrahunt. Hos Conon adortus magno proelio fugat et multas naves *capit*. Qua victoria non solum Athenae, sed etiam omnis Graecia, quae sub imperio hostium fuerat, *liberata est*.

Conjugate *capit* in the future indicative active, in the perfect subjunctive passive; *liberata est* in the future imperative active, in the present subjunctive passive.

471. Translate into English:

Erat inter Graecos, qui urbem Troiam obsidebant, Ulixes, vir summae virtutis ac prudentiae. Hic regnum insulae Ithacae obtinuerat et cum reliquis Graecis Troiam profectus erat. Troia tandem capta, domum redire maturavit. De hoc reditu Homerus, maximus poeta Graecorum, scripsit.

472. Translate into Latin:

a Two battles were fought by the Romans.
b He sends a ship to capture the island.
c We must destroy this city.
d He will lead a large army into Italy.
e Take the books that I have.

473. Translate into English:

Graeci, post excidium Troiae, in patriam *revertunt*. In his erat Ulysses. Multum ille errat, multas terras *videt*, multa maria *transit*. Post multos annos ad patriam venit, et adventus eius uxori et caro filio gratissimus fuit.

Write the principal parts of *revertunt, videt, transit*.

474. Translate into English:

Hamilcar, postquam in Hispaniam venit, magna bella gessit; maximos fortissimosque populos subegit, et equis, armis, viris totam Africam locupletavit. Hic, nono anno postquam in Hispaniam venerat, in proelio pugnans occisus est.

475. Translate into Latin:

a Let us go to Rome.

b He began to help his brother.

c They will fight well because the leader is here.

d He was with his father, a tall man.

e I shall use your forces.

476. Translate into English:

Dum *haec* Romae *geruntur*, imperator cum eis militibus quos a Caesare *acceperat*, in fines Gallorum venit. His *praeerat* Viridovix ac *imperium tenebat* earum *omnium civitatum* quae eo tempore defecerant. Ex his civitatibus Viridovix *exercitum* magnasque copias coegerat.

Decline, in the singular, *imperium*, *omnium civitatum*, *exercitum*, the feminine of *haec*.

Conjugate *acceperat* in the future perfect indicative active, in the imperfect subjunctive passive; *tenebat* in the perfect indicative active, in the future indicative passive.

477. Translate into English:

Erant viae duae quibus imperator ex Asia cum suo exercitu domum redire posset. Earum viarum brevior erat per loca quae nemo incolebat propter aquae inopiam; altera via erat multo longior sed per agros omnium rerum abundantes.

478. Translate into Latin:

a He says that he is a Roman general

b He came to Rome to see the consul.

c Because their towns were fortified, the enemy did not fear.

d Let us go against the Gauls with our forces.

e Have you the sword that you captured?

479. Translated into English:

Cum Xerxes in Europam maximis copiis *transisset*, Leonidas cum septem milibus *hominum* missus est, ut Thermopylas *occuparet*. Ii *vim* hostium sustinere non potuerunt et eo loco omnes interierunt. Post hoc proelium Xerxes *Athenas* venit atque urbem delevit.

Give the reason for the case of *hominum*, *vim*, *Athenas;* for the mode of *transisset*, *occuparet*.

480. Translate into English:

a Erant itinera duo quibus domo exire possent.

b Ubi ea dies venit, legati ad eum reverterunt.

c Ipse cum suis copiis eos sequi coepit.

d Vidit autem in magno periculo se esse.

e In omnibus rebus animo magno fuit.

481. Translate into Latin:

a We hear that the camp is fortified.

b He had lived for many years at Rome.

c The horseman was wounded with a sword.

d The mountain was so high that the army did not proceed.

e We must set out.

482. Translate into English:

Proximo *die* Caesar e castris copias suas eduxit aciemque instruxit et *hostibus* potestatem pugnandi fecit. Cum Caesar exercitum in castra *reduxisset*, Ariovistus partem suarum *copiarum*, quae castra minora *oppugnaret*, misit.

Give the reason for the case of *die*, *hostibus*, *copiarum;* for the mode of *reduxisset*, *oppugnaret.*

483. Translate into English:

Hostes Regulum ducem, quem ceperant, Romam miserunt, ut a senatu pacem obtineret. Ille, cum venisset, dixit se non iam esse civem Romanum, et senatui persuasit ne pacem faceret. Cum ad Africam rediit summa crudelitate interfectus est.

484. Translate into Latin:

a A thousand horsemen were killed in that war.
b When Agesilaus was leader the soldiers were glad.
c He says that that there will not be a battle.
d We must conquer them.
e They are at Athens.

485. Translate into English:

Helvetii cum omnibus copiis e finibus suis *exire* et per provinciam nostram iter facere constituerunt. Cum id *Caesari nuntiatum esset*, ab urbe profectus est, et magnis *itineribus* in Galliam contendit. Legati nobilissimi *civitatis* ad eum ab Helvetiis missi sunt.

Give the reason for the case of *Caesari*, *itineribus*, *civitatis;* for the mode of *exire*, *nuntiatum esset.*

QUESTIONS

ON THE

TWENTIETH CENTURY LATIN-BOOK

Note: The number in parentheses at the end of each question indicates the page on which the answer can be found.

1. Name the *eight* parts of speech. (I)

2. Define:—Noun, Pronoun, Adjective, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection. (I)

3. What is the difference between a singular noun and a plural noun? (I)

4. Mention *four* ways in which a noun may be used. (I)

5. Name *five* classes of pronouns. (II)

6. Give an English sentence containing an adjective. (II)

7. Name the three degrees of comparison. (II)

8. How are adjectives compared? (II)

9. Mention and compare an adjective in English. (II)

10. Name the *four* classes of verbs and define each class. (II)

11. Why is a verb inflected? (III)

12. Name the *four* moods. (III)

13. Name the *six* tenses. (III)

14. How does the active voice differ from the passive? (IV)

15. Mention the English pronouns of the 1st person, 2nd person and 3rd person. (IV)

16. How are adverbs compared in English? (IV)

17. Give an English sentence containing a preposition and a conjunction. (V)

18. Define "phrase" and "clause." (V)

19. Name the vowels and the diphthongs in Latin. (1)

20. Give the definition of a diphthong. (1)

21. When is a vowel long? (3)

22. When is a vowel short? (3)

23. How many syllables has a Latin word? (4)

24. State *three* rules for dividing a Latin word into syllables. Illustrate. (4)

25. What names are given to the last three syllables of a Latin word? (4)

26. Can the *ultima* ever be accented? (4)

27. State the rules for accenting a Latin word. (4)

28. On which syllable is a Latin word accented if it has an enclitic? (4)

29. State the *five* general rules of gender. (5)

30. Name the *six* cases and state the use of each. (6)

31. What is the difference between the *stem* and the *base* of a noun? (7)

32. In what vowel does the stem of a First-Declension noun end? (7)

33. Nouns of the First Declension are of what gender? (7)

34. Give the case-endings for nouns of the First Declension. (7)

35. In what case should you put the Subject? —the direct object? —the noun in the predicate? (7)

36. How is possession expressed? (7)

37. How does an adjective agree with its noun? (7)

38. How does a verb agree with its subject? (7)

39. Give the genitive singular and the dative plural of **aqua, copia, filia, terra, via.** (8)

40. Give the dative singular and the genitive plural of **esseda, porta, sagitta.** (8)

41. Give the feminine, ablative, singular and the accusative plural of the following adjectives: **bona, multa, parva.** (8)

42. Decline the nouns in Art. 19. (8)

43. Decline the adjectives in Art. 19. (8)

44. Nouns of the Second Declension have their stem ending in what vowel? (12)

45. Nouns of the Second Declension are of what gender? (12)

46. State, with gender, the seven nouns of the Second Declension which are not masculine. (12)

47. Give the case-endings for nouns in **us,** second declension. (12)

48. Give the case-endings for nouns in **um,** second declension. (12)

49. Give the vocative singular of **servus.** (12)

50. Give the genitive singular and the dative plural of **amicus, oppidum, equus, filius, scutum.** (13)

51. Give the dative singular and the nominative plural of **annus, signum, gladius, murus, telum.** (13)

52. Give the masculine and the neuter ablative singular and the accusative plural of the following adjectives: **altus, longus, novus.** (13)

53. What is meant by the Dative of Service? (13)

54. What is meant by the Ethical Dative? (13)

55. State the gender of nouns in **er** of the second declension. (16)

56. Give the case-endings of nouns in **er.** (16)

57. State the difference in declension between **puer** and **ager.** (16)

58. Give *five* nouns in **er** declined like **puer** and *five* declined like **ager.** (17)

59. Give the genitive singular and the dative plural of the following nouns:—**gener, vesper, liber, socer, magister.** (17)

60. Give the dative singular and the genitive plural of the following nouns:—**vir, culter, minister, aquilifer, caper.** (17)

61. What is meant by an *adjective of the first and second declension?* (20)

62. State the difference between the declension of **bonus, miser,** and **niger.** (20)

63. Decline the following adjectives:—**magnus, dexter, pulcher, noster, liber.** (20)

64. Decline the masculine of **multus,** the feminine of **asper,** and the neuter of **aeger.** (20)

65. Give, with meanings, *five* nouns of the first declension that are **masculine** in gender. (22)

66. Give the Latin for the following expressions and decline each noun with its adjective (sing. and plur.): *our poet, a good farmer, the rough sailor, your associate, the sick scribe.* (22)

67. Give the principal parts of the verb **sum.** (23)

68. Give the synopsis of the verb **sum** in the second person, singular. (23)

69. Give the synopsis of the verb **sum** in the third person, plural. (23)

70. Give the synopsis of the verb **sum** in the third person singular. (23)

71. Define and illustrate the *Dative of the Possessor.* (24)

72. Tell what case must be used after each of the following prepositions: (28)

1. **per**	6. **ante**	11. **cum**	16. **in**
2. **e, ex**	7. **ad**	12. **trans**	17. **de**
3. **sub**	8. **contra**	13. **propter**	18. **sine**
4. **inter**	9. **super**	14. **post**	19. **pro**
5. **circum**	10. **a, ab**	15. **ultra**	20. **apud**

73. Give the meaning of each of the above prepositions. (28)

74. How many regular conjugations are there and how are they distinguished? (40)

75. How many moods are there in Latin? (40)

76. Define "Gerund" and "Supine." (40)

77. How are participles used? (40)

78. What is the difference in meaning between the *Perfect* and the *Imperfect* tenses? (40)

79. Name the four Principal Parts of a verb. (40)

80. Why are the Principal Parts so called? (40)

81. What is meant by the Present-system and the Perfect-system of tenses? (41)

82. How is Person represented in a Latin verb? (41)

83. Give the active and the passive personal endings. (41)

83a. State how each tense of a Latin verb is formed. (41)

84. Why are verbs like **amo** called **ā** verbs? (42)

85. Give the principal parts of **amo.** (42)

86. Give the synopsis of the verb **amo** in the third person, singular, active. (42)

87. Give the synopsis of the verb **amo** in the second person, plural, passive. (42)

88. Give the synopsis of the verb **amo** in the third person, active and passive, Indicative. (42)

89. Give the synopsis of the verb **amo** in the second person, singular and plural, active and passive, Subjunctive. (43)

90. Give all the Imperatives of **amo**. (44)

91. Give the Infinitives and the Participles of **amo**. (44)

92. How is the gerund used? (44)

93. Give the following rules of syntax and illustrate: 1. Agent with a passive verb. 2. Means or instrument. 3. Cause. 4. Accompaniment. (48)

94. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **cogito, creo, laboro, laudo, voco.** (45)

95. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **accelero, convoco, excito, probo, specto.** (45)

96. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **accuso, agito, conloco, enuntio, oppugno.** (45)

97. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **aedifico, celo, consulto, decerto, invito.** (45)

98. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **crepo, do, juvo, seco, sto, veto.** (45)

99. Why are verbs like **moneo** called ē verbs? (54)

100. Give the principal parts of **moneo.** (54)

101. Give the synopsis of the verb **moneo** in the third person, singular, active. (54)

102. Give the synopsis of the verb **moneo** in the second person, plural, passive. (54)

103. Give the synopsis of the verb **moneo** in the third person, plural, active and passive, Indicative. (54)

104. Give the synopsis of the verb **moneo** in the second person, singular and plural, active and passive, Subjunctive. (55)

105. Give all the Imperatives of **moneo.** (56)

106. Give the Infinitives and the Participles of **moneo.** (56)

107. How is the Gerund used? (56)

108. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **coerceo, debeo, exerceo, habeo, moneo.** (57)

109. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **prohibeo, taceo, terreo, augeo, commoveo.** (57)

110. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **deleo, detineo, dissuadeo, doceo, faveo.** (57)

111. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **fleo, jubeo, maneo, obsideo, obtineo.** (57)

112. Give the list of verbs that take the dative case. (62)

113. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **persuadeo, placeo, possideo, praebeo, provideo.** (57)

114. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **remaneo, removeo, teneo, timeo, video.** (57)

115. Do all nouns of the Third Declension have the nominative case ending in the same letter? (68)

116. State the Rules of Gender for nouns of the Third Declension. (68)

117. Give the case-endings for masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension. (68)

118. Give the case-endings for neuter nouns of the third declension. (68)

119. Into what *three* classes are nouns of the third declension divided? (69)

120. What is meant by an **i-stem?** Illustrate. (69)

121. What is meant by a **mixed stem?** Illustrate. (69)

122. What is meant by a **consonant stem?** Illustrate. (69)

123. How may the stem of a third-declension noun be found? (69)

124. What nouns are **i-stems?** (69)

125. What nouns are **mixed stems?** (69.)

126. What nouns are **consonant stems?** (69)

127. State the peculiarities in the declension of an **i-stem.** (69)

128. State the peculiarities in the declension of a **mixed stem.** (69)

129. State the peculiarities in the declension of a **consonant stem.** (69)

130. How do you account for there being **three** classes of nouns in the third declension? (69)

131. Give the *genitive form* for nouns whose nominative ends in:—**as, us, ax, o, do, ns, en, es, os, ux, go, rs, ur, l, or, s, is, ut, ex, ox, e, ar, er.** State the gender of each noun. (70)

132. *Give the genitive case of:*—nubes, miles, animal, ealear, sermo, virgo, laus, lapis, mos, multitudo, obses, pes, corpus, hostis, dux, latus, judex, nomen, mare, pons, aries, pulvis, sacerdos, jus, caput, virtus, fax, vox, cohors, hiems, agger, fur, auctor. (70)

133. Decline **bos, caro, frux, grex, homo.** (71)

134. Decline **lex, nemo, nox, rex, vis.** (71)

135. Decline **conjunx, cor, iter, nex, robur.** (71)

136. Decline **sanguis, ver, custos, os, senex.** (71)

137. Decline **aes, harpago, ebur, glans, heros.** (71)

138. Decline **Apollo, Ceres, Juppiter, September, Tros.** (71)

139. Decline **venter, femur, frons, ligo, mel.** (71)

140. Decline **Minos, pater, remex, praedo.** (71)

141. Decline **aestas, nubes, aries, miles.** (72)

142. Decline **pes, hostis, pulvis, lapis.** (72)

143. State the rules of syntax for: (1) Dative of Service. (2) Manner. (3) Time when. (4) Place where. (72)

144. State the rules of syntax for: (1) Special verbs which take the dative. (2) Agent. (3) Means or instrument. (72)

145. Decline *five* nouns out of each group in Art. 141. (73)

146. Decline **mos, sacerdos, latus, corpus.** (76)

147. Decline **laus, virtus, jus, caput.** (76)

148. State the rules of syntax for: (1) Dative of the Possessor. (2) Ethical Dative. (3) Accompaniment. (76)

149. Decline *five* nouns out of each group in Art. 150. (77)

150. Decline **dux, rex, judex, sermo.** (80)

151. Decline **legio, multitudo, virgo, nomen.** (80)

152. State the rules of syntax for: (1) Indirect object. (2) Special verbs taking the dative case. (3) Accompaniment. (4) Time, when or within which. (80)

153. Decline *five* nouns out of each group in Art. 159. (81)

154. Decline **orator, cohors, hiems, mare.** (84)

155. Decline **calcar, consul, pater, mulier.** (84)

155a. State the rules of syntax for: (1) Dative of Service. (2) Agent. (3) Place where. (84)

156. Decline *five* nouns out of each group in Art. 168. (85)

157. What is meant by an adjective of **three terminations**; of **two terminations**; of **one termination?** Give an example of each. (90)

158. Decline **acer.** (90)

159. Decline **levis.** (90)

160. Decline **audax.** (90)

161. Is **acer** an **i-stem?** (90)

162. Is **levis** an **i-stem?** (90)

163. Is **audax** an **i-stem?** (90)

164. Decline *five* adjectives out of each group in Art. 184. (91)

165. Why are verbs like **rego** called **ĕ** verbs? (94)

166. Give the Principal Parts of **rego.** (94)

167. Give the synopsis of the verb **rego** in the third person, singular number, active voice. (94)

168. Give the synopsis of the verb **rego** in the second person, plural number, passive voice. (94)

169. Give the synopsis of the verb **rego** in the third person, plural number, active and passive voices, Indicative mood. (94)

170. Give the synopsis of the verb **rego** in the second person, singular and plural numbers, active and passive voices, Subjunctive mood. (95)

171. Give all the Imperatives of **rego.** (96)

172. Give the Infinitive and the Participles of **rego.** (96)

173. How is the Gerund used? (96)

174. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **ago, cognosco, defendo, peto, tego.** (97)

175. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **dico, mitto, cado, ostendo, scribo.** (97)

176. Give the rule of syntax for **Cause.** (100)

177. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **dedo, duco, gero, pono, vinco.** (97)

178. Give the meaning and the principal parts of the following verbs: **cingo, deligo, perdo, rego, traho.** (97)

179. Give the rule of syntax for **Separation.** (103)

180. Give the meaning and the principal parts of the following verbs: **caedo, educo, quaero, relinquo,verto.** (97)

181. Give the meaning and the principal parts of the following verbs: **claudo, constituo, credo, parco, vivo.** (97)

182. Give the list of verbs that take the dative case. (103)

183. Give the rule of syntax for **Manner.** (104)

184. Give the rule of syntax for **Extent of Time** or **Space.** (105)

185. Why are verbs like **audio** called ī verbs? (106)

186. Give the Principal Parts of **audio.** (106)

187. Give the synopsis of the verb **audio** in the third person, singular number, active voice. (106)

188. Give the synopsis of the verb **audio** in the second person, plural number, passive voice. (106)

189. Give the synopsis of the verb **audio** in the third person, plural number, active and passive voices, Indicative Mood. (106)

190. Give the synopsis of the verb **audio** in the second person, singular and plural numbers, active and passive voices, Subjunctive mood. (107)

191. Give all the Imperatives of the verb **audio.** (108)

192. Give the Infinitives and the Participles of the verb **audio.** (108)

193. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **aperio, convenio, impedio, munio, venio.** (109)

194. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **audio, expedio, pervenio, servio, vincio.** (109)

195. State the rule of syntax for **Domus, Rus** and **names of towns.** (112)

196. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **consentio, custodio, evenio, invenio, subvenio.** (109)

197. State the rule of syntax for *Compound Verbs.* (113,

198. In what vowel does the stem of a noun of the fourth declension end? (116)

199. Nouns of the fourth declension are of what gender? (116)

200. State ten nouns of the fourth declension that are *feminine* in gender. (116)

201. Give the case endings for **masculine** nouns of the fourth declension. (116)

202. Give the case endings of **neuter** nouns of the fourth declension. (116)

203. Which nouns of the fourth declension have **ubus** in the *dative* and the *ablative plural?* (116)

204. Decline **senatus, cornu, domus.** (116)

205. Decline each of the following nouns: **adventus, genu, exercitus, veru, metus.** (117)

206. In what vowel does the stem of a noun of the fifth declension end? (118)

207. State the gender of nouns of the fifth declension. (118)

208. Give the case endings for nouns of the fifth declension. 118)

209. Decline **acies, dies, res, spes, res publica.** (118)

210. Why are verbs like **capio** called **io** verbs of the third conjugation? (120)

211. Give the Principal Parts of **capio.** (120)

212. Give the synopsis of the verb **capio** in the third person. singular number, active voice. (120)

213. Give the synopsis of the verb **capio** in the second person, plural number, passive voice. (120)

214. Give the synopsis of the verb **capio** in the third person, plural number, active and passive voices, Indicative mood. (120)

215. Give the synopsis of the verb **capio** in the second person, singular and plural numbers, active and passive voices, Subjunctive mood. (121)

216. Give all the Imperatives of **capio.** (122)

217. Give the Infinitives and the Participles of **capio.** (122)

218. How is the Gerund used? (122)

219. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **accipio, cupio, facio, fugio, recipio.** (123)

220. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **proficio, interficio, diripio, conficio, eripio.** (123)

221. Give the meaning and the principal parts of each of the following verbs: **patefacio, perficio, efficio, conspicio, suscipio.** (123)

222. State the rule of syntax for a *Predicate Accusative.* (126)

223. State the rule of syntax for *Compound Verbs.* (127)

224. Decline **nullus, unus, totus, alius, solus.** (132)

225. Decline **neuter, uter, alter, uterque, neuterque.** (132)

226. How may an adjective be compared? Illustrate. (134)

227. How is the *comparative* of an adjective formed? (134)

228. How is the *superative* of an adjective formed? (134)

229. When does an adjective add **issimus** to form the superlative and when **rimus.** (134)

230. Name the *six* adjectives which form their superlative in **limus.** (134)

231. Compare the following adjectives: **bonus, malus, magnus, multus, parvus, vetus.** (134)

232. How are the superlative forms of adjectives declined? (135)

233. How are the comparative forms of adjectives declined? (135)

234. Decline **durior.** (135)

235. Decline **plus.** (135)

236. Compare the following adjectives: **gratus, piger, fidelis, firmus, dīligens.** (135)

238. State the rules of syntax for (1) Adjectives of fitness, (2) Comparison, (3) Degree of difference. (136)

239. How are adverbs formed from adjectives? (137)

240. Form an adverb from each of the following adjectives: **justus, liber, pulcher, lēvis, sapiens.** (137)

241. Name *seven* adverbs which end in **o.** (137)

242. Mention *three* adverbs ending in **um** and *two* ending in **e.** (137)

243. Mention *four* adverbs ending in **iter.** (137)

244. How are adverbs compared? (138)

245. How is the comparative of an adverb formed? (138)

246. Name and decline each of the personal pronouns. (140)

247. What is used in Latin for the *third* person in English? (140)

248. Translate, *with me; with us; with himself; with thee; with you.* (140)

249. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* take what case? (141)

250. Name the possessive adjective pronouns. (142)

251. Give the Latin for *his; her; its; their* (m.); *their* (f.). (142)

252. State the rule of syntax for the agreement of adjectives with nouns. (142)

253. What is the difference between the use of **sui** and **ejus**? (144)

254. Name and decline the intensive pronoun. (144)

254a. What is the difference in use between **sui** and **ipse**? (144)

255. Decline **hic.** (144)

256. Name the *four* demonstrative pronouns. (146)

257. Decline **iste; ille; is; idem.** (146)

258. Explain the distinction between **hic; ille; iste; is.** (146)

259. Adjectives of fitness take what case? (147)

260. Decline the relative pronoun **qui.** (148)

261. State the rule of syntax for the relative pronoun. (148)

262. Decline the interrogative pronoun **quis.** (148)

263. Decline the interrogative adjective **qui.** (148)

264. Mention *five* indefinite pronouns and give their meanings. (149)

265. What is meant by a **Deponent Verb?** (150)

266. Give the synopsis of **hortor** in the third person, singular number. (150)

267. Give the synopsis of **tueor** in the first person, plural number. (150)

268. Give the synopsis of **loquor** in the third person, plural number. (150)

269. Give the synopsis of **potior** in the first person, singular number. (150)

270. Give the meaning and the Principal Parts of each of the following verbs: **arbitror, polliceor, proficiscor, utor, adorior, sequor.** (150)

271. What is meant by a **Semi-Deponent Verb?** (152)

272. Give the synopsis of the verb **gaudeo** in the third person, singular number. (152)

273. Give the meaning and the Principal Parts of each of the following verbs: **audeo, gaudeo, soleo, fido, confido.** (152)

274. Give the rule of syntax for *Deponent Verbs.* (152)

275. State the difference in the use of the *cardinals* and the *ordinals.* (154)

276. Count in Latin from *one* to *twenty-two.* (154)

277. Decline **duo; tres.** (155)

278. Decline **milia.** (155)

279. State the rule of syntax for (1) Partitive Genitive, (2) Extent of space. (156)

280. Give the Principal Parts of the verb **fero.** (159)

281. Give the synopsis of the verb **fero** in the third person, singular number. (159)

282. Give all the Infinitives and the Imperatives of the verb **fero.** (159)

283. Give the meaning and the Principal Parts of each of the following verbs: **aufero, confero, differo, infero, tollo.** (162)

284. Give the list of compound verbs that take the dative case. (162)

285. Give the Principal Parts of the verb **eo.** (164)

286. Give the synopsis of verb **eo** in the first person, plural number. (164)

287. Give the synopsis of the verb **eo** in the third person, plural number. (164)

288. Give the Principal Parts of the verb **fio.** (164)

289. Give the synopsis of the verb **fio** in the first person, singular number. (164)

290. Give the Infinitives and the Participles of the verb **fio.** (164)

291. **Fio** is used as the passive of what Latin verb? (164)

292. Give the meaning and the Principal Parts of each of the following verbs: **abeo, intereo, obeo, praetereo, transeo.** (167)

293. State *four* uses of the Infinitive mood. (168)

294. What is meant by **Indirect Discourse**? (168)

295. State the rules governing the use of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. (168)

296. State the rule of syntax for the **subject** of an infinitive. (168)

297. Give the meaning and the Principal Parts of each of the following verbs: **volo, nolo, malo.** (170)

298. Give the synopsis of the verb **volo** in third person, singular number. (170)

299. Give the synopsis of the verb **nolo** in the third person, plural number. (170)

300. Give the synopsis of the verb **malo** in the first person, plural number. (170)

301. Give the present Indicative of **volo.** (170)

302. Give the meaning and the Principal Parts of each of the following verbs: **possum, prosum.** (174-175)

303. Give the synopsis of the verb **possum** in the third person, singular number. (174)

304. Give the synopsis of the verb **prosum** in the third person, plural number. (175)

305. Give the meaning and the Principal Parts of each of the following verbs: **obsum, desum, praesum, adsum, supersum.** (178)

306. Compounds of **sum** take what case? (178)

307. State the rule of syntax for the compounds of **sum.** (178)

308. How may Participles be used? (180)

309. Decline **amans.** (180)

310. How do we decline *perfect* and *future* participles? (180)

311. What is meant by the **Ablative Absolute?** Illustrate. (182)

312. State the various uses of the *Ablative Absolute.* (183)

313. What is the difference between the **Gerund** and the **Gerundive?** (184)

314. How is the **Gerund** declined? (184)

315. What is meant by the **Periphrastic Conjugations?** (186)

316. How many are there? (186)

317. What does the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation* express? (187)

318. State the rule of syntax for Agent *with the gerundive.* (187)

319. What is meant by an **Impersonal** verb? (188)

320. State the rule of syntax for **Impersonal Verbs.** (188)

321. What is a **Supine?** (192)

322. State the rule of syntax for the *Supine* in **um.** (192)

323. State the rule of syntax for the *Supine* in **u.** (192)

324. What is meant by **Sequence of Tenses?** (193)

325. Name the *primary* and the *secondary* tenses of the Indicative. (193)

326. Mention the primary and the secondary tenses of the Subjunctive. (193)

327. Mention the *eleven* chief uses of the Subjunctive Mood. (194)

328. How is **Purpose** expressed? (196)

329. How is **Result** expressed? (196)

330. How is the Subjunctive Mood used after verbs of **doubt** or of **fear?** (198)

331. How is the Subjunctive Mood used in clauses of *time*, *cause*, and *concession*. (200)

332. What mood is used in Indirect Questions? (202)

333. What is meant by the **Hortatory** Subjunctive? (202)

334. Mention the *four* kinds of **Conditions** and state how each kind is expressed in Latin. (204)

335. Mention the *four* kinds of **Wishes** and state how each kind is expressed in Latin. (206)

VOCABULARIES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a . . . . . *active.*
abl . . . . . *ablative.*
acc. . . . . *accusative.*
adj . . . . . *adjective.*
adv. . . . . *adverb.*
C. . . . . (*common*) { M. or F. gender
comp., compar., } *comparative.*
conj . . . . . *conjunction.*
dat . . . . . *dative.*
def . . . . . *defective.*
dep. . . . . *deponent.*
Eng. . . . . *English.*
esp., espec. . *especially.*
F., fem . . . . *feminine.*
gen . . . . . *genitive.*
impers . . . . *impersonal.*
indecl. . . . . *indeclinable.*
indef. . . . . *indefinite.*
interr., interrog., } *interrogative.*
intens. . . . . *intensive.*
irr . . . . . *irregular.*
loc. . . . . *locative.*
M., masc. . . *masculine.*
neg . . . . . *negative.*
n . . . . . *neuter* (*intransitive*)
num . . . . . *numeral.*
p.p . . . . . *perfect participle.*
pass . . . . . *passive.*
pers. . . . . *person* (*al*).
pl., plur . . . *plural.*
poss . . . . . *possessive.*
prep . . . . . *preposition.*
pres. part. . *present participle.*
pron . . . . . *pronoun.*
reflex . . . . . *reflexive.*
rel. . . . . *relative.*
sing. . . . . *singular.*
sup., superl. *superlative*
v . . . . . *verb.*
w. . . . . *with.*

1 . . . . . First Conjugation.
2 . . . . . Second "
3 . . . . . Third "
4 . . . . . Fourth "

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

ā, see **ab.**

ab (ā, abs), prep. with abl., *away from, by* (agent).

abdūcō, abdūcere, abdūxī, abductum, [ab-duco], 3. v. a., *to lead away, to carry away.*

abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum, [ab-eo]. irr. v. n., *to go away, to depart.*

abiēs, -etis, F., *fir-tree.*

ablātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **auferō.**

abstulī, see **auferō.**

absum, abesse, afuī, [ab-sum] irr. v. n., *to be away, to be absent, to be distant.*

abundāns, -āntis, adj., (pres. part. of abundo), *abundant, abounding in.*

āc; see **atque.**

accelerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [ad-celero], 1. v. a. and n., *to hasten.*

accidō, accidere, accidī, no p. p., [ad-cado], 3. v. n., *to fall upon, to happen.*

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum, [ad-capio], 3. v. a., *to receive, to accept, to welcome.*

accurrō, accurrere, accurrī, no p.p., [ad-curro], 3. v. n., *to run up to.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad-causo], 1 v. a., *to accuse, to blame.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, keen, eager.*

acerbus, -a, -um, [acer], adj., *bitter, cruel.*

ācerrimē; superl. of ācriter.

aciēs, -ēī, F., *line of battle.*

ācriter [acri + ter], adv., *sharply, keenly, eagerly.*

acus, -ūs, F., *needle.*

ad, prep. with acc., (motion) *to, toward, against;* (purpose) *for.*

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum, [ad-duco], 3 v. a.- *to lead to, to bring, to induce.*

adeō, adīre, adiī, (-īvī), aditum, [ad-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *to go to, to approach.*

adeō, adv., *so, so much so.*

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p., [ad-equito], 1. v. a. and n., *to ride up (to).*

adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., *to bring to, to report.*

adfīgō, adfīgere, affīxī, affīxum, [ad-figo], 3. v. a., *to fasten to.*

adflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad-flicto], 1. v. a., *to dash against, to overwhelm.*

adfuī; see **adsum.**

adhūc, adv., *hitherto, up to this time.*

adjungō, adjungere, adjūnxī, adjūnctum, [ad-jungo], 3. v. a., *to join to, to unite with.*

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, [ad-miror], 1. v. dep., *to wonder at, to admire.*

adorior, adorīrī, adortus, [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., *to attack.*

adscīscō, adscīscere, ascīvī, ascītum, [ad-scisco], 3. v. a., *to attach.*

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [adsue-facio], 3. v. a., *to accustom, to train.*

adsum, adesse, adfuī, (adfutūrus), [ad-sum], irr. v. n., *to be present.*

adulēscēns, -entis, M., *youth, young man.*

adventus, -ūs, M., *arrival, approach.*

adversum, prep. with acc., *towards.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against, towards.*

aedēs, aedis, F., *building;* plur. *house.*

aedificium, -ī, N., *a building.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum., [aedes - facio], 1. v. a., *to build.*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., *sick.*

Aegyptius, -a, -um, adj., *Egyptian.*

Aeolius, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to Aeolus* (god of the winds).

āēr, āëris, M., *the air.*

aes, aeris, N., *copper;* hence, *money.*

aestās, -ātis, F., *summer.*

aetās, -ātis, F., *age.*

Afer, Afra, Afrum, adj., *African.*

āfuī, āfuisse, āfutūrus; see **absum.**

ager, agrī, M., *field, land, country.*

agger, aggeris, M., *mound, rampart.*

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to rouse, to trouble, to disturb.*

agmen, agminis, N., *line of march* (of an army).

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3. v. a., *to drive, to treat, to discuss.*

agricola, -ae, M., *farmer.*

agricultūra, -ae, F., *agriculture.*

alacer, alacris, alacre, adj., *active, eager, spirited.*

alacritās, -ātis, F., *eagerness, readiness, promptness.*

albus, alba, album, adj., *white.*

alcēs, alcis, F., *the elk.*

Alcibiadēs, -is, *Alcibiades,* a Greek.

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, indef. pron., *some* (*one*), *any* (*one*).

aliter, adv., *otherwise.*

alius, alia, aliud, adj. pron., *another, one . . . . another.*

allātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adferō.**

alō, alere, aluī, altum, 3. v. a., *to nourish, to support.*

Alpēs, Alpium, F. plur., *the Alps* (mountains).

altitūdo, -inis, F., *height, depth.*

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep*

alter, altera, alterum, adj. pron., *the other* (of two), *the one . . . the other.*

alvus, -ī, F., *the belly.*

ambō, ambae, ambō, num. adj., *both.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, 1. v. n., *to walk, to take a walk.*

amīcitia, -ae, F., *friendship.*

amīcus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly.*

amīcus, -ī, M., *friend.*

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissum, 3. v. a., *to let pass, to lose.*

amnis, amnis, M., *river.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to love.*

amor, amōris, F., *love, affection.*

amplius, neut. comp. of **amplus** used as a noun, *more.*

an, conj. introducing the second member of a double question, *or, or rather.*

Ancus, -ī, M., *Ancus,* fourth king of Rome.

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, confined.*

anima, -ae, F., *breath, soul.*

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3. v. a., *to turn the mind to, to notice.*

animal, -ālis, N., *an animal.*

animus, -ī, M., *mind, spirit.*

annus, -ī, M., *a year.*

ānser, anseris, M., *a goose.*

ante, prep. with acc., *before* (of place or time).

anteā, adv. (of time), *before.*

anteeō, -īre, iī, —, *to go before, to surpass.*

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [ante-fero], irr. v. a., *to place before, to prefer.*

antelātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **anteferō.**

antetulī; see **anteferō.**

antīquus, -a, -um, adj., *old, ancient.*

anus, -ūs, F., an old woman.

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, [ab-pario], 4. v. a., *to uncover, to expose.*

Apollō, -inis, M., *Apollo,* a god of the Romans.

appāret, appārēre, appāruit, 2. v. impers., *it is (was) evident.*

appropīnquō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [ad-propinquo] 1. v. n., *to come near to, to approach.*

apud, prep. with acc., *at, among.*

aqua, aquae, F., *water.*

aquilifer, -erī, M., *a standard-bearer.*

Aquītānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania,* a part of Gaul.

arbiter, -trī, M., *an arbitrator, a judge.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. a. and n., *to think, to suppose.*

arbor, arboris, F., *tree.*

ardor, -ōris, M., *heat, enthusiasm.*

argentum, -ī, N., *silver, money.*

āridus, -a, -um, adj., *dry, arid.*

ariēs, arietis, M., *a ram, a battering-ram.*

Ariovistus, -ī, M., *Ariovistus,* a German leader.

arma, armōrum, N., plur., *arms* (for war).
armō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, 1. v. a., *to arm* (for war).
arō, arāre, arāvī, arātum, 1. v. a., *to plough.*
Arrūns, -ūntis, M., *Arruns*, an Etruscan name.
arrogantia, -ae, F., *insolence.*
ars, artis, F., *skill, art.*
artus, -ūs, M., *a joint.*
Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Arverni*, a Gallic tribe.
Arvernī, -ōrum, M., plur., *The Arverni.*
arx, arcis, F., *fortress, citadel.*
Asia, -ae, F., *Asia.*
asper, aspera, asperum, adj., *rough, harsh.*
Athēnae, -ārum, F., *Athens.*
Athēniēnsis, -is, M., *an Athenian.*
atque, conj., *and, and also.*
atrōx, atrōcis, adj., *savage, cruel, fierce.*
Attica, -ae, F., *Attica*, a part of Greece.
attulī; see **adferō.**
auctor, -ōris, M., *adviser, author, originator.*
auctōritās, -ātis, F., *influence, authority.*
audācia, -ae, F., *boldness, daring.*
audācter, adv., *boldly, fearlessly.*
audāx, audācis, adj., *bold, daring.*
audeō, audēre, ausus, 2. v. a. and n., semi-dep., *to dare.*
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, 4. v. a., *to hear, to hear of.*
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, irr. v. a., *to bear off, to carry away.*
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, 2. v. a., *to increase.*
Auster, -trī, M., *South-wind.*
aut, conj., *or, either . . . or.*
autem, conj., *but, however.*
auxilium, -ī, N., *assistance, aid.*
avis, avis, F., *a bird.*
avus, avī, M., *a grandfather.*

B

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign.*
Barbarī, -ōrum, M. plur., *Barbarians.*
Belgae, -ārum, M. plur., *Belgae*, a tribe in northern Gaul.
Belgium, -ī, N., *Belgium*, the country of the Belgae.
bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. n., *to make war.*
bellum, -ī, N., *war.*
bene, adv., *well.*
beneficium, -ī, N., *a kindness, benefit.*
benīgnus, -a, -um, adj., *kind, good.*
bīduum, -ī, N., *two days' time.*
biennium, -ī, N., *two years' time.*
bis, adv., *twice.*
Bīthȳnia, -ae, F., *Bithynia*, a district of Asia Minor.
bonitās, -ātis, F., *goodness.*
bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good;* neut. as noun, plur., *goods, property.*
bōs, bovis, C., *cow, ox;* plur., *cattle.*

bracchium, -ī, N., *arm* (of the body).
brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief.*
brevitās, -ātis, F., *shortness, brevity.*
breviter, adv., *briefly.*
Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain.*
Brūtus, -ī, M., *Brutus,* a Roman lieutenant.

C

C, for **centum,** *hundred.*
cacūmen, -inis, N., *top* (of trees, mountains, etc.).
cadāver, -eris, N., *corpse.*
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, 3. v. n., *to fall.*
caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind.*
caedēs, -is, F., *massacre, slaughter.*
caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, 3. v. a., *to strike, to slay.*
caelum, -ī, N., *sky, heavens.*
Caesar, -aris, M., *Caesar,* a Roman general.
calamitās, -ātis, F., *disaster, calamity.*
calcar, -āris, N., *spur.*
cālō, -ōnis, M., *a camp-follower* (a servant).
campester, -tris, -tre, adj., *of the plain, level.*
cantus, -ūs, M., *singing, song.*
caper, -prī, M., *goat.*
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, 3. v. a., *to take, to capture, to seize.*
captīvus, -a, -um, adj., *captive.*
captīvus, -ī, M., *a captive.*
captus, -a, -um, p. p. of **capiō**
caput, -itis, N., *head.*
carcer, -eris, M., *prison.*
carō, carnis, F., *flesh, meat.*
carrus, -ī, M., *wagon, chariot* (not war).
cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious.*
castrum, -ī, N., *fortress.*
castra, -ōrum, N., [plur. of castrum], *camp.*
cāsus, -ūs, M., *accident, misfortune.*
Carthāgō, -inis, F., *Carthage,* a town in Africa.
causa, -ae, F., *cause, reason,* abl. of **causa** with a genitive =*for the sake of.*
cautēs, -is, F., *rock* (sharp or jagged).
cecidī, see **cadō.**
cecīdī, see **caedō.**
cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, 3. v. n., *to give way, to yield.*
celeber, -bris, -bre, adj., *renowned, celebrated.*
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, quick.*
celeritās, -ātis, F., *swiftness, speed.*
celeriter, adv., *quickly, swiftly.*
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to conceal, to hide.*
centum, indecl. num. adj., *a hundred.*
centuriō, -ōnis, M., *centurion,* a Roman officer in command of a hundred men.
Cerēs, -eris, F., *Ceres,* goddess of the cereals.
certāmen, -inis, N., *struggle, contest.*
certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain.*

[**certiōrem facere**, (to make . . . more certain), *to inform*].
Chabrias, -ae, M., *Chabrias*, an Athenian general.
cibus, ī, M., *food*.
Cicerō, -ōnis, M., *Cicero*, (*Marcus Tullius*) the great orator.
cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctum, 3. v. a., *to surround*.
cinis, -eris, M., *ashes*.
circā, prep. with acc., *about*.
circiter, prep. with acc., *about, not far from*.
circum, prep. with acc., *about, around*.
circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [circum -eō] irr. v. n. (a.), *to go around*.
cis, adv. and prep. with acc., *this side of*.
citō, adv., *quickly*.
citrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *this side of*.
cīvis, -is, C., *citizen*.
cīvitās, -ātis, F., *state, citizenship*.
clādēs, -is, F., *destruction, defeat*.
clam, adv., *secretly*.
clāmor, -ōris, M., *shout, outcry*.
clārus, -a, -um, adj., *bright, clear, famous*.
classis, -is, F., *a fleet*.
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, 3. v. a., *to close, to shut*.
clēmēns, -entis, adj., *gentle, merciful*.
clēmentia, -ae, F., *kindness, gentleness*.
cliēns, -entis, C., *a dependent, vassal*.
cloāca, -ae, F., *artificial canal, sewer, drain*.
coeō, coīre, coīvī, no p. p., [con-eo], irr. v. n., *to come together, to unite*.
coepī, coepīsse, coeptum, def. v. a., *began, undertook*.
coerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum, [con-arceo], 2. v. a., *to confine, to keep in check*.
cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con-agito], 1. v. a., *to consider, to think over, to plan*.
cōgnitus; see **cōgnōscō**.
cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, [con-(g)nosco], 3. v. a., *to learn, to find out*.
cogō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, [con-ago], 3. v. a., *to bring together, to collect, to compel*.
cohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2.v. a., *to contain, to check*.
cohors, -hortis, F., *a cohort*, a tenth part of a legion.
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., *to encourage, to rally*.
collēga, -ae, M., *associate, colleague*.
collātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conferō**.
colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lectum [con-lego], 3. v. a., *to collect*.
collis, -is, M., *hill*.
colōnia, -ae, F., *colony*.
color, -ōris, M., *color*.
colus, -ī (-ūs), F., *distaff*.
combūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, ūstum, [con-buro], 3. v. a., *to burn up, to consume*.
comes, -itis, C., *companion*.

cōminus, adv., *hand to hand.*

commeātus, -ūs, M., *supplies, provisions.*

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, missum, [con-mitto], 3. v. a., *to join, to engage in.*

commōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **commoveō.**

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum., [con-moveo], 2. v. a., *to move, to agitate, to stir up.*

commūnis, -e, adj., *common, in common.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con-paro], 1 v. a., *to prepare, to get together.*

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, [con-pario], 4. v. a., *to find out, to discover, to ascertain.*

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum [con-pleo], 2. v. a., *to fill up.*

compos, -otis, adj., *controlling.*

cōnātum, -ī, N., *attempt.*

cōnātus, -ūs, M., *attempt, effort.*

conditiō, -ōnis, F., *condition, terms.*

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [con-fero], irr. v. a., *to bring together, to gather.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [con-facio], 3. v. a., *to accomplish, to finish, to write up.*

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus, [con-fido], 3. v. n., semi-dep., *to trust, to trust fully.*

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con-firmo], 1. v. a., *to strengthen, to encourage, to declare.*

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, [con-fateor], 2. v. dep., *to confess, to acknowledge.*

cōniciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectum, [con-jacio], 3. v. a., *to throw together, to hurl, to cast.*

conjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, [con-jungo], 3. v. a., *to join together, to fasten together, to unite.*

conjūnx, -jugis, C., *a spouse.*—Esp., F., *a wife.*

conjūrātiō, -ōnis, F., *conspiracy, confederacy.*

conjūrātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of conjuro], -Masc. as noun, *a conspirator.*

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con-loco,] 1. v. a., *to place, to station, to pitch* (camp).

conloquium, -ī, N., *conference, interview.*

Conōn, -ōnis, *Conon,* a Greek.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, [con + onus], 1. v. dep., *to attempt, to try.*

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, [con-scribo], 3. v. a., *to write down, to enroll, to enlist.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, M., *agreement, consent.*

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum [con-sentio], 4. v. n., *to agree, to conspire.*

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [con-sequor], 3. v. dep., *to follow, to secure, to overtake.*

cōnsessus, -ūs, M., *assembly, gathering.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., *Considius,* a Roman soldier.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, [con-sedeo] 3. v. n., *to sit down, to halt, to encamp.*

cōnsilium, -ī, N., *deliberation, plan.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., *sight.*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, [con-specio], 3. v. a., *to catch sight of, to espy.*

conspīrātiō, -ōnis, F., *conspiracy, agreement.*

cōnstat, cōnstāre, cōnstitit, 1. v. impers., *it is evident.*

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, [con-statuo], 3. v. a. and n., *to set up, to establish, to determine.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F., *habit, custom.*

cōnsul, -ulis, M., *consul* (a title of the chief magistrate of Rome).

cōnsulātus, -ūs, M., *consulship.*

cōnsultō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, [con-sulto], 1. v. n., *to consult.*

contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, temptum, [con-temno], 3. v. a., *to despise.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, [con-tendo], 3. v. n., *to strive, to attempt, to hasten, to fight.*

contentiō, -ōnis, F., *struggle, dispute.*

contentus, -a, -um, adj., *content, satisfied.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [con-tineo], 2. v. a., *to hold together, to restrain.*

contingit, contingere, contigit, [con-tango], 3. v. a. and n. impers. *it happens.*

contrā, prep. with acc., *against, contrary to.*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [con-traho], 3. v. a., *to drag together, to narrow down.*

contrōversia, -ae, F., *quarrel, controversy.*

contulī, see **conferō.**

contumēlia, -ae, F., *insult, outrage.*

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., *to come together, to assemble, to agree.*

conventus, -ūs, M., *assembly, meeting.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con-voco], 1. v. a., *to call together, to summon.*

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus, [con-orior], 3. v. dep., *to arise.*

cōpia, -ae, F., *supply, abundance.* Plur. *forces* (soldiers).

cor, cordis, N., *heart.*

cōram, adv. and prep. with abl., *in the presence of.*

Cornēlia, -ae, F., *Cornelia.*

cornū, -ūs, N., *horn, wing* (of an army).

corpus, -oris, N., *body.*

corrigō, -ere, -rexī, -rectum, [cum-rego], 3. v. a., *to correct, to improve.*

cortex, -icis, M., *bark* (of a tree)

cotīdiē, adv., *daily.*

crās, adv., *to-morrow.*

Crassus, ī, M., *Crassus*, consul with Pompey, B.C. 55.
crātēs, -is, F., *hurdle.*
creātor, -oris, M., *creator.*
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *thick, close.*
crēbrō, adv., *frequently.*
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, 3. v. a. and n., *to trust, to believe, to suppose.*
crēdulitās, -ātis, F., *belief, trust.*
creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum, 1. v. a., *to create.*
crepō, crepāre, crepuī, crepitum, 1. v. n., *to sound, to crack, to crash.*
crīmen, -inis, N., *fault, crime.*
crūdēlis, -e, adj., *cruel.*
crūdēlitās, -ātis, F., *cruelty.*
crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*
crūreque, (crus, *leg;* que, *and*).
crūs, crūris, N., *leg.*
cucumis, -eris, M., *a cucumber.*
cuī, dat. of **quī** or **quis.**
cūjus, gen. of **quī** or **quis.**
culmen, -inis, N., *top, summit.*
culpa, -ae, F., *blame.*
culter, -trī, M., *knife.*
cum, prep. with abl., *with.*
cum, conj., *when, while, since, because, although.*
cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *to hesitate, to delay.*
cupiditās, -ātis, F., *desire, longing, eagerness.*
cupidus, -a, -um, adj., *desirous, longing* (for), *eager.*
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, 3 (and 4), v. a. and n., *to desire, to be eager* (for).
cūr, adv., *why* (rel. and interr.)
cūra, -ae, F., *care, attention.*
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a. and n., *to take care, to provide for.*
cursus, -ūs, M., *a running, a course.*
custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4. v. a., *to guard.*
custōs, -ōdis, C., *guard.*
Cyprus, -ī, F., *Cyprus,* an island.

D

D, *500.*
Dārēus, -ī, M., *Darius,* king of Persia.
dē, prep. with abl., *from, concerning, about* (time).
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, 2. v. a., *to owe, ought, must.*
dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessī, dēcessum, [de-cedo], 3. v. n., *to withdraw, to retire.*
decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten.*
dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētum, [de-cerno], 3. v. a. and n., *to decide, to determine.*
dēcertō, -āre, āvī, ātum, [de-certo], 1. v. a. and n., *to contend, to fight.*
decet, decēre, decuit, 2. v., impers., *it is fitting.*
decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth.*
decus, decoris, N., *honor, glory.*
dēdecet, dēdecēre, dēdecuit, 2. v., impers. ,*it is becoming, i. e.*(proper).
dēditiō, -ōnis, F., *surrender.*
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum [de-do], 3. v. a., *to give over, to surrender.*

dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductum [de-duco], 3. v. a., *to lead away, to withdraw, to induce.*

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum [de-fendo], 3. v. a. *to ward off, to defend, to protect.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, M., *defender.*

dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātum [de-fero], irr. v. a., *to carry away, to report.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired.*

dēfaciō, -ficere, -fecī -fectum, [de -facio], 3. v. a. and n., *to fail, to revolt, to abandon.*

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, ītum [definio], 4. v. a., *to limit, to fix.*

dēfuī; see **dēsum.**

dēiciō, dēicere, dējēcī, dējectum [de-jacio], 3. v. a., *to cast down, to drive out, to overturn.*

deinde, adv., *then, next.*

dēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dēferō.**

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, 2. v. a., *to wipe out, to destroy.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [delibero], 1. v. a. and n., *to discuss, to deliberate.*

dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum [de-lego], 3. v. a., *to choose out, to select.*

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [deligo], 1. v. a., *to tie down, to moor.*

dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī, dēmissum [de-mitto], 3. v. a., *to let down, to be discouraged.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally.*

dēns, dentis, M., *tooth.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *thick, crowded, dense.*

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposu, -dēpositum [de-pono], 3. v. a., *to lay aside, to abandon.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, [de-precor], 1. v. dep., *to beg, to beseech.*

dēsertor, -ōris, M., *deserter.*

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to desire, to long for.*

dēsiliō, dēsilīre, dēsiluī, dēsultum [de-salio], 4. v. n., *to leap down, to jump overboard, to dismount.*

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum [de-sisto], 3. v. n., *to cease, to desist from.*

dēspiciō, despicere, despēxī, despectum [de-specio], 3. v. a., and n., *to look down upon, to despise.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to fasten, to appoint, to choose.*

dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī [defuturus], [de-sum], irr. v. n., (to be away), *to be lacking.*

dētineō, dētinēre, dētinuī, dētentum, [de-teneo], 2. v. a., *to detain, to delay.*

dētulī, see **dēferō.**

dēturbātus, -a, -um; [p. p. of **deturbo**], adj., *disturbed.*

deus, -ī, M., *a god.*

dexter, dextera, dexterum, adj., *right* (hand).

dīc, imperative of **dicō.**

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, 3. v. a. and n. *to say, to speak, to tell.*

dictiō, dictiōnis, F., *a speaking, a pleading.*

diēs, diēī, M., *day.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, [dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., *to separate, to postpone, to differ.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *not easy, difficult.*

difficultās, -ātis, F., *difficulty.*

difficulter, adv., *with difficulty.*

digitus, -ī, M., *finger.*

dīgnitās, -ātis, F., *worthiness, dignity.*

dīgnus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy.*

dīlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **differō.**

dīligēns, -entis, adj., *diligent, careful.*

dīligenter, adv., *diligently, carefully.*

dīligentia, -ae, F., *diligence, care.*

dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum, [dis-mitto], 3. v. a., *to let pass, to abandon, to lose.*

dīripiō, dīripere, dīripuī, dīreptum, [dis-rapio], 3. v. a., *to plunder, to pillage.*

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, [dis-cedo], 3. v. n., *to depart.*

discrīmen, -inis, N., *crisis, danger.*

dissimilis, -e, adj., *unlike, dissimilar.*

dissuādeō, dissuādēre, dissuasī, dissuāsum, [dis-suadeo], 2. v. a., *to dissuade.*

distulī, see **differō.**

diū, adv., *for some time.*

dīves, dīvitis, adj., *rich.*

Dīvitiacus, -ī, M., *Divitiacus,* a Gallic leader.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, 1. v. a., *to give, to allow, to grant.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2. v. a., *to teach, to inform.*

dolor, dolōris, M., *pain, distress, grief.*

dolus, -ī, M., *deceit, treachery.*

domicilium, -ī, N., *house, dwelling place.*

dominor, dominārī, dominātus, 1. v. dep., *to rule, to be master.*

dominus, -ī, M., *master, owner.*

domus, ūs, F., *house, home.*
domī, *at home.*
domum *homeward.*
domō, *from home.*

dōnec, adv., *until, so long as, while.*

dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātum, 1. v. a., *to present, to give.*

dōnum, -ī, N., *gift.*

dōs, dōtis, F., *marriage-gift, dowry.*

dubitātiō, -ōnis, F., *doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. n., *to doubt, to hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful:* est dubium, *it is doubtful.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, 3. v. a., *to lead, to bring, to reckon, to consider.*

duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two.*
duodecim, indecl. num. adj., *twelve.*
duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to double, to duplicate.*
dūrus, -a, um, adj., *hard, severe, difficult.*
dux, ducis, C., *leader, commander.*

E

ē, see **ex.**
eam; see **is.**
ebur, -oris, N., *ivory.*
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditum, [ex-do], 3. v. a., *to put forth.*
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, [ex-duco], 3. v. a., *to lead out, to lead forth.*
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, [ex-fero], irr. v. a., *to carry out, to bring out, to elate.*
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum, [ex-facio], 3. v. a., *to accomplish, to produce.*
effugiō, effugere, effūgī, effugitum, [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., *to escape, to flee.*
egestās, -ātis, F., *poverty, need.*
ego, meī, pers. pron., *I.*
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus, [ex-gradior], 3. v. dep, *to march out, to disembark.*
ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *remarkable, excellent.*
ēiciō, ēicere, ējecī, ējectum, [ex-jacio], 3. v. a., *to cast out, to drive out.*
ējus, see **is.**
ēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **efferō.**
elephantus, -ī, M., *elephant.*
enim, adv., *really, for* (reason).
ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex-nuntio], 1. v. a., *to report, to announce.*
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, irr. v. n., *to go, to march.*
eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
eō, see **is.**
eōrum, eārum, eōrum; see **is.**
epistula, -ae, F., *letter, message.*
eques, equitis, M., *horseman, rider.*
equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *cavalry* (belonging to).
equitātus, -ūs, M., *cavalry.*
equus, -ī, M., *horse.*
ergā, prep. with acc., *towards.*
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum, [ex-rapio], 3. v. a., *to snatch away, to deprive, to rescue.*
errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum, 1. v. n., *to wander, to err, to be mistaken.*
ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., *a sally, a sortie.*
esseda, essedae, F., *warchariot.*
et, conj., *and;* **et . . . . et,** *both . . . . and.*
etiam, conj., *also, even.*
Eurōpa, *ae,* F., *Europe.*
ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī, ēventum, [ex-venio], 4. v. n., *to come out, to happen.*
ēventus, ēventūs, M., *result, success.*
ex (ē), prep. with abl., *out of.*—also; *in, on, from.*
ex usū, *to the advantage of.*
excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum, [ex-cedo], 3. v. n., *to go out, to withdraw.*

excidium, ī, N., *overthrow, destruction.*

excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptum, [ex-capio], 3. v. a., *to take up, to receive.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [excito], 1. v. a., *to call out, to rouse, to kindle.*

exclūdō, exclūdere, exclūsī, exclūsum, [ex-claudo], 3. v. a., *to shut out, to prevent.*

exeō, exīre, exīvī (exiī), exitum, [ex-eo], irr. v. n., *to go forth, to march out.*

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum, [ex-arceo], 2. v. a., *to drive off, to train, to exercise.*

exercitus, -ūs, M., *army.*

exhauriō, exhaurīre, exhausī, exhaustum, [ex-haurio], 4. v. a., *to drain off, to exhaust.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, scanty.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex-aestimo], 1. v. a. and n., *to suppose, to think, to judge.*

exitus, -ūs, M., *exit, passage, outcome, result.*

exortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exorior.**

expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4. v. a. and n., *to disentangle, to set free.*

expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum, [ex-pello], 3. v. a., *to drive out, to dispel.*

experior, experīrī, expertus, [ex-perior], 4. v. dep., *to experience, to try.*

explōrātor, -ōris, M., *scout.*

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex-pugno], 1. v. a., *to take* [by storm], *to capture.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex-specto], 1. v. a. and n., *to look out for, to wait for, to expect.*

exsul, exsulis, C., *exile.*

extrā, prep. with acc., *outside of.*

extulī, see **efferō.**

F

faber, -brī, M., *mechanic, carpenter.*

facile, adv., *easily.*

facilis, -e, adj., *easy.*

facinus, -oris, N., *deed, crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, irr. v. a. and n., *to make, to do, to act.*

factiō, -ōnis, F., *a party, a faction.*

factum, ī, N., *a deed, a fact.*

facultās, -ātis, F., *case, chance, opportunity.*

falsus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **fallō**]; adj., *false.*

falx, falcis, F., *sickle, hook.*

fāma, -ae, F., *speech, reputation, rumor.*

famēs, famis, F., *hunger.*

familia, -ae, F., *a household.*

fātum, fatī, N., *fate.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, 2. v. n., *to favor, to be favorable to.*

fax, facis, F., *torch, fire-brand.*

felicissimē, adv., superl. degree, *very successfully.*

fēlīcitās, -ātis, F., *good-fortune, success.*

fēlīciter, adv., *fortunately, successfully.*
fēlīx, fēlīcis, adj., *fruitful, fortunate, successful.*
fēmina, -ae, F., *woman, female.*
femur, -oris, N., *thigh.*
ferē, adv., *almost.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, irr. a. and n., *to bear, to carry, to endure.*
ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, ferocious.*
fidēlis, -e, adj., *faithful.*
fidēs, fidēī, F., *promise, pledge.*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus, 3. v. n., *to trust.*
fīlia, -ae, F., *daughter.*
fīlius, -ī, M., *son.*
fīnes, finis, M., *limit, end.*—Plur., *boundaries, country.*
fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī, [-iī], fīnītum, 4. v. a., *to set bounds to, to limit.*
fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, adjacent.*—Plur., as noun, *neighbors.*
fīō, fierī, factus, 3. v. n., *to become, to be made.*
fīrmiter, adv., *firmly, steadily.*
fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a. *to strengthen, to fortify.*
fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, steady.*
flāmen, -inis, N., *gale, breeze.*
flamma, -ae, F., *flame, fire.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, 2. v. a. and n., *to weep.*
flōs, flōris, M., *flower.*
flūmen, -inis, N., *river.*
fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxum, 3. v. n., *to flow.*
foedus, foederis, N., *treaty, league.*
fōns, fontis, N., *fountain, spring.*
formōsus, -a. -um, adj., *beautiful, lovely.*
fors, fortis, F., *chance.*
fortis,-e. adj., *brave, courageous.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely.*
fortitūdō, -inis, F., *bravery.*
fortūna, -ae, F., *fortune, success.*
fortūnātus, -a, -um, adj., *fortunate, prosperous.*
forum, -ī, N., *market-place, forum.*
fossa, -ae, F., *ditch, trench.*
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, 3. v. a., *to break, to wreck.*
frāter, fratris, M., *brother.*
fraus, fraudis, F., *deceit, treachery, fraud.*
frīgidus, -a, -um, adj., *cold.*
frīgus, -oris, N., *cold.*
frondōsus, -a, -um, adj., *leafy.*
frōns, frontis, F., *brow, face.*
frūmentum, -ī, N., *grain.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus, 3. v. dep., *to enjoy.*
frūx, frūgis, F., *fruit.*—Plur., *crops.*
fuga, -ae, F., *flight.*
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, 3. v. a. and n., *to flee, to run away.*
fugitīvus, -a, -um, adj., *fugitive.*—As noun, *a fugitive.*
fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum, 1. v. a., *to put to flight, to rout.*

fūmō, fūmāre, fūmāvī, fūmātum, 1. v. n., *to smoke.*
fungor, fungī, fūnctus, 3. v. dep., *to perform, to discharge.*
fūnis, funis, M., *rope.*
fūnus, funeris, N., *death, funeral.*
fūr, fūris, C., *thief.*
furor, furōris, M., *madness, fury.*
futūrus, see **sum.**

G

Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul,* including all the country now occupied by Belgium, France, and northern Italy.
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, of the Gauls.*
Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, of Gaul.*—As noun, *a Gaul.*
Garumna, -ae M.,, *Garumna,* a river of S. W. Gaul, now the *Garonne.*
Garumnī, -ōrum, M., plur., *the Garumni,* a Gallic tribe.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, 2. v. n., semi-dep., *to rejoice, to be delighted.*
gener, generī, M., *son-in-law.*
gēns, gentis, F., *family, tribe.*
genū, genūs, N., *knee.*
genus, generis, N., *race, tribe.*
Germānia, -ae, F., *Germany.*
Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German.*—As noun, *a German.*
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3. v. a., *to carry on, to wage* (war).
gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of **gerō.**
gladiātor, -ōris, M., *gladiator.*
gladius, -ī, M., *sword.*
glāns, glandis, F., *acorn, nut.*
glōria, -ae, F., *fame, glory.*
gracilis, -e, adj., *slender, graceful.*
Graecia, -ae, F., *Greece.*
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek.*—As noun, *a Greek.*
grandis, -e, adj., *large, of great size.*
grātia, grātiae, F., *gratitude, thanks.*
grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *to congratulate.*
grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing.*
gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, serious.*
gravitās, -ātis, F., *weight, importance, power.*
graviter, adv., *heavily, severely.*
grex, gregis, M., *flock, herd.*

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2. v. a. and n., *to have, to hold, to possess.*
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to inhabit.*
Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Haeduans.*—As noun, *the Haeduans,* a Gallic tribe.
Hamilcar, -aris, M., *Hamilcar,* a Carthaginian.
Hannibal, -alis, M., *Hannibal,* a Carthaginian general.
Hanno, -ōnis, M., *Hanno,* a general of the Carthaginians.
harpagō, -ōnis, M., *hook, grappling-iron.*
Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian.*
Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Helvetians.*—As noun, *the Helvetians.*

herī, adv., *yesterday*.
Herma, -ae, M., *Hermes*, a carved head on a pedestal.
hēros, -ōis, M., *a hero*.
hībernus, -a, -um, adj., *of winter, winter*.—Neut. plur., *winter-quarters*.
hīc, adv., *here*.
hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this, these, (he, she, it, they)*.
hiems, hiemis, F., *Winter*.
Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain*.
Homērus, -ī, M., *Homer*, a Greek poet.
homō, hominis, C., *human being, man*.
honestus, -a, -um, adj., *respected, honorable*.
honor, honōris, M., *respect, honor*.
honōrificus, -a, -um, adj., *honorable*.
hōra, -ae, F., *hour*.
Horātius, -ī, M., *Horatius, Horace*.
horribilis, -e, adj., *frightful, dreadful*.
hortor, hortārī, hortātus, 1. v. dep., *to encourage, to urge on*.
hospes, hospitis, M., *host, guest*.
hostis, hostis, C., (stranger), *enemy*.
hūmānitās, -ātis, F., *humanity, civilization*.
hūmāniter, adv., *humanely*.
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *civilized, refined*.
humilis, -e, adj., *low, shallow, humble*.
humilitās, -atis, F., *lowness, shallowness, humility*.
humus, -ī, F., *ground, earth*.

I

I, for **unus**, etc., *one*.
ibi, adv., *there*.
īco, īcere, īci, īctum, 3. v. a., *to strike, to hit*.
īdem, eadem, idem, dem. adj. pron., *the same*.
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable*.
Idūs, -uum, F., plur., *the Ides*, [15th. day of March, May, July, October; 13th. day of the other months].
īgnis, -is, M., *fire*.
īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to fail to notice, not to know*.
īgnōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown, strange*.
illātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **inferō**.
ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., *that* (yonder).
imber, imbris, M., *rain-storm*.
immānis, -e, adj., *huge, enormous*.
impedīmentum, -ī, N., *hindrance, baggage*.
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4. v. a., *to entangle, to hinder*.
imperātor, -ōris, M., *commander, general*.
imperium, -ī, N., *power, rule, authority*.
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a. *to demand*.
impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to accomplish, to obtain, to succeed in*.

impetus, -ūs, M., *a rush, an attack.*

improbus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked.*

impūne, adv., *with impunity.*

in, prep. with acc. *to, into, upon, for, against.* With abl. *in, on.*

incertus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain.*

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3. v. a. and n., *to begin, to undertake.*

incola, -ae, C., *inhabitant.*

incolō, -colere, -coluī, no p. p. [in-colo], 3. v. a. and n., *to inhabit, to dwell.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmed, safe.*

indicium, -ī, N., *information.*

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, [in-dico], 3. v. a., *to order, to appoint.*

indulgentia, -ae, F., *indulgence, favor.*

indūtiae, -ārum, F., plur., *truce.*

ineō, -īre, -īvī (iī), -itum, [in-eo], irr. v. a., *to go into, to enter upon.*

īnfāns, -antis, C., *infant, child.*

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [in-fero], irr. v. a., *to bring in, to put upon,* **bellum inf.,** *to wage war upon.*

īnfidēlis, -e, adj., *unfaithful.*

īnfīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *weak, feeble.*

īnfrā, adv., *below, farther down.* —Also, prep. with acc.

īnfuī, see **īnsum.**

ingēns, -entis, adj., *huge, enormous.*

ingredior, gredī, gressus, [in-gradior], 3. v. dep., *to march in, to enter.*

inimīcus, -ī, M., *enemy* (personal).

inīquus, -a, -um, adj., *uneven, unjust, unfair.*

initium, -ī, N., *a beginning.*

injūria, -ae, F., *injustice, wrong.*

innocēns, -entis, adj., *harmless, innocent.*

innocentia, -ae, F., *innocence.*

inopia, -ae, F., *scarcity, want.*

īnscīēns, -entis, adj., *not knowing, unaware.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, F., Plur., *ambush, plot.*

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep. *to lie in wait* (for), *to plot against.*

īnsīgnis, -e, adj., *memorable, marked.*

instruō, -struere, -struxī, -strūctum, 3. v. a., *to build, to draw up, to array.*

īnsula, -ae, F., *island.*

īnsum, īnesse, īnfuī, [in-sum], irr. v. n., *to be in, to be there.*

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lectum, [inter-lego], 3. v. a., *to learn, to find out.*

inter, prep. with acc. *between, among.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [inter-claudo], 3. v. a., *to cut off, to intercept.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile.*

intereō, -īre, -īvī (iī), itum, [inter-eo] irr. v. n., *to perish.*
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [inter-facio], 3. v. a., *to put to death, to kill.*
interfuī, see **intersum.**
interger, -gra, -grum, adj., *untouched, unbroken, whole.*
interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [inter-pono], 3. v. a., *to put between, to interpose.*
interpres, -etis, C., *mediator, interpreter.*
interest, impers. v., *it is of importance.*
intersum, -esse, -fuī, (-futūrus), [inter-sum], irr. v. n., *to be between, to be among.*
intrā, adv., *within, inside.*— Also, prep. with acc.
introeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, [intro-eo], irr. v. a. and n. *to enter, to come in.*
intulī, see **īnferō.**
invalidus, -a, -um, adj., *infirm, weak, feeble.*
inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [in-venio] 4. v. a., *to find, to learn.*
invicem, adv., *one after another.*
invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to invite.*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intens. pron., *self* (him, her, it, them).
īra, -ae, F., *anger, wrath.*
is, ea, id, dem. pron., *this, that, he, she, it, they.*
isdem, see **īdem.**
iste, ista, istud, dem. pron., *that,* near you.
Italia, -ae, F., *Italy.*
itaque, adv., *and so, therefore.*
iter, itineris, N., *road, way, march, journey.*
Ithacus, -a,-um, adj., *an Ithacan*

J

jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactum, 3. v. a., *to throw, to hurl, to cast.*
jam, adv., *now, already.*
Jovis, see **Jūppiter**
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jūssum, 2. v. a., *to order, to command.*
jūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant, agreeable.*
jūdex, -icis, M., *judge.*
Jūppiter, Jovis, M., *Jupiter,* the supreme Roman deity.
jūs, jūris, N., *justice, right.*
jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, N., *an oath.*
jūste, adv., *justly, rightly.*
jūstus, -a, -um, adj., *just, lawful, right.*
juvenis, -e, adj., *young.*
juventūs, -ūtis, F., *youth.*
juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, 1. v. a., *to aid, to help.*
jūxtā, adv., *next, near by.*

K

Kalendae, -ārum, F. plur., *the Calends,* (the first day of the Roman month).

L

L, 50.
Labiēnus, -ī, M., *Labienus,* lieutenant of Caesar.
labor, labōris, M., *labor, exertion.*

lābor, lābī, lāpsus, 3. v. dep., *to slip, to fall.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī,-ātum, 1. v. n., *to work, to toil, to labor.*

lāc, lactis, N., *milk.*

lacrima, -ae, F., *a tear.*

lacus, lacūs, M., *lake.*

laetitia, -ae, F., *joy, gladness.*

laetus,-a, -um, adj., *joyful, glad.*

lapis, lapidis, M., *stone* (small).

largiter, adv., *lavishly, generously.*

largus, -a, -um, adj., *abundant, plentiful.*

lātē, adv., *widely.*

lātitūdō, -dinis, F., *width, breadth.*

latrō, latrōnis, M., *robber.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide.*

latus, lateris, N., *side.*

lātus, -a, -um, see **ferō.**

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to praise.*

laus, laudis, F., *praise.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, F., *ambassy.*

lēgātus, -ī, M., *ambassador.*

legiō, legiōnis, F., *legion* (3000 to 6000 men).

lēnis, lene, adj., *gentle, smooth.*

lēnitās, -ātis, F., *gentleness, smoothness.*

lēniter, adv., *gently, smoothly.*

Lepidus, -ī, M., *Lepidus,* a Roman.

Leōnidas, -ae, M., *Leonidas,* a king of Sparta.

lepus, leporis, M., *hare.*

levis, leve, adj., *light* (not heavy).

levitās, -ātis, F., *lightness, fickleness.*

leviter, adv., *lightly, easily.*

levō, levāre, levāvī, levātum, 1. v. a., *to lighten, to lift up.*

lēx, lēgis, F., *law.*

libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*

liber, librī, M., *book.*

līber, lībera, līberum, adj., *free.*

līberālitās, -ātis, F., *generosity, liberality.*

līberē, adv., *freely.*

līberī, -ōrum, M., plur., *children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to free, to set free, to relieve.*

lībertās, -ātis, F., *liberty, freedom.*

libet, libēre, libuit (libitum est) 2. v. n., impers., *it is agreeable.*

liceor, licērī, licitus, 2. v. dep., *to bid.*

licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, 3. v. n. impers., *it is permitted.*

ligo, -ōnis, M., *hoe.*

lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language.*

linter, lintris, F., *skiff.*

littera, -ae, F., *letter* (of the alphabet).—Plur., *epistle.*

lītus, litoris, N., *shore, beach.*

locuplētō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to make rich, to enrich.*

locus, locī, M., (plur., locī and loca), *place, spot, position.*

locūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **loquor.**

longē, adv., *far, distant.*

longitūdō, -dinis, F., *length.*

longus, -a, -um, adj., *long.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus, 3. v. dep., *to speak, to talk, to converse.*

lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī, lūctum, 2. v. n. and a., *to mourn.*

lūna, -ae, F., *moon.*

lūx, lūcis, F., *light;* **prīmā luce,** *at daybreak.*

M

M., 1000.

magis, adv., *more, rather.*

magister, -trī, M., *master, teacher.*

magistrātus, -ūs, M., *magistracy.*

māgnitūdō, -dinis, F., *greatness, great size.*

māgnopere, adv., *greatly.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large.*

māior, -us, (compar. of magnus), *greater, larger.*

male, adv., *badly, ill.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, no p. p., irr.v. a. and n., *to wish rather, to prefer.*

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, ill.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, 2.v.n., *to stay, to remain.*

manus, manūs, F., *hand.*— Also, *a band* (of men).

Marcius, -ī, *Marcius,* fourth king of Rome.

mare, maris, N., *sea.*

Mārs, Mārtis, M., *Mars,* god of war.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., *of Mars, martial.*

māter, matris, F., *mother, matron.*

māteria, -ae, F., *wood, timber.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, N., *marriage, matrimony.*

mātrōna, -ae, F., *matron.*

mātūrē, adv., *early, speedily.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a. and n., *to hasten.*

māximē, adv., *in the greatest degree, especially.*

māximus; superl. of **magnus.**

mēcum (me + cum), *with me.*

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle.*

mel, mellis, N., *honey.*

melior, -us, (compar. of bonus), *better.*

meminī, memisse, def. v. a., *to remember, to be mindful of.*

memoria, -ae, F., *memory.*

mēns, mentis, F., *the intellect, mind.*

mēnsis, mēnsis, M., *month.*

mercātor, -ōris, M., *trader, merchant.*

mereor, merērī, meritus, 2. v. dep., *to deserve, to gain.*

merīdiēs, -ēī, M., *midday, noon.*

meritum, -ī, N., *desert, merit.*

metuō, -ere, -uī, ūtum, 3. v. a. and n., *to fear, to be afraid of.*

metus, metūs, M., *fear.*

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron., *my, mine.*

mihi, dat. of **ego.**

mīles, militis, M., *soldier.*

mīlitāris, -e, adj., *military.*

mīlle, indecl. num. adj., *a thousand.*

mīlia, -ium, (plur. of mille), noun, N., plur., *thousands.*

Minerva, -ae, F., *Minerva,* goddess of wisdom.

minimē, adv., *in the smallest degree, least.*
minimus, -a, -um, adj., *smallest, least.*
minister, -tri, M., *servant.*
minor, minus, adj., (compar. of **parvus**), *smaller, less.*
Mīnos, -ōis, M., *Minos,* a king.
minuō, minuere, minuī, minutum, 3. v. a. *to lessen, to weaken.*
mīrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **mīror.**
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus, 1. v. dep., *to wonder at.*
miser, misera, miserum, adj., *wretched, miserable.*
miseret, miserēre, miseruit, 2. v. impers., *it distresses one, one feels pity* (for).
missus, -a, -um, p. p. of **mittō.**
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3. v. a., *to let go, to send, to dispatch.*
modestia, -ae, F., *moderation, self-control, modesty.*
modo, adv., *only, merely.*
modus, modī, M., *measure, manner, method, way.*
moenia, monium, N. plur., *fortifications.*
mōlēs, molis, F., *mass, dike.*
molliō, mollīre, mollīvī, mollītum, 4. v. a., *to soften.*
mollis, molle, adj., *soft, tender, feeble.*
mollitiēs, -ēī, F., *softness, weakness.*
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2. v. a., *to remind, to warn, to advise.*
mōns, montis, M., *mountain.*
mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to show, to point out.*
mora, morae, F., *delay.*
morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **moror.**
morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus (moritūrus), 3. v. dep., *to die.*
moror, morārī, morātus, 1. v. dep., *to hinder, to delay, to wait.*
mors, mortis, F., *death.*
mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of **morior.**
mōs, mōris, M., *custom.*
mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **moveō.**
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2. v. a., *to move, to stir.*
mulier, mulieris, F., *woman.*
multitūdō, -dinis, F., *great numbers, multitude.*
multō, (see multus), *by much.*
multum, adv., *much.*
multus, -a, -um, adj., *much, many.*—**multum,** N. as noun, *much.*—plur. *many things.*—**multō diē,** *late in the day.*
mundus, -ī, M., *world.*
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (-iī), mūnītum, 4. v. a. and n., *to fortify, to protect.*
mūnus, muneris, N., *duty, task, share.*
mūrus, -ī, M., *wall.*
mūs, mūris, C., *mouse.*

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nancīscor.**
nam, conj., *for.*
namque, (nam-que), conj., *for* (emphatic).

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus (nanctus), 3. v. dep., *to find, to procure, to obtain.*

nanctus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, 3. v. dep., *to be born, to spring up.*

nātiō, -ōnis, F., *race, nation.*

nātūra, -ae, F., *nature, character.*

nātus, -ūs, M., *birth.*

nauta, -ae, M., *sailor.*

nāvālis, -e, adj., *naval.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, 1. v. n., *to sail, to navigate.*

nāvis, nevis, F., *ship.*

nē, conj., *lest, that . . . not.*

ne, (enclitic), the sign of a question; cannot be translated.

nec; see **neque.**

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary.*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary.*

necessitās, -ātis, F., *necessity.*

necne, conj., *or not* (in double questions).

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to put to death, to murder.*

nefārius, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, infamous.*

neglegō, neglegere, neglēxi, neglēctum, 3. v. a., *to disregard, to neglect.*

negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum, 1. v. a. and n., *to say no, to refuse.*

negōtium, -ī, N., *business, occupation, undertaking.*

nēmō, nēminis, C., *no one, nobody.*

nēquāquam, adv., *in no way, by no means.*

neque, adv., *and not, nor.*

nēquiter, adv., *worthlessly, wretchedly.*

neuter, neutra, neutrum, adj. pron., *neither.*

nex, necis, F., *death* (violent).

niger, nigra, nigrum, adj., *black, dark.*

nihil, N., indecl., *nothing.*

nīl; see **nihil.**

nisi, conj., *unless, if not.*

nix, nivis, F., *snow.*

nōbilis, -e. adj., *noble, famous.*

nōbilitās, -ātis, F., *nobility.*

nōbīs, dat. or abl. of **nōs.**

nōbīscum, (nobis + cum), *with us.*

nocēns, -entis, adj., *harmful.* Pres. part. of **noceō.**

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, no p. p., 2. v. n., *to do harm to, to injure.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, irr. v. a. and n., *to wish not, to be unwilling.*

nōmen, nōminis, N., *name.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to name, to call by name.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōn minus, *none the less.*

Nōnae, -ārum. *The Nones.* The fifth day of each month, except March, May, July, October, in which they occurred on the 7th day.

nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *ninety.*

nōnne, (non-ne), sign of a negative question.

nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *ninth.*

nōs; see **ego.**

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3. v. a., *to learn, to know.*

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., *our, ours.*—Plur., *our men.*

nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nōscō.**

novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

novitās, -ātis, F., *strangeness, novelty.*

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, fresh.*

nox, noctis, F., *night.*

nūbēs, nubis, F., *cloud.*

nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *not any, no, none.*

nūmen, nūminis, N., *will, power.*

numerus, -ī, M., *number.*

numquam, adv., *never.*

nūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nūntiō.**

nūntiō, -are, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to report, to make known.*

nūntius, -ī, M., *messenger.*

nūper, adv., *lately, not long ago.*

nurus, -ūs, F., *daughter-in-law.*

O

ob, prep., *on account of, because of.*

obdūcō, obdūcere, obdūxī, obductum, [ob-duco], 3. v. a., *to lead toward, to lead against.*

obeō, obīre, obiī, obitum, [ob-eo], irr. v. a., *to go to, to attend to.*

obfuī; see **obsum.**

obiciō, obicere, objēcī, objectum, [ob-jacio], 3. v. a., *to throw against, to set up.*

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **offerō.**

oblīvīscor, oblīvīsci, oblītus, [ob-livio], 3. v. dep., *to forget.*

obses, obsidis, C., *hostage.*

obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessum, [ob-sedeo], 2. v. a., *to besiege, to blockade.*

obsum, obesse, obfuī, [ob-sum] irr. v. n., *to be opposed to, to injure.*

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentum [ob-teneo], 2. v. a., *to retain, to occupy, to possess.*

obtulī; perf. of **offerō.**

occāsiō, -ōnis, F., *opportunity, occasion.*

occāsus, -ūs, M., *a falling, a setting.*

occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus, [ob-cado], 3. v. n., *to fall, to set, to be slain.*

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsum, [ob-caedo], 3. v. a., *to kill, to massacre.*

occīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occīdō.**

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occupō.**

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to seize upon, to occupy.*

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eighth.*

octingentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *eight hundred.*

octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight.*

octōdecim, indecl. num. adj., *eighteen.*

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj., *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, M., *the eye.*

odium, -ī, N., *hatred.*
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, [ob-fero], irr. v. a., *to place in the way, to bring, to offer.*
omnia, -ium, N., Plur. of omnis, *all things.*
omnīnō, adv., *entirely, at all.*
omnis, omne, adj., *all, every.*
onus, oneris, N., *burden, load.*
opera, -ae, F., *work, attention.*
opīniō, -ōnis, F., *expectation, opinion.*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, 2. v. impers., *it is best, it ought.*
oppidānus, -a, -um, adj., *of a town.* Plur. as noun, *townsmen.*
oppidum, -ī, N., *stronghold, town.*
oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [ob. -pono], 3. v. a., *to place opposite, to oppose.*
opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressum, [ob-premo], 3. v. a., *to overwhelm, to oppress, to crush.*
oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob-pugno], 1. v. a., *to attack, to storm* (a place).
optimē, (superl. of bene), adv. *very well.*
optimus, -a, -um, (superl. of bonus), adj. *very good, best.*
opus, operis, N., *work, labor.*
opus, N., indeclin. *need, necessity.*
ōra, -ae, F., *shore.*
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., *address, speech, oration.*
ōrātor, -ōris, M., *speaker, orator.*
orbis, -is, M., *circle;* **orbis terrārum,** *circle of lands, the whole world.*
ōrdō, -inis, M., *row, order, rank.*
Orgetorīx, -īgis, M., *Orgetorix,* an Helvetian nobleman.
orior, orīrī, ortus, 3. (and 4.) v. n., *to arise, to start.*
oriēns, -entis, (p.p. of orior) adj., *rising.*
ōrnāmentum, -ī, N., *adornment.*
ōrnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ornō.**
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to adorn, to honor.*
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a. and n., *to pray, to entreat.*
ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **orior.**
ortus, -ūs, M., *a rising.*
ōs, ōris, N., *mouth, face.*
os, ossis, N., *a bone.*
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, [obs-tendo], 3. v. a., *to show, to make known, to declare.*
ōtium, -ī, N., *repose, rest.*

P

pābulum, -ī, N., *fodder.*
Padus, -ī, M., *the Po,* a river of northern Italy.
paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*
paenitentia, -ae, F., *repentance.*
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, 2. v. a., impers., *it repents* (*one*), *one repents.*
palūs, -ūdis, F., *marsh.*
palūster, -tris, -tre, adj., *marshy, swampy.*
par, paris, adj., *equal.*
parcō, parcere, pepercī (parsī), parsum, 3. v. n., *to spare.*

parēns, -entis, C., *parent.*
pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritum, 2. v. n., *to obey, to submit to.*
pariō, parere, peperī, partum, 3. v. a., *to procure.*
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to procure, to prepare, to arrange.*
pars, partis, F., *postion, part, share.*
partim, adv., *partly.*
patior, -īrī, -ītus, 4. v. dep., *to divide.*
partītus, -a, -um, p.p. of **partior**
partus, -ūs, *birth.*
partus, -a, -um, p.p. of **pariō.**
parum, adv., *not much, not very.*
parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small, little.*
passus, -a, -um, p.p. of **patior.**
passus, -ūs, M., *stride, step, pace* (equal to five feet).
pāstor, -ōris, M., *shepherd, keeper.*
patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, factum, [patio + facio], 3. v. a., *to lay open, to open.*
patefactus, -a, -um, p.p. of **patefaciō.**
patefīō, -fierī, -factus sum, 3. v. n., *to lie open, to be open.*
pater, patris, M., *father.*
patienter, adv., *patiently.*
patientia, -ae, F., *patience.*
patior, patī, passus, 3. v. dep., *to suffer, to endure, to permit.*
patrius, -a, -um, adj., *ancestral.*
paucus, -a, -um; adj., *few.*
paulum, adv., *little, somewhat.*
paulō, adv., *by a little.*
pauper, -eris, adj., *poor.*
pāx, pācis, F., *peace.*
pectus, -oris, N., *the breast.*
pecūnia, -ae, F., *money, wealth.*
pecus, -oris, N., *cattle.*
pedes, -itis, M., *footman, foot-soldier.*
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., *infantry.*
pējor, pējus, (comp. of **malus**), adj., *worse.*
pējus; (see male), adv., *worse.*
pelagus, -ī, N., *the sea.*
pellis, -is, F., *hide, skin.*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, 3. v. a., *to strike, to defeat, to rout.*
pēnsum, -ī, N., *task.*
per, prep. with acc., *through, by means of.*
perceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of **percipiō.**
percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [per-capio], 3. v. a., *to take in, to learn, to hear.*
perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perdō.**
perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum, [per-do], 3. v. a., *to destroy, to ruin.*
perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [perduco], 3. v. a., *to lead through, to bring over.*
perductus, -a, -um, p.p. of **perducō.**
pereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, [per-eo], irr. v. n., *to perish.*
perexiguus, -a, -um, adj., *very small.*
perfacilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*

perfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of **perficiō.**

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [per-fero], irr. v. a., *to carry through, to endure, to suffer.*

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [per-facio], 3. v. a., *to accomplish, to finish.*

perīculum, -ī, N., *danger, peril.*

perītus, -a, -um, adj., *skilled, skilful.*

perlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of **perferō.**

permissus, -a, -um, p.p. of **permittō.**

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [per-mitto], 3. v. a., *to grant, to allow, to permit.*

perniciēs, -ēī, F., *destruction, ruin.*

Persae, -ārum, M., *the Persians.*

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [per-sequor], 3. v. dep., *to follow up, to pursue.*

perspectus, -a, -um, p.p. of **perspiciō.**

perspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, [per-specio], 3. v. a., *to see clearly, to learn, to discover.*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, [per-suadeo], 2. v. a. and n., *to persuade.*

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, [per-terreo], 2. v. a., *to terrify, to alarm.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, no p.p., [per-teneo], 3. v. n., *to extend, to pertain.*

pertulī; see **perferō.**

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [per-venio], 4. v. n., *to arrive at, to reach.*

perventus, -a, -um, p.p. of **perveniō.**

pēs, pedis, M., *foot.*

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, 3. v. a. and n., *to seek.*

phalanx, -angis, F., *phalanx,* troops in a solid mass.

philosophus, -ī, M., *philosopher.*

pietās, -ātis, F., *piety, affection.*

piger, pigra, pigrum, adj., *lazy.*

piget, pigēre, pigitum est, 2. v. impers., *it disgusts one.*

pīlum, -ī, N., *javelin.*

pix, picis, F., *pitch.*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2. v. n., *to please.*

placet, placēre, placuit, 2. v. impers., *it pleases one.*

placidē, adv., *quietly, calmly.*

placidus, -a, -um, adj., *quiet, calm.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, F., *a plain.*

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *flat, level.*

plēbs, -is, F., *populace, the common people.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full.*

plūrimum, superl. of **multum**

plūrimus, -a, -um, *very many, most.*

plūs, adj., *more,* (compar. of **multus**).

pōculum, -ī, N., *cup.*

poēmā, -atis, N., *poem.*

poena, -ae, F., *penalty, punishment.*

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus, 2. v. dep., *to offer, to promise.*

Pompējus, -ī, M., *Pompey*, a Roman.
pondus, -eris, N., *weight.*
pone, prep. with acc., *behind.*
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, 3. v. a., *to lay down, to place.*
pōns, pontis, M., *bridge.*
populus, -ī, M., *a people, nation.*
porta, -ae, F., *gate.*
porticus, -ūs, *portico, porch.*
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to carry.*
portus, -ūs, M., *harbor, port.*
poscō, poseere, poposcī, no. p.p., 3. v. a., *to claim, to demand.*
positus, -a, -um, p.p. of **pōnō.**
possessiō, -ōnis, F., *possession.*
possideō, -sidērē, -sēdī, -sessum, 2. v. a., *to occupy, to hold possession of.*
possum, posse, potuī, irr. v. n., *to be able, can.*
post, prep. with acc., *behind, after.*
posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
posterus, -a, -um, adj., *next, later.*
postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [post-pono], 3. v. a., *to place behind, to postpone.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally.*
postrēmus, -a, -um, adj., *the last, the end.*
postulātum, -ī, N., *demand, request.*
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to claim, to request.*
potēns, -entis, adj., *powerful.*
potestās, -ātis, F., *power, opportunity, chance.*
potior, potīrī, potītus, 4. v. dep., *to become master of, to gain control of.*
potior, -us, (gen. -ōris), adj., *preferable.*
potissimum, adv., *most of all, especially.*
potītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **potior.**
potius, adv., *rather.*
prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with, before.*
praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitum, [prae-habeo], 2. v. a., *to offer, to furnish.*
praecēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, [prae-cedo], 3. v. a. *to go before, to excel.*
praeda, -ae, F. *booty, plunder.*
praefuī, perf. of, **praesum.**
praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [prae-mitto], 3. v. a., *to send forward, to send ahead.*
praemium, -ī, N., *reward.*
praesēns, -entis, adj., *present.*
praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, [prae-sentio], 4. v. a., *to see beforehand, to find out.*
praesidium, -ī, N., *guard, garrison.*
praestat, praestāre, praestitit, 1. v. dep., *it is better.*
praesum, praeesse, praefuī, [prae-sum], irr. v. n., *to be in front, to be in command.*
praeter, prep. with acc., *beyond, contrary to.*
praetereā, adv., *furthermore.*
praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [praeter-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *to pass by, to pass over.*

praetor, -ōris, M., *praetor*, a Roman magistrate.

prex, precis, F., *prayer, entreaty.*

prīmā lūce, adv. express., *at daybreak.*

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

prīmum, adv., *first, in the first place.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., *first.*

prīnceps, -ipis, M., *chief, leader.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, M., *leadership.*

Priscus, -ī, M., *Priscus*, a Roman.

prior, prius, adj., *former.*

prius, neut. of **prior.**

priōsquam, conj. adv., *earlier than, before.*

prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, before, in behalf of.*

probātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **probō.**

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to approve, to favor.*

prōcōnsul, -ulis, M., *a proconsul.*

prōdeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, [prod-eo], irr. v. n., *to go forth, to come out.*

prōdesse, inf. of **prōsum.**

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [pro-duco], 3. v. a., *to lead forth, to bring out, to prolong.*

prōductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prōducō.**

proelium, -ī, N., *battle.*

proelium committere, *to engage in battle.*

prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proficiscor.**

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [pro-fero], irr. v. a., *to bring forth, to bring out.*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [pro-facio], 3. v. n., *to advance, to accomplish.*

proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus, [profaciscor], 3. v. dep., *to start, to set out, to go out, to march.*

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, [profateor], 2. v. dep., *to declare publicly, to profess.*

profuī, perf. of **prōsum.**

prōgredior, gredī, -gressus, [progradior], 3. v. dep., *to go forward, to proceed.*

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prōgredior.**

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, [pro-habeo], 2. v. a., *to hold off, to forbid.*

prohibitus, -a, -um, p.p. of **prohibeō.**

prōiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectum, [pro-jacio], 3. v. a., *to throw forward, to cast* (down).

prolātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proferō.**

prōmōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of **prōmoveō.**

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [pro-moveo], 2. v. a., *to move forward, to advance.*

prope, prep. with acc., *near.*

proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own.*

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

propterea, adv., *on this account.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, [pro(d)-sum], irr. v. n., *to benefit.*

prōtulī, perf. of **prōferō.**

prōvideō, -vidēre, vīdī, -vīsum, [pro-video], 2. v. a., *to foresee, to provide.*

prōvincia, -ae, F., *province.*

prōvīsus, -a, -um, p.p. of **prōvideō.**

proximē, see **prope.**

proximus, -a, -um, adj., *nearest, next.*

pudet, pudēre, puduit, 2. v. impers. (it shames), *one is ashamed.*

puella, -ae, F., *girl.*

puer, puerī, M., *boy.* Plur., *children.*

pūgna, -ae, F., *fight, battle.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. n., *to fight.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful.*

pulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of **pellō.**

pulvis, -eris, M., *dust.*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī,(-iī), -ītum. 4. v. a., *to punish.*

puppis, -is, F., *stern* (of a boat).

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to think, to suppose.*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., *the Pyrenees* (mountains).

Q

quā, abl. of **quis** or **quī.**

quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *four hundred.*

quae, see **quis** or **quī.**

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3. v. a., *to search for, to inquire, to ask.*

quam, adv., *than.*

quam celerrimē, adv. express., *as quickly as possible.*

quam + superlative of adj., *as much as possible.*

quam ob rem, adv. phrase, *wherefore.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how much? how great?*

quasī, conj., *as if.*

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*

-que, conj., *and.*

quem, acc. of **quis** or **quī.**

queror, querī, questus, 3. v. dep., *to complain* (of).

questus, -a, -um, p.p. of **queror.**

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that.*

quibus, dat. or abl. plur. of **quis** or **quī.**

quibuscum, [cum + quibus], *with whom.*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, indef. adj. pron., *a certain.*

quiēs, -ētis, F., *rest, quiet.*

quīn, conj., *but that, that.*

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fifth.*

quīntus decimus, num. adj., *fifteen.*

quis, quae, quid, Interrog. adj. pron., *who? which? what?*

quis, ——, quid, indef. pron., *any one, any thing.*
quisquam, (no fem.), quidquam, indef. pron., *any, any one, any thing.*
quisque, quaeque, quidque, indef. pron., *each, each one.*
quō, see **quī**, or **quis.**
quod, conj., *because.*
quod, see **quī** or **quis.**
quoque, conj., *also.*
quŏque, see **quisque.**
quŏs, see **quī** or **quis.**

R

rādīx, -īcis, F., *root.*
rapiditās, -ātis, F., *rapidity, swiftness.*
rapīna, -ae, F., *plunder.*
rārus, -a, -um, adj., *thin, scattered, rare.*
ratiō, -ōnis, F., *reason, plan.*
ratis, -is, F., *raft.*
recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, [re-cedo], 3. v. n., *to retire, to withdraw.*
recēns, -entis, adj., *new, recent.*
receptus, -a, -um, p.p. of **recipiō.**
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [re-capio], 3. v. a., *to take back, to receive.* —with reflexive, *to retreat.*
reconciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to reunite, to reconcile.*
recreō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to refresh.*
reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, 3. v. a., *to give back, to restore.*
redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum [re-(red-)-eo], irr. v. n., *to go back, to return.*
reditiō, -ōnis, F., *a return.*
reditus, -ūs, M., *a return.*
redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [re-duco], 3. v. a., *to lead back, to bring back.*
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, [re-fero], irr. v. a., *to bring back, to report.*
refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum [re-fugio], 3. v. n., *to flee back, to escape.*
rēgīna, -ae, F., *queen.*
regiō, -ōnis, F., *region, country.*
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. n., *to reign.*
rēgnum, -ī, N., *kingdom.*
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, 3. v. a., *to manage, to rule.*
Rēgulus, -ī, M., *Regulus*, a Roman.
rēiciō, -icere, -jēcī, jectum, [re-jacio], 3. v. a., *to throw back, to drive back, to throw away.*
rejectus, -a, -um, p.p. of **reiciō.**
relātus, -a, -um, p.p. of **referō.**
relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, [re-linguo], 3. v. a., *to leave behind, to abandon.*
reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *left, remaining, rest.*
remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, [re-maneo], 2. v. n., *to remain, to stay.*
rēmex, rēmigis, M., *oarsman, rower.*
Rēmī, -ōrum, M. plur., *the Remi*, a tribe.
remōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of **removeō.**
removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [re-moveo], 2. v. a., *to move away, to remove.*

rēmus, -ī, M., *oar*.
reor, rērī, ratus, 2. v. dep., *to think, to deem*.
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, [re-pello], 3. v. a., *to drive back, to repulse*.
repente, adv., *suddenly*.
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, [re-(red-)pario], 4. v. a., *to find out, to discover*.
repertus, -a, -um, p.p. of **reperiō**.
reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [reporto], 1. v. a., *to carry back, to report*.
repulsus, -a. -um, p.p. of **repellō**.
rēs, reī, *affair, matter, thing*.
rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, [re-scindo], 3. v. a., *to cut away, to break down, to destroy*.
respiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, [re-specio], 3. v. a. and n., *to look back*.
respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, [re-spondeo], 2. v. n., *to reply, to answer*.
respōnsum, -ī, N., *reply*.
rēs publica, reī publicae, etc., F., *republic*.
retentus, -a, -um, p.p. of **retineō**.
retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [re-teneo], 2. v. a., *to hold back, to restrain*.
rettulī, perf. of **referō**.
revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [re-verto], 3. v. n., *to go back, to return*.
revertor, revertī, reversus, 3. v. dep. n., *to turn about*.
revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [revoco], 1. v. a., *to call back, to recall*.
rēx, rēgis, M., *king*.
Rhēnus, -ī, M., *the Rhine*, a river.
Rhodanus, -ī, M., *the Rhone*, a river.
rīpa, -ae, F., *bank*, (of a stream).
rīvus, -ī, M., *brook, stream*.
rōborane, [robora + ne].
rōbur, -oris, N., *oak*.
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to ask, to request*.
Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, M., *Roman*. —As noun, *a Roman*.
rōstrum, -ī, N., *beak* (of a ship).
ruber, rubra, rubrum, adj., *red*.
rūmor, -ōris, M., *rumor*.
rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, 3. v. a., *to break, to force open*.
rūpēs, -is, F., *cliff*.
rūs, rūris, N., *country, fields*.

S

sacerdōs, -dōtis, C., *priest*.
saepe, adv., *often*.
saepēs, -is, F., *hedge*.
saepissimē, *very often*.
sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow*.
saltus, -ūs, M., *glade, pass*.
salūs, -ūtis, F., *health, safety*.
salvus, -a, -um, adj., *saved, unhurt*.
Samos, ī, F., *Samos*, an island.
sanguis, -inis, M., *blood*.
sapiens, -entis, adj., *wise*.

sapienter, adv., *wisely.*
satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently.*
saxum, -ī, N., *stone, rock.*
scelus, -eris, N., *crime, wickedness.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, 4. v. a., *to know.*
Scīpiō, -ōnis, *Scipio,* a Roman.
scrība, -ae, M., *clerk, scribe.*
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, 3. v. a., *to write.*
scūtum, -ī, N., *shield.*
sē, see **suī.**
se recipiō, see **recipiō.**
secō, secāre, secuī, sectum, 1. v. a., *to cut.*
sēcum, [se + cum], *with himself, herself,* etc.
secundus, -a, -um, adj., *following, second, favorable.*
sēcus, adv., *otherwise.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sēdēs, -is, F., *seat, abode.*
seges, -etis, F., *crop.*
semel, adv., *once.*
semper, adv. *always.*
senātor, -ōris, M., *senator.*
senātus, -ūs, M., *senate.*
senex, senis, M., *old man.*
sententa, -ae, F., *opinion, feeling.*
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 4. v. a., *to perceive, to know.*
sentis, -is, M., *briar.*
septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven.*
September, -bris, M., *September.*
septimus, -a, -um, adj., *seventh.*
Sēquanus, -ī, *a Sequanian.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus, 3. v. dep., *to follow.*
sermō, -ōnis, M., *conversation.*
serviō, -īre, -iī, (-īvī), ītum, 4. v. n., *to be a slave.*
servitūs, -ūtis, F., *slavery.*
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to guard, to preserve.*
servus, -ī, M., *slave.*
sēsē, see **suī.**
sētius, [Compar. of **secus**], *less.*
sevēritās, -ātis, F., *severity, sternness.*
sex, indecl. num, adj., *six.*
sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*
sī, conj., *if, whether.*
sibi, see **suī.**
sīc, adv., *so, thus.*
sīdus, -eris, N., *star.*
sīgnifer, -ferī, M., *standard-bearer.*
sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, F., *signal, warning.*
sīgnum, -ī, N., *signal, sign.*
silva, -ae, F., *forest, woods.*
silvester, -tris, -tre, adj., *wooded.*
similis, -e, adj., *like, similar.*
sine, prep. with abl., *without.*
singulāris, -e, adj., *solitary, single.*
singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *single, one by one.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *on the left.*
sīve, seu. conj., *if either, or if.*
socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law.*
socius, -ī, M., *ally.*
Sōcratēs, -is, M., *Socrates,* a Greek.

socrus, -ūs, F., *mother-in-law.*
sōl, sōlis, M., *sun.*
soleō, solēre, solitus, 2. v. n., *to be wont.*
sōlitūdō, -dinis, F., *solitude, loneliness.*
sōlus, -a, -um., adj., *alone, only.*
somnus, -ī, M., *sleep.*
soror, -ōris, F., *sister.*
sors, sortis, F., *lot, chance.*
sospes, sospitis, adj., *saving.*
Sparta, -ae, F., *Sparta,* a city.
spatium, -ī, N., *space, distance.*
speciēs, -ēī, F., *sight, appearance.*
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a. and n., *to look at, to face.*
speculātor, -ōris, M., *spy, scout.*
spēs, speī, F., *hope, expectation.*
stat, stāre, stetit, 1. v. impers., *it stands fixed.*
statim, adv., *immediately.*
statua, -ae, F., *statue.*
stīpes, stīpitis, M., *trunk* (of a tree).
stirps, stirpis, M., *stock, stem, race.*
stō, stāre, stetī, statum, 1. v. n., *to stand.*
studeō, studēre, studuī, no p.p., 2. v. n., *to be eager, to desire.*
studium, -ī, N., *eagerness, zeal.*
stultitia, -ae, F., *stupidity, folly.*
sub, prep. with abl. or acc., *under.*
subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [sub-duco], 3. v. a., *to draw up, to lead up.*
subductus, -a, -um, p.p. of **subdūcō.**
subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [sub-eo], irr. v. a., *to go under, to undergo, to approach.*
subfuī, see **subsum.**
subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, [sub-ago], 3. v. a., *to subject.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
subitus, -a, -um, adj., *sudden.*
sublātus, -a, -um, p.p. of **tollō.**
subsidium, -ī, N., *aid, help.*
subsum, -esse, -fuī, [sub-sum], irr. v. n., *to be under, to be near.*
subter, prep. with acc. or abl., *beneath.*
subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, (sub-venio], 4. v. n., *to come under, to come to the aid of.*
sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum, irr. v. a., *to carry, to suffer, to sustain.*
suī, reflex, pron., *himself, herself,* etc.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, irr. v. n., *to be.*
summa, -ae, F., *highest point, the main part.*
summus, -a, -um, adj., *highest, greatest.*
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, [sub-emo], 3. v. a., *to take away, to get.*
super, prep. with acc. or abl., *over, above.*
superātus, -a, -um, p.p. of **superō.**
superbia, -ae., F., *haughtiness.*
superbus, -a, -um, *haughty.*
superfuī, see **supersum.**

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a. and n., *to conquer, to be superior to.*
superstes, -itis, adj., *surviving.*
supersum, -esse, -fuī, -(futūrus), [super-sum], irr. v. n., *to be over, to survive.*
supplex, -icis, C., *suppliant.*
sūprā, adv., *formerly, beyond.*
susceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of **suscipiō.**
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [sub(s)-capio], 3. v. a., *to take up, to undertake.*
suspectus, -a, -um, p.p. of **suspiciō.**
suspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, [sub-specio], 3. v. a. and n., *to suspect.*
suspīciō, -ōnis, F., *suspicion.*
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [sub(s)-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., *to hold up, to withstand, to hold out.*
sustulī, see **tollō.**
suus, -a, -um, reflex. adj., pron. *his, her, its* (own).

T

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum, 2. v. a. and n., *to be silent.*
tacitus, -a, -um. p.p. of **taceō.**
taedet, taedēre, taeduit, 2. v. impers., *it disgusts, it wearies.*
tālis, -e, adj., *such.*
tam, adv., *so, so much.*
tamen, adv., *nevertheless.*
tandem, adv., *at last, finally.*
tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so much, so great.*
Tarquinius, -ī, M., *Tarquin,* a Roman king.
tēctum, -ī, N., *roof.*
tēcum, [cum + te], *with thee.*
tegō, tēgere, tēxī, tēctum, 3. v. a., *to cover, to conceal.*
tēlum, -ī, N., *weapon.*
temeritās, -ātis, F., *rashness.*
tempestās, -ātis, F., *weather, storm.*
templum, -ī, N., *temple.*
tempus, -oris, N., *time, season.*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, 2. v. a., *to hold, to retain.*
tener, -era, -erum, adj., *delicate.*
tenuis, -e, adj., *delicate, thin.*
tenus, adv., *as far as.* Also prep. with abl.
tergum, -ī, N., *back.*
terra, -ae, F., *earth, land.*
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, 2. v. a., *to frighten.*
terror, -ōris, M., *alarm, terror.*
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., *third.*
tertius decimus, num. adj., *thirteenth.*
testis, -is, C., *witness.*
testūdō, -inis, F., *"testudo."*
Thermopylae, -ārum, *Thermopylae.*
Thrasybūlus, -ī, M., *Thrasybulus,* an Athenian.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, no p.p., 2. v. a. and n., *to fear, to be afraid.*
timidus, -a, -um, adj., *timid.*
timor, -ōris, M., *fear, dread.*
toga, -ae, F., *toga,* the Roman garment.
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, 3. v. a., *to raise, to take away.*
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, entire.*

trabs, trabis, F., *beam, timber.*
trāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of **trahō.**
trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [trans-duco], 3. v. a., *to lead over.*
trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, 3. v. a., *to drag.*
trāiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectum, [trans-jacio], 3. v. a., *to throw across, to pierce.*
trājectus, -a, -um, p.p. of **trāiciō.**
trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [trans-no], 1. v. a., and n., *to swim across.*
tranquillitās, -ātis, F., *calm.*
trāns, prep. with acc., *across.*
trānsdūcō, see **trādūcō.**
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *to go across, to pass through.*
trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [trans-fero], irr. v. a., *to carry over, to transfer.*
trānslātus, -a, -um, p.p. of **trānsferō.**
trānsmissus, -a, -um, p.p. of **trānsmittō.**
trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum. [trans-mitto], 3. v. a., *to send over.*
trānstulī, perf. of **trānsferō.**
trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *three hundred.*
trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., *three.*
trīduum, -ī, N., *three days' time.*
trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.*
tristis, -e, adj., *sad.*
Trōja, -ae, F., *Troy.*
Tros, Trōis, F., *Troy.*
tū, tuī, pron. 2d pers. *thou.*
tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet.*
tueor, tuērī, tuitus, 2. v. dep., *to watch, to protect.*
tulī, perf. of **ferō.**
Tullus, -ī, M., *Tullus,* a Roman name.
tum, adv., *then, at that time.*
tumultus, -ūs, M., *uproar, commotion.*
turpis, -e, adj., *disgraceful, base.*
turpiter, adv., *basely.*
turpitūdō, -dinis, F., *baseness.*
turris, -is, F., *tower.*
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *protected, safe.*
tuus, -a, -um, adj. pron., *your, yours.*
tyrannus, -ī, M., *tyrant.*

U

ubi, adv., *where.*
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, 3. v. dep., *to punish, to avenge.*
Ulixes, -is, M., *Ulysses,* King of Ithaca.
ūllus, -a, -um; gen. -īus, adj., *any.*
ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond.*
ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -īus, adj., *one, alone.*
urbānus, -a, -um, adj., *of a city, urban.*
urbs, urbis, F., *city.*
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, no p.p., 2. v. a., *to press, to urge.*
ūsus, -ūs, M., *use, experience.*
ūsus, -a, -um, p.p. of **ūtor.**
ut, conj., *how? as,* —with subjv., *that, in order that, so that.*

uter, utra, utrum; gen. -īus, adj., *which* (of two)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque; gen. utrīus-, adj., *both.*
ūtilis, e, adj., *useful.*
ūtilitās, -ātis, F., *usefulness, advantage.*
utinam, adv., *Oh that! Would that!*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, 3. v. dep., *to use, to employ.*
utrum, see **uter.**
uxor, -ōris, F., *wife.*

V

V, for quinque, *five.*
vagor, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *to wander, to roam around.*
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, 2. v. n., *to be strong.*
validus, -a, -um, *strong, healthy.*
vallēs, -is, F., *valley.*
vāllum, -ī, N., *wall, rampart.*
vāllus, -ī, M., *stake.*
vannus, -ī, F., *a fan,* for winnowing.
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to lay waste, to ravage.*
vectīgal, -alis, N., *tribute, revenue.*
vectīgālis, -e, adj., *tributary.*
vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, 3. v. a., *to bear, to carry.*
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, quick.*
vēneō, vēnīre, vēnīvī (iī), venītum, 4. v. n., *to go on sale.*
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4. v. n., *to come, to go.*
venter, ventris, M., *belly.*
ventus, -ī, M., *the wind.*
vēr, vēris, N., *Spring.*
verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to lash, to beat.*
verbum, -ī, N., *a word.*
vereor, -ērī, -ītus, 2. v. dep., *to fear, to reverence.*
versus, adv., and prep. with acc., *toward.*
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, 3. v. a., *to turn.*
verū, -ūs, N., *a spit.*
vesper, -erī, M., *evening.*
vester, vestra, vestrum; poss. adj. pron., *your, yours.*
vestīgium, -ī, N., *footsteps, track.*
vestiō, -īre, -īvī (iī), -ītum, 4. v. a., *to clothe, to cover.*
vestis, -is, F., *clothing, garments.*
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, 1. v. a., *to forbid.*
vetus, -eris, adj., *old, former.*
via, -ae, F., *road, way.*
victor, -ōris, M., *victor.*
victōria, -ae, F., *victory, success.*
victōriam reportāre, *to bring back victory, to win a battle.*
vīcus, -ī, M., *village.*
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, 2. v. a., *to see.*
vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty.*
vīmen, -inis, N., *twig.*
vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, 4. v. a., *to bind.*
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, 3. v. a. and n., *to conquer.*
vir, virī, M., *man, husband.*
virgō, -inis, F., *maiden.*
Viridovīx, -īcis, M., *Viridovix.*

virtūs, -ūtis, F., *manliness, courage.*
vīrus, -ī, N., *slime, poison.*
vīs, vīs, F., *force, strength.*
vīsus, -a, -um, p.p. of **videō.**
vīta, -ae, F., *life.*
vītā excēdere, *to depart from life, to die.*
vitium, -ī, *fault, a defect.*
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to shun, to avoid, to escape.*
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, 3. v. n., *to live.*
vōbīscum [cum + vobis], *with you.*
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to call, to summon.*
volō, velle, voluī, irr. v. a. and n., *to wish, to be willing.*
voluntās, -ātis, F., *willingness, desire.*
voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure, delight.*
vōmis, -eris, M., *ploughshare.*
vōs, plural of **tū.**
vōx, vōcis, F., *voice.*
vulgus, -ī, N., *crowd, mass.*
vulnerātus, -a, -um, adj., *wounded* (P.P. of vulnerō).
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. v. a., *to wound.*
vulnus, -eris, N., *a wound.*
vultus, -ūs, M., *countenance, face.*

X

X, for decem, *ten.*
Xerxes, -is, M., *Xerxes,* a king of Persia.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

a, not translated.
(certain), *quidam*. (325)
able, (be), *possum*, w. inf. (372)
about, (around), *circum*, w. acc.
(concerning), *dē*, with abl.
(time), *circiter*, w. acc.
(about to), Use Act. Periphr. Conj. (400)
absent, (be), *absum*. (376)
accomplish, *cōnficiō*, 3. (243)
according to, *prō*, w. abl.
accuse, *accūsō*, 1. (80)
accustomed, (be), *soleō*, 2. semi-dep. (329)
across, *trāns*, w. acc.
(=beyond), *ultrā*, w. acc.
(of a bridge), *in*, w. abl.
admire, *admīror*, 1. dep. (327.1)
advance, *prōgredior*, 3. (326)
(peace), *prōficiō*, 3. (243)
affair, *rēs*, *-eī*, F. (237)
afraid, (be), *timeō*, 2. (100)
after, (prep.) *post*, w. acc.
(conj.) *postquam*, w. Ind.
(=when), *cum*, w. Subjv. (436)
or Ablative Absolute. (388)
against, *contrā*, *in*, w. acc.
age, *aetās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
Agesilaus, *Agēsilāus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
agitate, *agitō*, 1. (80)
agree, *cōnsentiō*, 4. (212)
aid, *auxilium*, *-ī*, N. (33)
(assist), *juvō*, 1. w. acc. (80)
(benefit), *prōsum*, (dat.) (373)
air, *āēr*, *āeris*, etc., M. (166)
alarmed, (be), *timeō*, 2. (100)
all, (every one), *omnis*, *-e*, (184)
(the whole), *tōtus*, *-a*, *-um*. (262)
ally, *socius*, *-ī*, M. (32)
alone, *sōlus*, *-a*, *-um*. (262)
ūnus, *-a*, *-um*. (262)
also, *quoque*, adv.
although, *cum* with subjv. (436)
Ablative Absolute. (388)
always, *semper*, adv.
am, see to **be**.
ambassador, *lēgātus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
among, *inter*, *apud*, w. acc.
among, (be), *intersum*. (376)
ancient, *antīquus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
and, *et*, *-que*.
(also) *atque*, (and so) *itaque*.
anger, *īra*, *-ae*, F. (17)
animal, *animal*, *-ālis*, N. (168)
announce, *ēnūntiō*, 1. (80)
another, *alius*, *-a*, *-ud*. (262)

answer, *respōnsum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
(verb) *respondeō*, 2. w. dat. (100)
any, *ūllus*, *-a*, *-um*. (262)
apparent, (it is), *apparet*, 2, impers. (408)
appearance, *speciēs*, *-iēi*, F. (337)
approach, *appropīnquō*, 1. w. dat. (80)
approve, *probō*, 1. (80)
Aquitania, *Aquītānia*, *-ae*, F. (17)
are, see **to be**.
are not, *Nōnne sunt* . . .
are there, *Suntne* . . . .
are carrying = carry.
arise, *orior*, 3 and 4, dep. (327.29)
arm, *bracchium*, *-ī*, N. (33)
(verb), *armō*, 1. (80)
(arms for war), *arma*, *-ōrum*, N. plur. (33)
army, *exercitus*, *-ūs*, M. (231)
around, *circum*, w. acc.
arouse, see **rouse**.
arrival, *adventus*, *-ūs*, M. (231)
arrive (at), *perveniō*, 4, w. **ad** (212)
arrow, *sagitta*, *-ae*, F. (17)
art, *ars*, *artis*, F. (168)
as, Use a noun in apposition or Use a dative of service. or (conj.) *ut*, w. Ind.
as possible, *quam*, w. superl.
ashamed, (be), *pudet*, 2, impers. (408)
ashes, *cinis*, *-eris*, M. (141)
Asia, *Asia*, *-ae*, F. (17)
ask, (for), *rogō*, 1. (80)
(question), *quaerō*, 3. (191)
assembly, *conventus*, *-ūs*, M (231)
associate, *collēga*, *-ae*, M. (61)
at, (in, on), *in* w. abl.
(=time when), use abl.
(=near), *prope* w. acc.
(at Athens), *Athēnīs*. (78.33)
at once, *statim*, adv.
atrocious, *atrōx*, *-ōcis*, (182)
attack, *impetus*, *-ūs*, M. (231)
(verb), *adorior*, 4. dep. (327.26)
attempt, (noun), *cōnātus*, *-ūs*, M. (227)
(verb), *cōnor*, 1. dep. (327.3)
authority, *auctōritās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
avenge, *ulcīscor*, 3. dep. (327.24)
await, *exspectō*, 1. (80)
away, (be), *absum*, (376)
away from, *ā*, (*ab*), *ē*, (*ex*), w. abl.

B

bad, *malus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
(wicked), *improbus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
baggage, *impedīmenta*, *-ōrum*, N. plur. (33)
bank, *lītus*, *-oris*, N. (150)
Barbarian, *Barbarus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
barrier, *impedīmentum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
base, *turpis*, *-e*. (184)
basely, *turpiter*, adv.
baseness, *turpitūdō*, *-dinis*, F. (159)
battering-ram, *ariēs*, *-ietis*, M. (139)
battle, *pūgna*, *-ae*, F. (17); *proelium*, *-ī*, N. (33)

be, *sum.* (65)
bear, *ferō.* (346) *vehō,* 3. (191)
(=endure), *perferō.* (349)
(across), *trānsferō.* (349)
(away), *dēferō.* (349)
(back), *referō.* (349)
(to), *adferō.* (349)
beautiful, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum.* (59)
because, *cum,* w. subjv. (436)
become, *fīō.* (355)
before, (prep.), *ante,* w. acc.
(conj.), *antequam,* w. Indic.
beg, (for), *petō,* 3. (191)
begin, *incipiō,* 3. (243)
beginning, *initium, -ī,* N. (33)
behind, *pōne,* w. acc.
believe, *crēdō,* 3. (191)
belong to, *sum,* w. dat. (66)
benefit, *prōsum,* w. dat. (373)
beseech, *dēprecor,* 1, dep. (326)
besiege, *obsideō,* 2. w. acc. (100)
best, *optimus, -a, -um.* (273.2)
betake oneself, (-flee), *se recipere.* (243)
better, *melior, -ius,* (273)
(it is b.), *praestat,* 1, impers. (408.14)
between (be), *intersum,* (376)
beyond, *ultrā,* w. acc.
bind, *vinciō,* 4. (212)
bird, *avis, -is,* F. (141)
bitter, *acerbus, -a, -um.* (52)
black, *niger, -gra, -grum.* (59)
boat, *nāvis, -is,* F. (141)
body, *corpus, -oris,* N. (148)
bold, *audāx, -ācis.* (182)
boldly, *audācter,* adv.
boldness, *audācia, -ae,* F. (17)
book, *liber, -brī,* M. (45)
booty, *praeda, -ae,* F. (17)
born (be), *nāscor,* 3, dep. (327.17.)
both, *ambō, -ae, -ō.* (336 note)
both . . . . and, *et . . . . et.*
boy, *puer, -erī,* M. (42)
brave, *fortis, -e.* (180)
bravely, *fortiter,* adv.
bravery, *fortitūdō, -dinis,* F. (159)
break, *frangō,* 3. (191)
breast, *pectus, -oris,* N. (150)
bridge, *pōns, pontis,* M. (168)
bring, *portō,* 1, (80); *ferō; offerō;* (349)
(against), *īnferō.* (349)
(back), *referō.* (349)
(over), (i.e., to lead), *trānsdūcō.* (191)
(to), *adferō.* (349)
(together), *cōnferō.* (349)
(b. war), *bellum īnferre* w. dat. (349)
broad, *lātus, -a, -um.* (52)
brother, *frāter, -tris,* M. (168)
Brutus, *Brūtus, -ī,* M. (32)
build, *aedificō,* 1. (80)
building, *aedificium, -ī,* N. (33)
burden, *onus, -eris,* N. (150)
burn, *combūrō,* 3. (191)
but, *sed, autem.*
but that, *quīn,* w. subjv.
by, (agent), *ā,* (*ab*), w. abl.
(means), abl. alone.

C

Caesar, *Caesar, -aris,* M. (168)
call, (=summon), *vocō,* 1. (80)
(=name), *nōminō,* 1. (80)
together, *convocō,* 1. (80)
calm, (noun) *tranquillitās, -ātis,* F. (141).
(adj.), *placidus, -a, -um.* (52)

calmly, *placidē*, adv.
camp, *castra, -ōrum*, N. plur. (33)
camp-follower, *cālō, -ōnis*, M. (159)
can, *possum*, w. inf. (372)
cannot, *non possum*. (372)
captive, (adj.) *captīvus, -a, -um*. (52)
(noun) *captīvus, -ī*, M. (32)
capture, *capiō*, 3. (243)
care, *cūra, -ae*, F. (17)
(take c.), *cūrō*, 1. (80)
carpenter, *faber, -brī*, M. (43)
carry, *portō*, 1; *ferō*, (349)
(c. off) *efferō*. (349)
(c. on) *cōnficiō*, 3. (243)
(c. on war) *bellum gerō*, 3. (191)
(c. out) = (accomplish) *cōnficiō*, 3. (243)
cast up, *ēiciō*, 3. (243)
catch, *capiō*, 3. (242)
cattle, *pecus, -oris*, N. (150)
cause, (noun) *causa, -ae*, F. (17)
(verb) = (to produce) *efficiō*, 3. (243)
cavalry, *equitātus, -ūs*, M. (231)
centurion, *centuriō, -ōnis*, M. (159)
certain, (adj.), *certus, -a, -um*. (52)
(pron.), *quīdam*. (325)
chance, *fors, fortis*, F. (168); *cāsus, -ūs*, M. (227)
chariot, (not war), *carrus, -ī*, M. (32)
check, *coerceō*, 2. (100)
chief, *prīnceps, -cipis*, M. (168)
child, *puer, -erī*, M. (42)
children, *līberī, -ōrum*, M. plur. (45)
choose, *dēligō*, 3. (191)
Cicero, *Cicero, -ōnis*, M. (159)
citadel, *arx, arcis*, F. (159)
citizen, *cīvis, -is*, C. (141)
city, *urbs, -bis*, F. (168)
clear, *clārus, -a, -um*. (52)
cliff, *rūpēs, -is*, F. (141)
close, *claudō*, 3. (191)
clothe, *vestiō*, 4. (212)
clothes, *vestis, -is*, F. (141)
clothing, *vestis, -is*, F. (141)
cloud, *nūbēs, -bis*, F. (139)
cohort, *cohors, -ortis*, F. (166)
cold, *frīgus, -oris*, N. (150)
coldness, *frīgus, -oris*, N. (150)
colleague, *collēga, -ae*, M. (61)
collect, *conlocō*, 1. (80); *cōnferō*. (349)
(an army), *cōgō*, 3. (191)
colony, *colonia, -ae*, F. (17)
come, *veniō*, 4. (212); *eō*. (355)
(together), *conveniō*, 4. (212)
(to the aid of), *subveniō*, 4. w. dat. (212)
command, *jūssus, -ūs*, M. (231); *imperium, -ī*, N. (33)
(to), *jubeō*, 2. w. acc. (100)
(be in c.), *praesum*, w. dat (376)
commander, *imperātor, -ōris*, M. (168)
common people, *vulgus, -ī*, N. (32)
compact, *pāctum, -ī*, N. (33)
companion, *comes, -itis*, C. (141)
compare, *cōnferō*. (349)

complain, *queror*, 3, dep. (327.21)
conceal, *cēlō*, 1. (80)
concerning, *dē*, w. abl.
condition, *conditiō*, *-iōnis*, F. (159)
conference, *conloquium*, *-ī*, N. (33)
confess, *cōnfiteor*, 2, dep. (327.9)
congratulate, *grātulor*, 1, dep. (326)
conquer, *superō*, 1. (80)
vinco, 3. (191)
consider, *arbitror*, 1, dep. (327.2)
conspiracy, *conjūrātiō*, *-iōnis*, F. (159)
conspirator, *conjūrātus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
consul, *cōnsul*, *-ulis*, M. (166)
consulship, *cōnsulātus*, *-ūs*, M. (231)
consult, *cōnsultō*, 1. (80)
contrary to, *contrā*, w. acc.
conversation, *sermō*, -ōnis, F. (157)
could, see **can.**
countenance, *vultus*, *-ūs*, M. (231)
country, *patria*, *-ae*, F. (17)
(not city), *rūs*, *rūris*, N.
(enemy's), *finis*, *-is*, M. (141)
courage, *virtūs*, *-ūtis*, F. (150)
cover, *tegō*, 3. (191)
cow, *bōs*, *bovis*, C. (138.3)
create, *creō*, 1. (80)
crime, *scelus*, *-eris*, N. (150)
crīmen, *-minis*, N. (159)
crisis, *discrīmen*, *-minis*, N. (159)
crop, *seges*, *-getis*, F. (141)
cross, *trānseō*, (359) (359a. 15)
crowd, *vulgus*, *-ī*, N. (32)
cruel, *crūdēlis*, *-e*. (180) (184)
cruelty, *crūdēlitās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
cup, *pōculum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, M. (148)
cut, *secō*, 1. (80)

D

danger, *perīculum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
dare, *audeō*, 2, semi-dep. (329)
daughter, *fīlia*, *-ae*, F. (17)
day, *diēs*, *diēī*, M. (236)
day-break, *prīma lūx*. (159)
dear, *cārus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
dearly, *cārē*, adv.
death, *mors*, *mortis*, F. (168)
(violent), *nex*, *necis*, F. (159)
deceit, *fraus*, *fraudis*, F. (148)
deed, *facinus*, *-oris*, N. (150)
deep, *altus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
defend, *dēfendō*, 3. (191)
defender, *dēfēnsor*, *-ōris*, M. (168)
delay (noun), *mora*, *-ae*, F. (17)
(w. obj.), *moror*, 1, dep. (327.7)
(no obj.), *cunctor*, 1, dep. (327.4)
delicate, *tener*, *-era*, *-erum*. (55)
depart, *discēdō*, 3. (191); *exeō*· (359)
depth, *altitūdō*, *-dinis*, F. (159)
deserter, *dēsertor*, *-ōris*, M. (168)
desire, *cupiō*, 3. (243); *volō*. (367)

despise, *contemnō*, 3. (191); *dēspiciō*, 3. (243)
destroy, *dēleō*, 2. (100)
destruction, *perniciēs, -ēī*, F. (237)
detain, *dētineō*, 2. (100)
determine, *cōnstituō*, 3. (191)
devastate, *vāstō*, 1. (80)
die, *morior*, 3, dep. (327.28)
difficult, *difficilis, -e.* (180) (184)
difficulty, *difficultās, -ātis*, F. (141)
diligent, *dīligēns, -entis.* (182)
diligently, *dīligenter*, adv.
disaster, *calamitās, -ātis*, F. (141)
disclose, *aperiō*, 4. (212); *patefaciō*, 3. (243)
discover, *inveniō, comperiō*, 4. (212)
disgusted, (be), *piget*, 2. impers. (408)
dissuade, *dissuādeō*, 2. (100)
disturb, *commoveō*, 2. (100)
do, *faciō*, 3. (243)
document, *documentum, -ī*, N. (33)
doubt (noun) *dubium, -ī*, N. (33)
(verb) *dubitō*, 1. (80)
drag, *trahō*, 3. (191)
draw, (=drag), *trahō*, 3. (191)
(=lead), *dūcō*, 3. (191)
(up), *īnstruō*, 3. (191)
dread, *vereor*, 2, dep. (327.14)
drink, (noun), *pōtus, -ūs*, M. (227)
drive, *agō*, 3. (191)
(out), *expellō*, 3. (191)
during, *in*, w. abl.
dust, *pulvis, -eris*, M. (139)
duty, *mūnus, -eris*, N. (150)

E

each, (one), *quisque.* (325)
(of two), *uterque.* (264)
eager, (adj.), *cupidus, -a, -um.* (52)
(be), *cupiō*, 3. (191)
eagerness, *alacritās, -ātis.* (139)
eagerly, *ācriter*, adv.
early, *mātūrē*, adv.
easy, *facilis, -e.* (180) (184)
easily, *facile*, adv.
effect, *efficiō*, 3. (243)
eighty, *octōgintā.* (335)
embassy, *lēgātiō, -ōnis*, F. (159)
encamp, *castra conlocō*, 1. (33) (80)
encourage, *hortor*, or *cohortor*, 1, dep. (327)
end, *fīnis, -is*, M. (141)
endure, *perferō* (349); *patior*, 3, dep. (327.19)
enemy, (personal), *inimīcus, -ī*, M. (32)
(war), *hostis, -is*, C. (139)
engage (in battle), *proelium committō*, 3. (33) (191)
enjoy, *fruor*, 3, dep., w. abl. (327.15)
enough, *satis*, adv.
enter, *ineō*, (359); *ingredior*, 3, dep. (326)
equal, *pār, paris.* (182)
equestrian, *equester, -tris, -tre.* (178) (184)
erect, *aedificō*, 1. (80)
escape, *effugiō*, 3. (243)

espy, (perceive), *cōnspiciō*, 3. (243)
evening, *vesper, -erī*, M. (45)
evidence, *indicium, -ī*, N. (33)
evil, *malus, -a, -um.* (52)
excel, *anteeō* (359) or *praecēdō*, 3, w. dat. (191)
excellent, *optimus, -a, -um.* (52)
exercise, *exerceō*, 2. (100)
exile, *exsul, -ulis*, C. (168)
expect, *exspectō*, 1. (80)
expectation, *exspectātiō, -ōnis*, F. (157)
eye, *oculus, -ī*, M. (32)

F

face, *ōs, ōris*, N. (150); *vultus, -ūs*, M. (227)
fail, (be lacking), *dēsum*, w. dat. (376)
faithful, *fidēlis, -e.* (180) (184)
faithfulness.
fall, *cadō*, 3. (191)
falsely, *falsō*, adv.
famous, (=well known), *clārus, -a, -um.* (52)
(=frequented), *celeber, -bris, -bre.* (184)
far, *longē*, adv.
(by far), abl. deg. difference.
farmer, *agricola, -ae*, M. (61)
farther, *longius*, adv.
fate, *fātum, -ī*, N. (33)
father, *pater, -tris*, M. (166)
father-in-law, *socer, -erī*, M. (45)
favor, *faveō*, 2. w. dat. (100)
fear, *metus, -ūs*, M. (227)
fear, (to), *timeō*, 2. (100); *metuō*, 3. (191)
(to be in), *timeō*, 2. (100)
feel, *sentiō*, 4. (212)
few, *paucus, -a, -um*, (in the plur.) (52)
fidelity, *fidēs, -eī*, F. (237)
field, *ager, agrī*, M. (43)
fierce, *ātrox, -ōcis; ferox, -ōcis.* (182)
fifth, *quīntus, -a, -um.* (52)
fifty, *quīnquāgintā.* (337)
fight, *pūgnō*, 1., *dēcertō*, 1. (80)
find, *inveniō*, 4., *reperiō*, 4. (212)
find out, *comperiō*, 4. (212)
finish, *cōnficiō*, 3. (243)
fir tree, *abiēs, -etis*, F. (141)
fire, *ignis, -is*, M. (141)
firm, *firmus, -a, -um.* (52)
fitting, *idōneus, -a, -um.* (52)
five, *quīnque.* (337)
five hundred, *quīngentī, -ae, -a.* (52)
flame, *flamma, -ae*, F. (17)
flee, *fugiō*, 3. (243)
(back), *refugiō*, 3. (243)
(out of), *effugiō*, 3. (243)
fleet, *clāssis, -is*, F. (141)
flight, *fuga, -ae*, F. (17)
flow, *fluō*, 3. (191)
flower, *flōs, flōris*, M. (150)
fly, *volō*, 1. (80)
fodder, *pābulum, -ī*, N. (33)
follow, *sequor*, 3, dep. (327.23)
following (day), *proximus, -a, -um.* (52)
food, *cibus, -ī*, M. (32)
foot-man, *pedes, -itis*, M. (141)
foot-soldier, *pedes, -itis*, M. (141)
for, sign of the dative case.
(=extent of time), Use acc.

for battle, *bellō*.
for the sake of, *prō*, w. abl. or *causā*, w. gen.
forbid, *vetō*, 1. (80)
force, (noun), *vīs*, *vīs*, F. (138.39)
(verb), *cōgō*, 3. (191)
forces, *cōpiae*, *-ārum*, F. (17)
forget, *oblīviscor*, 3, dep. w. gen. (327)
form a compact, *pāctum faciō*, 3. (243)
former (the), *ille*. (311)
fort, *castrum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
fortifications, *moenia*, *-ium*, N. plur. (33)
fortify, (to), *mūniō*, 4. (212)
fortress, *arx*, *arcis*, F. (159)
fortune, *fortūna*, *-ae*, F. (17)
forum, *forum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
fourth, *quartus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
fountain, *fōns*, *fontis*. M. (168)
fraud, *fraus*, *fraudis*, F. (148)
free, (adj.), *līber*, *-era*, *-erum*. (55)
(verb), *līberō*, 1. (80)
freedom, *lībertās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
freely, *līberē*, adv.
frequently, *crēbrō*, adv.
friend, *amīcus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
friendly, *amīcus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
friendship, *amīcitia*, *-ae*, F. (17)
frighten, *terreō*, 2. (100)
from, *ā*, (*ab*), *ē*, (*ex*), w. abl.
(be), *absum*. (376)
(=because), Use Abl. Absolute.
fruit, *frūx*, *frūgis*, F. (159)
fugitive, *fugitīvus*, *ī*, M. (32)
fulfill, *ad ēventum addūcō*, 3. (191) (227)
full, *plēnus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
furnish, *praebeō*, 2. (100)

G

gain possession of, *potior*, 4, w. abl. (326)
gain victory, *victōriam reportō*, 1. (17) (80)
garment, *vestis*, *-is*, (141)
garrison, *praesidium*, *-ī*, N. (33)
gate, *porta*, *-ae*, F. (17)
gather, *colligō*, 3. or *cōgō*, 3. (191)
gather together, *conveniō*, 4 (212)
Gaul, *Gallia*, *-ae*, F. (17)
Gaul (a), *Gallus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
general, *imperātor*, *-ōris*, M. (168)
generosity, *līberālitās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
gentle, *lēnis*, *-e*. (180) (184)
gentleness, *lēnitās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
Germans, *Germānī*, *-ōrum*, M. (32)
gift, *dōnum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
girl, *puella*, *-ae*, F. (17)
give, *dō*, 1. (80)
give orders, *jubeō*, 2. (100)
glad (be), *gaudeō*, 2 semi-dep. (329)
glory, *glōria*, *-ae*, F. (17); *decus*, *-oris*, N. (150)
go, *eō*. (355)
(away), *abeō*. (359)
(into), *ineō*. (359)
(out), *exeō*. (359)
(to), *adeō*. (359)

goat, *caper, -prī*, M. (45)
God, *Deus, -ī*, M. (32)
gold, *aurum, -ī*, N. (33)
golden, *aureus, -a, -um.* (52)
good, *bonus, -a, -um.* (52)
goodness, *bonitās, -ātis*, F. (141)
grain supply, *commeātus, -ūs*, M. (227)
grant, *dō*, 1. (80)
great, *māgnus, -a, -um.* (52)
Greek (a), *Graecus, ī*, M. (32)
guard, (noun), *custōs, -ōdis*, C. (150)
(verb), *custōdiō*, 4. (212)
guest, *hospes, -itis*, M. (141)

H

hand, *manus, -ūs*, F. (227)
Hannibal, *Hannibal, -lis*, M.
happen, *ēveniō*, 4. (212)
(it happens), *accidit*, impers. (407)
harbor, *portus, -ūs*, M. (227)
hard, (not soft), *dūrus, -a, -um.* (52)
(difficult), *difficilis, -e.* (180) (184)
hare, *lepus, -oris*, M. (150)
harsh, *asper, -era, -erum.* (55)
harshness, *acerbitās, -ātis*, F. (141)
has, see **to have.**
hasten, *accelerō*, 1. (80)
contendō, 3. (191)
hatred, *odium, -ī*, N. (33)
have, *habeō*, 2. (100)
he, *is.* (312)
he is, *est.* (65)
head, *caput, -itis*, N. (148)
hear, *audiō*, 4. (211)
(=learn), *cōgnōscō*, 3. (191)
heart, *cor, cordis*, N. (138.7)
heat, *calor, -ōris*, M. (168)
(zeal), *ardor, -ōris*, M. (168)
heavy, *gravis, -e.* (180) (184)
hedge, *saepēs, -is*, F. (141)
help, (noun), *auxilium, -ī*, N. (33)
(aid), *juvō*; 1. (80)
(benefit), *prōsum.* (373)
Helvetians, *Helvētii, -iōrum*, M. plur. (32)
here, *hīc* or *hūc*, adv.
here (is), *adest*, see **adsum** (376)
hiding place, *latēbra, -ae*, F (17)
high, *altus, -a, -um.* (52)
high place, use *summa.*
hill, *collis, -is*, M. (141)
him, *eum*, (see **is**). (312)
himself, (intensive), *ipse*, (303)
(reflexive), *suī.* (301)
his, *ējus*, see **is.** (312)
his own, *suus, -a, -um.* (293)
hold, *teneō*, 2. (100)
hold in check, *coerceō*, 2. (100)
home, *domicilium, -ī*, N. (33)
(-ward), *domum*, adv.
honor, *honor, -ōris*, M. (168)
hope, *spēs, -eī*, F. (237)
horn, *cornū, -ūs*, N. (228)
horrible, *horribilis, -e.* (180) (184)
horse, *equus, -ī*, M. (32)
horseman, *eques, -itis*, M. (141)
hostage, *obses, -idis*, M.
hour, *hōra, -ae*, F. (17)
house, *domicilium, -ī*, N., *domus*, (230).
how many, *quot.*

huge, *immānis, -e.* (180) (184)
hunger, *famēs, -is,* F. (141)
hurl against, *obiciō,* 3. (243)

I

I, *ego.* (287)
if, *sī.*
ill, *aeger, -gra, -grum.* (58)
immediately, *statim,* adv.
impede, *impediō,* 4, w. acc.
important, (it is), *interest.* (408)
increase, *augeō,* 2. (100)
industry, *dīligentia, -ae,* F. (17)
inform, *certiōrem faciō,* 3. (243) (278)
influence, *auctōritās, -ātis,* F. (141)
influential, *gravis, -e.* (180) (184)
in, *in,* w. abl.
in Rome, *Rōmā.* (78.33)
in behalf of, *prō,* w. abl.
in comparison with, *prae,* w. abl.
in order to, *ut,* w. subjv. (426)
inhabitant, *incola, -ae,* F. (17)
injury, *injūria, -ae,* F. (17)
innocent, *innocēns, -entis.* (182) (184)
insolence, *arrogantia, -ae,* F. (17)
insult, *contumēlia, -ae,* F. (17)
intend, *in animō esse,* w. dat. of person.
intercept, *interclūdō,* 3. (191)
interpreter, *interpres, -etis,* C. (141)
into, *in,* w. acc.
invite, *invītō,* 1. (80)
is, see **to be.**
is there, *Estne.* (65)
is there not, *Nōnne est.* (65)
island, *insula, -ae,* F. (17)
it, *id,* (see **is**). (312)
it is, *est.* (65)
it was fought, *pūgnātum est* (410.1)
Italy, *Italia, -ae,* F. (17)
itself, (intensive), *ipsum.* (303)
(reflexive), *sē.* (301)

J

javelin, *pīlum, -ī,* N. (33)
journey, *iter, itineris,* N. (138.18)
joyful, *laetus, -a, -um.* (52)
judge, *arbiter, -trī.* (45)
(legal), *jūdex, -icis,* M (157)
justice, *jūs, jūris,* N. (148)
justly, *jūstē,* adv.

K

keen, *ācer, ācris, ācre.* (178)
keenly, *ācriter,* adv.
keep from, *prohibeō,* 2. (100)
keep in memory, *memoriā teneō,* 2. (17) (100)
keep out,
keep silent, *taceō,* 4. (100)
kill (by striking), *caedō,* 3. (191)
(cut to pieces), *interficiō,* 3. (243)
king, *rēx, rēgis,* M. (157)
kingdom, *rēgnum, -ī,* N. (33)
kind, *benignus, -a, -um.* (52)
kindly, *benignē,* adv.
kindness, *benevolentia, -ae,* F. (17)
knee, *genū, -ūs,* N. (228) (231)
knife, *culter, -trī,* M. (45)
know, (a person), *cōgnōscō,* 3. (191)
(athing, fact), *sciō,* 4. (212)

Labienus, *Labiēnus, -ī,* M. (32)
lacking, (to be), *desum,* w. dat. (376)
lake, *lacus, -ūs,* M. (227)
land, *terra, -ae,* F. (17)
large, *māgnus, -a, -um.* (52)
last, *ultimus, -a, -um.* (52)
latter, (the), *hīc.* (305)
law, *lēx, lēgis,* F. (159)
lay open, *patefaciō,* 3. (243)
lazy, *piger, -gra, -grum.* (58)
lead, *dūcō,* 3. (191)
(across), *trānsdūcō,* 3. (191)
(out), *ēdūcō,* 3. (191)
leader, *dux, ducis,* C. (157)
leaf, *folium, -ī,* N. (33)
learn, *cōgnōscō,* 3. (191)
least, *minimus, -a, -um.* (52)
leave, (behind), *relinquō,* 3. (191)
(depart), *discēdō,* 3.
left, (hand), *sinister, -tra, -trum.* (58)
leg, *crūs, crūris,* N. (150)
legion, *legiō, -iōnis,* F. (157)
lest, *nē,* w. subjv. (426) (431)
let, Use Hortatory Subjv. (443)
let not, *nē..* w. Hort. Subjv. (443)
letter, *epistula, -ae,* F. (17)
level, *plānus, -a, -um.* (52)
liberality, *līberālitās, -ātis,* F. (141)
liberally, *largiter,* adv.
liberty, *lībertās, -ātis,* F. (141)
lie in wait, *īnsidior,* 1. w. dat. (327.6)
lieutenant, *lēgātus, -ī,* M. (32)
life, *vīta, -ae,* F. (17)
light, *lūx, lūcis,* F. (159)
(adj.), *levis, -e.* (180)
limit, (to), *fīniō,* 4. (212)
line of battle, *aciēs, -iēī,* F. (237)
line of march, *agmen, -inis,* N. (159)
little, *parvus, -a, -um.* (52)
(not much), *nōn multum,* w. gen.
live, *vīvō,* 3. (191)
(dwell), *habitō,* 1. (80)
locate, *conlocō,* 1. (80)
long, *longus, -a, -um.* (52)
long for, (desire), *cupiō,* 3 and 4. (243)
look, *spectō,* 1. (80)
(at), *spectō,* 1. (80)
(back), *respiciō,* 3. (243)
low, *humilis, -e.* (180) (184)
(base), *turpis, -e.* (180) (184)
loyal, *fidēlis, -e.* (180) (184)

M

magistrate, *magistrātus, -ūs,* M. (227)
magnitude, *māgnitūdō, -inis,* F. (159)
make, *faciō,* 3. (243)
make a journey, *iter faciō,* 3. (138.18)
man, *vir, virī,* M. (45)
(mankind), *homō, -inis,* C. (138.17)
many, *multus, -a, -um.* (52)
march, *iter, itineris,* N. (138.18)
(verb), *iter faciō,* 3. (243)
maritime, *maritimus, -a, -um.* (52)
marsh, *palūs, -ūdis,* F. (150)
mass, *mōlēs, -is,* F. (141)

master, (of household), *dominus, -ī*, M. (32)
(of scholars), *magister, -trī*, M. (45)
(to be), *dominor*, 1. dep. (327.5)
may, (it is permitted), *licet*, 2. impers. (408)
me, *mē*, see **ego.** (287)
meat, *carō, carnis*, F. (138.4)
memorable, *īnsīgnis, -e.* (180) (184)
memory, *memoria, -ae*, F. (17)
merchant, *mercātor, -ōris*, M. (168)
merciful, *-clēmens, -entis.* (182) (184)
messenger, *nūntius, -ī*, M. (32)
midday, *merīdiēs, -iēī*, M. (237)
mile, (1000 of paces), *mīlle passuum.*
miles, ... *mīlia passuum.* (339)
mind, *animus, -ī*, M. (32); *mēns, mentis*, F. (168)
modesty, *modestia, -ae*, F. (17)
money, (silver), *argentum, -ī*, N. (33)
(copper), *aes, aeris*, N. (138.1)
month, *mēnsis, -is*, M. (141)
monument, *monumentum, -ī*, N. (32)
more, *plūs.* (272a)
or Compar. of adj. or adv.
most, Use superl. of adj. or adv.
mother, *māter, mātris*, F. (168)
mountain, *mōns, montis*, M. (168)
move, *moveō*, 2. (100)
much, (adj.), *multus, -a, -um.* (52)
(noun), *multum*, N., w. gen. (32)
must, Use Pass. Periph. Conj. (401)
multitude, *multitūdō, -dinis*, F. (157)
my, *meus, -a, -um.* (293)
myself, (intensive), *ipse.* (303)
(reflexive), gen., dat., etc., of *ego.* (287)

N

name, *nōmen, -inis*, N. (157)
(to), *nōminō*, 1. (80)
nature, *nātūra, -ae*, F. (17)
naval, *nāvālis, -e.* (180) (184)
near, *prope*, w. acc.
necessary, *necessārius, -a, -um.* (52)
necessity, *necessitās, -ātis*, F. (141)
need, (noun), *opus*, indecl. N. (150)
(something is lacking), *dēsum*, w. dat. (376)
neighboring, *fīnitimus, -a, -um.* (52)
neither, *neuter, -tra, -trum.* (263)
neither—nor, *neque . . . neque.*
never, *numquam*, adv.
new, *novus, -a, -um.* (52)
next, *proximus, -a, -um.* (52)
nimble, *alacer, -cris, -cre.* (178) (184)
nine, *novem.* (335)
night, *nox, noctis*, F. (138.26)
no, (adj.), *nūllus, -a, -um* (262)
(adv.), *nōn.*

no one, *nēmō, -inis*, C. (138.24)
noble, *nōbilis, -e.* (180) (184)
nobility, *nōbilitās, -ātis*, F. (141)
nobly, *nōbiliter*, adv.
none, *nūllus, -a, -um.* (262)
noon, *merīdiēs, -iēī*, M. (237)
nor, *nōn etiam.*
not, *nōn*, adv.
not more than, *nōn longius quam.*
not yet, *nōn etiam.*
now, *jam*, adv.
(therefore), *itaque.*
number, *numerus, -ī*, M. (32)

O

oak, *rōbur, -boris*, N. (138.32)
oak tree, *rōbur, -boris*, N.
oath, *jūs jūrandum, -ris -ī*, N. (150)
obey, *pāreō*, 2, w. dat. (100)
obtain, *obtineō*, 2. (100)
(possession), *potior*, w. abl. (326)
occasion, *occāsiō, -iōnis*, F. (159)
occupy, *possideō*, 2. (100)
offer, *offerō.* (349)
offspring, *subolēs, -is*, F. (141)
often, *saepe*, adv.
Oh! that, *utinam*, w. subjv. (453)
old, (ancient), *antīquus, -a, -um.* (52)
(aged), *vetus, veteris.* (182) (184)
old man, *senex, senis*, M. (138.34)
on, *in*, w. abl.
on=time; Use ablative case.
on account of, *propter*, w. acc.
on all sides, *ex omnibus partibus.*
on behalf of, *prō*, w. abl.
on the point of, Use Act. Periph. Conj. (400)
one, *ūnus, -a, -um.* (262)
(the one. . . . the other), *alter. . . . alter.* (263)
one thousand, *mīlle.* (339)
only, (adj.), *sōlus, -a, -um.* (262)
(adv.), *tantum.*
open, *aperiō*, 4. (212)
opinion, *opīniō, -iōnis*, F. (159)
opportunity, *facultās, -ātis*, F. (141)
oppose, *oppōnō*, 3. (191)
oration, *ōrātiō, -iōnis*, F. (159)
orator, *ōrātor, -ōris*, M. (166)
order, (demand), *imperium, -ī*, N. (33)
(command), *jūssus, -ūs*, M. (227)
(verb), *jubeō*, 2. (100)
imperō, 1. (79)
ornament, *ōrnāmentum, -ī*, N. (33)
other, (the), *alter, -era, -erum.* (263)
others, *aliī, -iae, -ia.* (262)
ought, *dēbeō*, 2, w. inf. (100)
or Pass. Periph. Conj. (401)
our, *noster, -tra, -trum.* (58)
out of, *ē*, (*ex*), w. abl.
out-cry, *clāmor, -ōris*, M. (168)
outside, *extrā*, w. acc.
over, (=on), *in*, w. abl.
(across), *trāns*, w. acc.
(beyond), *ultrā*, w. acc.

overtake, *adsequor*, 3. dep. (327.23)
owe, *dēbeō*, 2, w. dat. (100)

P

pace, *passus*, *-ūs*, M. (227)
pale, *pallidus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
pardon, *venia*, *-ae*, F. (17)
parent, *parēns*, *-entis*, C. (168)
part, *pars*, *partis*, F. (168)
pass by, *praetereō*. (359)
peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, F. (159)
peasant, *rūsticus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
people, *populus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
perceive, (learn), *percipiō*. 3. (243)
(feel), *sentiō*, 4, (212)
perform, (duty), *fungor*, 3. (abl.) (327.16)
perish, *pereō*, (359)
permit, *permittō*, 3. (191)
or *licet*, w. inf. (408)
persuade, *persuādeō*, 2, w. dat. (100)
phalanx, *phalanx*, *-angis*, F. (159)
philosopher, *philosophus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
pirate, *praedō*, *-ōnis*, M. (159)
Piso, *Pīsō*, *-ōnis*, M. (159)
pitch camp, *castra conlocō*, 1. (80)
place, (noun), *locus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
(set up), *conlocō*, 1. (80)
(put), *pōnō*, 3. (191)
place together, *conlocō*, 1. (80)
plain, *plānitiēs*, *-iēī*, F. (237)
plan, (noun), *cōnsilium*, *-ī*, N. (33)
(idea), *ratiō*, *-iōnis*, F. (159)
(verb), *cōgitō*, 1. (80)
pleasant, *jūcundus*, *-a*, *-um* (52)
please, *placeō*, 2, w. dat. (80)
pleased (to be), *placet*, 2, impers. (408)
pleasing, *grātus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
pleasure, *voluptās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
pledge, *fidēs*, *-eī*, F. (237)
ploughshare, *vōmis*, *-eris*, M. (141)
plunder, *dīripiō*. (243)
poem, *poēma*, *-atis*, N.
poet, *poeta*, *-ae*, M.
Pompey, *Pompējus*, *-jī*, M. (32)
populace, *populus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
port, *portus*, *-ūs*, M. (227)
power, *potestās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
(control), *imperium*, *-ī*, N. (33)
powerful, *potēns*, *-entis*. (182) (184)
praise, *laus*, *laudis*, F. (148)
(verb), *laudō*, 1. (80)
prayer, *prex*, *precis*, F. (159)
prefer, *mālō*, w. inf. (367)
prepare, *parō*, 1. (80)
present (to be), *adsum*. (376)
priest, *sacerdōs*, *-ōtis*, M. (148)
prison, *carcer*, *-eris*, M.
proceed, *prōgredior*, 3. dep. (326)
proconsul, *prōcōnsul*, *-ulis*, M.
procure, (get ready), *comparō*, 1. (80)
(secure), *pariō*, 3. (243)
produce, *efficiō*, 3. (243)
profess, *profiteor*, 2. dep. (327.12)
promise, *polliceor*, 2. dep. (327.11)

property, *bona, -ōrum,* N. pl. (33)
protect (to), *prohibeō,* w. abl. (100)
protect, *dēfendō,* 3. (191)
(watch), *tueor,* 2. dep. (326)
protection, *praesidium, -ī,* N. (33)
provide, *prōvideō,* 2. (100)
(furnish), *praebeō,* 2. (100)
province, *prōvincia, -ae,* F. (17)
prudent, *prūdens, -entis.* (182) (184)
punish, *pūniō,* 4. (212)
(avenge), *ulcīscor.* (327.24)
punishment, *poena, -ae,* F. (17)
pursue, *sequor,* 3. dep. (327.23)
put off, (=defer), *differō.* (349)
put to death, *necō,* 1. (80)
(violent), *interficiō,* 3. (243)

Q

queen, *rēgīna, -ae,* F. (17)
question, *quaerō,* 3. (191)
quick, *celer, -eris, -cre.* (178) (184)
quickly, *celeriter,* adv.
(unexpectedly), *citō,* adv.
(with speed), *cum celeritāte.*
quickness, *celeritās, -ātis,* F. (141)

R

race, *genus, -eris,* N. (150)
raise, *tollō.* (349)
rapid, (winged), *volūcer, -cris, -cre.* (178) (184)
(swift), *rapidus, -a, -um.* (52)
celer, -eris, -ere. (178) (184)
rapidly, *celeriter,* adv.
rather, *magis,* adv.
reach (arrive at), *perveniō ad,* w. acc. (212)
read, *legō,* 3. (191)
reason (for what reason), *quam ob rem.*
receive, *accipiō,* 3. (243)
recent, *recēns, -entis.* (182) (184)
recently, *nūper,* adv.
red, *ruber, -bra, -brum.* (58)
refresh, *recreō.* (80)
region, *regiō, -iōnis,* F. (159)
rejoice, *gaudeō,* 2. semi-dep. (329)
remain, *remaneō,* 2. (100)
(survive), *supersum.* (376)
remove, *removeō,* 2. (100)
report, *fāma, -ae,* F. (17)
(verb), *ēnūntiō,* 1. (80)
republic, *rēs publica.* (237)
request (to), *poscō,* 3. (190)
resound, *crepō,* 1. (80)
respond, *respondeō,* 2. (100)
response, *respōnsum, -ī,* N. (33)
rest, *quiēs, -iētis,* F. (141)
(verb),
retreat (to), *pedem referō.* (349)
return, (noun), *reditiō, -iōnis,* F. (159)
(to), *redeō,* (159); *revertor,* (327.22)
(something), *reddō,* 3. (190)
revenue, *vectīgal, -ālis,* N. (168)
review, (to), *lustrō,* 1. (79)
reward, *praemium, -ī,* N. (33)
(verb),
Rhine, *Rhēnus, -ī,* M.
rich, *dīves, -itis.* (182) (185)

right-hand, *dexter, -tera, -terum.* (55)
rise, *orior,* 3, (4), dep.(327.29)
river, *flūmen, -inis,* N. (159)
road, *via, -ae,* F. (17)
roadway, *via, -ae,* F. (17)
robber, *latrō, -ōnis,* M. (159)
Roman, (adj.), *Rōmānus, -a, -um.* (52)
(a R.), *Rōmānus, -ī,* M. (32)
Rome, *Rōma, -ae,* F. (17)
roof, *tēctum, -ī,* N. (33)
rope, *fūnis, -is,* M. (141)
rough, *asper, -era, -erum.* (55)
rouse, (stimulate), *excitō,* 1. (80)
(trouble), *agitō,* 1 (80)
(disturb), *commoveō,* 2. (100)
rout (to), *fugō,* 1. (80)
repellō, 3. (191)
rower, *rēmex, -igis,* M. (159)
ruin, *permiciēs, -iēī,* F. (237)
ruin, (to), *dēleō,* 2. (100)
perdō, 3. (191)
rule, *regō,* 3. (190)
ruler, *rēx, rēgis,* M. (157)
rumor, *rūmor, -ōris,* M. (168)

S

sad, *tristis, -e.* (180) (184)
safe, *tūtus, -a, -um* (52)
(unharmed), *incolumis, -e.* (180) (184)
safely, *tūtē,* adv.
safety, *salūs, -ūtis,* F. (150)
said, see **say.**
sail (to), *nāvigō,* 1. (79)
sailor, *nauta, -ae,* M. (61)
sake (for the sake of), *causā,* w. gen.
sake (for whose), *cūjus causā.*
sally, *ēruptiō, -iōnis,* F. (159)
say, *dīcō,* 3. (191)
scarcity, *inopia, -ae,* F. (17)
scholar, *discipulus, -ī,* M. (32)
scout, *explōrātor, -ōris,* M. (168)
scribe, *scrība, -ae,* M. (61)
sea, *mare, -is,* N. (166)
seat, *sēdēs, -is,* F. (141)
second, *secundus, -a, -um.* (52)
secure,=to effect, *cōnficiō,* 3. (243)
see, *videō,* 2. (100)
(perceive), *percipiō,* 3. (243)
seek, *petō,* 3. (191)
seize (to), *capiō,* 3. (242)
select, *dēligō,* 3. (191)
senate, *senātus, -ūs,* M. (227)
senator, *senātor, -ōris,* M. (168)
send, *mittō,* 3. (191)
servant, *minister, -trī,* M. (45)
serve, *serviō,* 4. w. dat. (212)
set out, *proficīscor,* (327.20)
set out for, *proficīscor ad,* w. acc.
severity, *sevēritās, -ātis,* F. (141)
share, *mūnus, -eris,* N. (150)
(verb), *partior,* 3, dep. (327.19)
sharp, *ācer, ācris, ācre.* (178)
she, *ea,* (see **is**). (312)
shepherd, *pastor, -ōris,* M. (168)
shield, *scūtum, -ī,* N. (33)
ship, *nāvis, -is,* F. (141)
shore, *lītus, -oris,* N. (150)
short, *brevis, -e.* (180) (184)
shoulder, *(h)umerus, -ī,* M. (32)
should, (see conditions). (448)

show, *ostendō*, 3. (191)
shut, *claudō*, 3. (191)
sick, *aeger*, *-gra*, *-grum*. (58)
side, *latus*, *-eris*, N. (148)
sight, *speciēs*, *-iēī*, F. (237)
signal, *sīgnum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
silent (to be), *taceō*, 2. (100)
silver, *argentum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
similar, *similis*, *-e*. (180) (184)
since, *cum*, w. subjv. (436)
or Abl. Absolute. (389)
six, *sex*. (335)
size, *māgnitūdō*, *-inis*, F. (159)
skiff, *linter*, *-tris*, F. (168)
skill, *ars*, *artis*, F. (168)
skilful, *perītus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
skilfully, *cum arte*.
slaughter, *caedēs*, *-is*, F. (141)
slave, *servus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
slave (to be a), *serviō*, 4. w. dat. (212)
slavery, *servitūs*, *-ūtis*, F. (150)
slay, *interficiō*, 3. (243)
slip (to), *lābor*, 1. dep. (326)
small, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
smoothness, *mollitiēs*, *-iēī*, F. (237)
snatch away, *ēripiō*, 3. (243)
snow, *nix*, *nivis*, F. (159)
so, (=thus), *ita*, *sīc*. adv.
so, (modifier), *tam*.
so great, *tantus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
so many, *tot*, *tam*, adv.
so that, *ut*, w. subjv. (426)
Socrates, *Sōcratēs*, *-is*, M. (141)
soldier, *mīles*, *-itis*, M. (139)
solitude, *sōlitūdō*, *-inis*, F. (159)
some, *quīdam*, (325); *nōnnūllī*, (262)
some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī*. (262)
someone, *aliquis*. (325)
son, *fīlius*, *-ī*, M. (32)
son-in-law, *gener*, *-erī*, M. (45)
soon, *mox*, adv. *citō*, adv.
sortie, *ēruptiō*, *-iōnis*, F. (159)
spare, *parcō*, 3, w. dat. (191)
speak, (say), *dīcō*, 3. (191)
(converse), *loquor*, (326)
speed, *celeritās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
spit (a), *verū*, *-ūs*, (223)
spring, *vēr*, *vēris*, N. (138.38)
spy, *speculātor*, *-ōris*, M. (168)
stand, *stō*, 1. (80)
standard-bearer, *sīgnifer*, *-erī*, (45)
state, *cīvitās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
stay, *remaneō*, 2. (100)
step, *passus*, *-ūs*, M. (227)
stern (of ship), *puppis*, *-is*, F. (141)
stone, *saxum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
storm, *tempestās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
(rain), *imber*, *-bris*, M. (168)
(verb), *oppūgnō*, 1. (80)
strength, *vīs*, *vīs*, F. (138.39)
strong, (healthy), *validus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
(firm), *fīrmus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
struggle, *certāmen*, *-inis*, N. (159)
study (to), *studeō*, 2. (100)
successfully, *fēlīciter*, adv.
such, *tālis*, *-e*. (180) (184)
such a, *tālis*, *-e*. (180) (184)
suffer, *patior*, 3, dep. (327.19)
suitable, *idōneus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
summer, *aestās*, *-ātis*, F. (140)

summit, *cacūmen, -inis,* N. (159)
sun, *sōl, sōlis,* M. (168)
supply, *cōpia, -ae,* F. (17)
surrender, (noun), *dēditiō, -iōnis* F. (159)
(verb), *dēdō,* 3. (191)
surround, *cingō,* 3. (191)
survive, *supersum* (376)
suspect, *suspīciō,* 3. (243)
swamp, *palūs, -ūdis,* F. (150)
swift, *vēlōx, -ōcis.* (182) (184)
(of wing) *volucer, -cris, -cre,* (178)
swiftly, *celeriter,* adv.
swiftness, *celeritās, -ātis,* F. (141)
sword, *gladius, -ī,* M. (32)

T

table, *mensa, -ae,* F. (17)
take, *capiō,* 3. (242)
(accept), *accipiō,* 3. (243)
take, (=lead), *dūcō,* 3. (191)
take (a walk), *ambulō,* 1. (80)
take away, (bear), *efferō.* (349)
(snatch), *dīripiō,* 3 (243)
take counsel (consult), *cōnsultō,* 1. (80)
take with, *capiō* and *cum,* w. abl.
tall, *altus, -a, -um,* (52)
task, *pensum, -ī,* N. (33)
teach, *doceō,* 2. (100)
tear down, *rescindō,* 3. (190
tear out (of), *ēripiō ex,* w. abl. 3. (243)
tell, *dīcō,* 3. (191)
tempest, *tempestās, -ātis,* F. (141)
temple, *templum, -ī,* N. (33)
ten, *decem.* (335)
tender, *tener, -era, -erum.* (55)
tent, Use *castrum, -ī,* N. (33)
tenth, *decimus, -a, -um.* (52)
terrify, *terreō,* 2. (100)
territory, *fīnis, -is,* M. (141)
than, *quam,* adv.
that, *iste,* (310) *ille,* (311) or *is* (312)
that, (yonder), *ille, -a, -ud* (311)
that, (of yours), *iste, -a, -ud* (310)
that, (conj.), omit and use inf. (362.4)
that, (after verb of doubt), *quīn,* (431)
that . . . . not, *ut,* w. subjv. (426)
their, gen. pl. of **is.** (312)
their own, *suus, -a, -um.* (293)
them, acc. of **is.** (312)
themselves, (intensive), *ipse* (303)
(reflexive), *suī.* (301)
there (to be there), *adsum.* (376)
there are, *sunt.* (65)
these, plur. of **this.**
they, Usually omitted.
or use plur. of **is.** (312)
thing, *rēs, -eī,* F. (237)
things, (affairs), *rēs, reī,* F. (237)
or neuter form of adj.
think, *putō,* 1. (80)
(consider), *exīstimō,* 1. (80)
third, *tertius, -a, -um.* (52)
thirty, *trīgintā.* (335)
this, *hīc, haec, hoc.* (305)
this one, same as **this.**

those, plural of this.
thousand, *mille*. (339)
thy, *tuus*, *-a*, *-um*. (293)
three, *trēs*, *tria*. (336)
through, *per*, w. abl.
or Use abl. of means.
tiger, *tīgris*, *-is*, C. (141)
timber, *trabs*, *-bis*, F. (168)
time, *tempus*, *-oris*, N. (150)
tired, *defessus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
tired out, same as **tired**.
to, *in* or *ad*, w. acc.
today, *hodie*, adv.
toil, *labōrō*, 1. (80)
tomorrow, *crās*, adv.
tonight=this night.
too (wide), Use comparative.
top, (of house), *culmen*, *-inis*, N. (159)
(trees, etc.), *cacūmen*, *-inis*, N. (159)
torch, *fax*, *facis*, F. (159)
toward, *ad* or *adversus*, w. acc.
tower, *turris*, *-is*, F. (141)
town, *oppidum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
townsman, *oppidanus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
train (to), *exerceō*, 2. (100)
treachery, *dolus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
treat, *agō*, 3. (191)
treaty, *foedus*, *-eris*, N. (150)
tree, *arbor*, *-oris*, F. (168)
tribe, *gēns*, *gentis*, F. (168)
(race), *genus*, *-eris*, N. (150)
tributary, *vectīgal*, *-ālis*, N. (168)
truce, *foedus*, *-eris*, N. (150)
true, *vērus*, *-a*, *-um*, (52)
trumpet, *tuba*, *-ae*, F. (17)
trunk, *stirps*, *-pis*, C. (168)
trust, *cōnfīdō*, 3. semi-dep. (329)
try, *cōnor*, 1. dep. (327.3)
tumult, *tumultus*, *-ūs*, M. (227)
turn, *revertō*, 3. (191)
twenty, *vīgintī*. (335)
two, *duo*, *-ae*, *-o*, (336)
two hundred, *ducentī*, *-ae*, *-a*. (335)
two thousand, *duo mīlia*. (335)

U

under, *sub*, w. abl. or acc. (73)
undertake, *suscipiō*, 3. (243)
unharmed, *incolumis*, *-e*. (180) (184)
union, *conjūrātiō*, *-iōnis*, F. (159)
unknown, *incōgnitus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
unless, *sī . . . nōn*. (448)
until, (with a noun), gen. or abl. w. *tenus*.
unwilling, (to be), *nōlō*, w. inf. (367)
us, see **we**.
use, *ūsus*, *-ūs*, M. (227)
(verb), *ūtor*, 3, dep. (abl.) (327.25)
useful, *ūtilis*, *-e*, (180) (184)
useless for, *inutilis* w. dat.
or *inutilis ad*, w. acc.

V

valley, *vallis*, *-is*, F. (141)
valor, *virtūs*, *-ūtis*, F. (148)
very, use superl. of adj. or adv.
victor, *victor*, *-ōris*, M. (168)
victorious, *victor*, *-ōris* (adj.) (182)
victory, *victōria*, *-ae*, F. (17)

village, *vīcus*, -ī, M. (32)
virtue, *virtūs*, *-ūtis*, F. (148)
voice, *vōx*, *vōcis*, F. (159)

W

wage war, *bellum gerō*, 3. (191)
wagon, *carrus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
wait, *maneō*, 2. (100)
(for), *expectō*, 1. (80)
walk, *ambulō*, 1. (80)
wall, *mūrus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
(rampart), *vāllum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
wander, *vagor*, 1. (327.8)
war, *bellum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
war-chariot, *esseda*, *-ae*, F. (17)
warm, *moneō*, 2. (99)
was, see **to be.**
watch, (look at), *spectō*, 1. (80)
(protect), *tueor*, (326)
water, *aqua*, *-ae*, F. (17)
way, (road), *via*, *-ae*, F. (17)
(journey), *iter*, N. (138.18)
we, *nōs*. (287)
weak, *invalidus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
weapon, *tēlum*, *-ī*, N. (33)
weary, (it w.), *taedet*, impers. (408)
wealth, *opes*, *-ium*, F. pl. (168)
weep, *fleō*, 2. (100)
well, *bene*, adv.
well-known, *clārus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
what, neuter of **who.**
wheel,
when, *cum*, w. subjv.
(or Abl. Absolute.)
whence, *unde*.
whether or not, *utrum . . . necne*. (443)
whether or, *utrum . . an* (443)
which, (rel.), neuter of **quī.** (317)
which? (interr.), neuter of **quis.** (321)
which (of two), *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*. (263)
who, (rel.), *quī*. (317)
who? (interr.), *quis*. (321)
whole, *tōtus*, *-a*, *-um*. (262)
whom (rel.) acc of **quī.** (317)
whom? (interr.) acc of **quis.** (321)
whose (rel.), gen. of **quī.** (317)
whose? (interr.) gen of **quis.** (321)
why? *cūr*, adv.
why? *quam ob rem*, w. subjv. (443)
wicked, *improbus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
wickedness, *scelus*, *-eris*, N. (150)
wide, *lātus*, *-a*, *-um*. (52)
width, *lātitūdō*, *-inis*, F. (159)
wife, *uxor*, *-ōris*, F. (168)
will, *nūmen*, *-inis*, N. (159)
willing, (be), *volō*, w. inf. (367)
willingness, *voluntās*, *-ātis*, F. (141)
win (battle), *victōriam reportō*.
wind, *ventus*, *-ī*, M. (32)
wing, (of bird), *āla*, *-ae*, F. (17)
(of army), *cornū*, *-ūs*, N. (228)
winter, *hiems*, *-emis*, F. (168)
wisdom, *sapientia*, *-ae*, F. (17)
wise, *sapiens*, *-entis*, (182) (184)
wisely, *sapienter*, adv.
with, *cum*, w. abl.

with impunity, *impūne*, adv.
with you, *tēcum, vōbīscum.* (289)
within, *intrā*, w. acc.
(time), Use acc.
within the, *in*, w. abl.
without, *sine*, w. abl.
woman, *fēmina, -ae*, F. (17)
mulier, -eris, F. (168)
wont, *soleō*, 2. semi-dep. (329)
wood, *māteria, -ae*, F. (17)
woods, *silvae, -ārum*, F. (17)
woody, *silvester, -tris, -tre.* (178) (184)
word, *verbum, -ī*, N. (33)
work, (result), *opus, -eris*, N. (150)
(toil), *labor, -ōris*, M. (168)
(verb), *labōrō*, 1. (80)
world, *mundus, -ī*, M. (32)
worthy, *dīgnus, -a, -um.* (52)
would (see conditions). (448)
would that, *utinam*, w. subjv. (453)
wound, (noun), *vulnus, -eris*, N. (150)
(verb), *vulnerō*, 1. (80)
wounded, *vulnerātus, -a, -um.* (52)
wretched, *miser, -era, -erum.* (55)
write, *scrībō*, 3. (191)
write up, *cōnficiō*, 3. (243)
writer, *scrīptor, -ōris*, M. (168)

Y

year, *annus, -ī*, M. (32)
yesterday, *herī*, adv.
you, (sing.) *tū;* (plur.) *vōs.* (287)
your, (=thy) *tuus, -a, -um.* (293)
(=your), *vester, -tra, -trum.* (295)
youth, *adulēscēns, -entis*, M (168)

INDEX.

(Numbers Refer to Sections.)

A

a, indefinite article, 21.
â ab with ablative of agent, 78.23.
ā-declension of nouns, 14, 15, 16, 17, 61.
â-verb, 79.
ablative case, 13.
  accompaniment, 78:28.
  absolute, 388.
  after a comparative, 78:24.
  agent, 78:23.
  cause, 78:27.
  degree of difference, 78:29.
  instrument, 78:26.
  manner, 78:25.
  means, 78:26
  place where, 78:32.
  place from which, 78:22, 23.
  separation, 78:22.
  specification, 78:30.
  time when, 78:31.
  used with *utor*, *fruor*, etc., 78:37.
ablative absolute, 388, 389
absum, takes *ab* with abl., 377.
-âbus (dat. and abl. of first declen.), Pg. 8, foot-note.
accent, 10.
  words having an enclitic, 10:4.
accusative case, 13.
  cognate, 78:18.
  extent of time or space, 78:21.
  in indirect discourse, 363 rule.
  object of a verb, 78:17.
  place to which, 78:33.
  predicate, 78:19.
  subject of an infinitive, 78:20.
âcer, declension, 178.
  comparison, 270.
  adjectives like *ācer*, 184.
active periphrastic conj., 399, 400, 401
adjectives, agreement with nouns, 78:34.
  comparison, English Pg. II, Latin, Pg. 134.
  declension, first and second, 52, 55, 58.
  declension, third, Pg. 90.
  declension of comparatives, 273.
  definition, Pg. 2.
  interrogative adjectives, 322, 325.
  irregular, 261, 262.
  irregular comparison, 272.
  one, two and three terminations, 179, 181, 183.
  possessive adjectives, 292, 293, 294.
    distinction between *suus* and *ējus*, 294.
  stems, *i*, 185.
    consonant, 185.
    mixed, 185.
  with dative, 78:14.
adverbs, comparison, English Pg. IV. Latin, 282.
  definition, Pg. IV.
  formation, 278.
  in *e*, 280; *iter*, 281; *ō*, 279; *um*, 280.
aestâs, declension, 139.
agent, *ā* or *ab* with abl., 78:23.
  with the gerundive, 78:11.
ager, declension, 143.
agreement, of adjectives, 78:34.
  appositives, 78:2.
  predicate nouns, 78:3.
  relative pronouns, 78:36.
aliquis, 325.
alius, declension, 202.
alphabet, 1.
alter, declension, 204
amâns, declension, 184.

amō, conjugation, 79.
antepenult, definition, 10.
when accented, 10.
appeals, 443.
apposition, 78:2
ar-nouns of third declension, 168.
ariēs, declension, 139.
article, none in Latin, 21.
artus, dat. and abl. plur. *-ubus*, 229.
ās-nouns of third declension, 141.
audax, adjectives like, 184.
comparison, 269.
declension, 182.
audiō, conjugation, 211.

B

base, 16.
bellum, declension, 33.
bonus, comparison, 272.
declension, 52.
bōs, declension, 138:3.

C

calcar, declension, 166.
canis, genitive plural *um*, 130.
capiō, conjugation, 242.
caput, declension, 148.
cardinals, declension, 336, 338, 339.
definition, 335
indeclinable, 337.
table of, 335.
case of rel. pronouns, 78:36.
case endings, first declension, 17.
second declension, 32, 33, 42, 43.
third declension, 126.
fourth declension, 227, 228.
fifth declension, 236.
cases, names of Latin, 13.
meanings, 17.
causal clauses, with *cum*, 436.
cause, ablative, 78:27.
characteristic vowels of the four conjugations, Pg. 40, 41.
classes of nouns (third declen.), 127.
clause, definition, Pg. V.
purpose, 426.
result, 426.
relative of purpose, 426.
cum (when, because, although), 436.
cohors, declension, 166.
comparative, declension, 273.
plūs, declension, Pg. 135.
with ablative, 78:24.
without *quam*, 78:24.
comparison of adjectives, Pg. 134.
English, Pg. II, Latin, 268.
irregular, 272.
six adjectives in *-lis*, 271.
adverbs, 269.
complement of verb, 362:3.
compound verbs with dative, 78:12.
conditional sentences, 448.
simple conditions, 448a.
doubtful conditions, 448b.
contrary to fact, 448c, d.
conjugation, definition, Pg. V.
conjunction, definition, Pg. V.
consonant stems, 134, 135, 136.
consonants, 5.
pronunciation, 6.
contraction of genitive of nouns in *-ium* and *-ius*, Pg. 14 foot-note.
cōnsul, declension, 166.
cornū, declension, 228.
corpus, declension, 148.
cum, preposition with ablative, 72.
with pronouns, 289.
cum, conjunction with subj., 436.
causal, concession, temporal, 436.

D

dative case, 13.
agent, 78:11.
indirect object, 78:9.
possessor, 78:10.
service, 78:13.
with adjectives, 78:14.
with compound verbs, 78:12.
with verbs meaning *to benefit*, *to please*, *to believe*, etc., 78:16.
declension, definition, Pg. V.
first, 17.
second, 32, 33.
third, 139, 148, 157, 166.
fourth, 227, 228.
fifth, 236.
degree of difference, ablative, 78:29.
demonstrative adjectives, 305, 310, 311, 312.
pronouns, 305, 310, 311, 312.
See also *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, *is*; *idem*, *ipse*.

deponent verbs, conjugation, 326.
list and principal parts, 327.
descriptive genitive, 78:6.
diēs, declension, 236.
gender, 235.
diphthongs, 5.
pronunciation, 5, 6.
quantity, 7.
direct statements, 363.
dīves, declension, 185.
do-nouns of third declension, 159.
domī, locative, 78:33.
domō, place from which, 78:33. 230.
domum, place to which, 78:33. 230.
domus, declension, 230.
gender, Pg. 116, foot-note.
use, 78:33.
duo, declension, 336.
dux, declension, 157.

E

e-nouns of third declension, 168.
ē-stems, nouns, 234.
ē-verbs, conjugation, 99.
list and principal parts, 100.
e-verbs, conjugation, 190.
list and principal parts, 191.
ego, declension, 287.
used only for emphasis, 288.
ējus, compared with *suus*, 294.
en-nouns of third declension, 159.
enclitics, Pg. 4 foot-note.
endings, see *case-endings*.
eō, conjugation, 355.
compounds, 359, 359a.
er-nouns of second declension, 42, 43.
e (dropped or retained), 44
er-nouns of third declension, 168.
es-nouns of third declension, 141.
ex-nouns of third declension, 159.
extent of time or space, 78:21.

F

fearing, verbs of, 431.
feminine nouns, fourth declension, Pg. 116, foot-note.
ferō, conjugation, 346.
compounds, 349.
list and principal parts, 349.
fīlia, dative and abl. plur., Pg. 8, foot-note.
fīō, conjugation, 356.
fourth-declension nouns, fem., Pg. 116, foot-note.
fruor, with ablative, 78:37.
fungor, with ablative, 78:37.
future active participle, used in the active periphrastic conjugation, 399.

G

gaudeo, conjugation, 329.
gender, English and Latin, Pg. 1.
general rules for, 12.
first declension, 15; exceptions, 61.
second declension, 31; exceptions, Pg. 12, foot-note.
third declension, 123, 124, 125.
fourth declension, 226.
fifth declension, 235.
genitive case, 13.
limiting, 78:33.
material, 78:6.
partitive, 78:7.
possession, 78:10
source, 78:6.
with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, 78:7.
gerund, use, 393.
verbal noun, 392.
gerundive, verbal adjective, 392.
agent in the dative case, 78:11.
agreement, 393.
use, 393.
used with *ad* to express purpose, Pg. 184, foot-note.
used with *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation, 401.
with *sum* implies *necessity, duty, obligation*, 403.
go-nouns of third declension, 159

H

hīc, declension, 305.
uses, 306, 313, 313:5.
hiems, declension, 166.
historical tenses, 424.
homō, declension, 138:17.
hortor, conjugation, 326.
hostis, declension, 139.

I

i-stems, nouns, 128, 129, 130.
I-verbs, conjugation, 211.
list and principal parts, 212.
īdem, declension, 312, note.
Idūs, gender, Pg. 116, foot-note.
iēns, declension, see **amāns,** 384.
ille, declension, 311.
uses, 313, 313:5.
impersonal use of verbs, 410.
impersonal verb, definition, 407.
list and principal parts, 408.
in, with accusative and ablative, 73.
indefinite adjectives and pronouns, 325.
indirect discourse, 363.
indirect object, 78:9.
indirect questions, 443.
infinitive, definition, Pg. III.
as subject, 362:1.
as object, 362:2.
complementary, 362:3.
indirect discourse, 362:4.
not used to express purpose, 363, note.
takes subject accusative, 363 rule.
tenses (indirect discourse), 363 rule.
inflection, definition, Pg. V.
adjectives, 52, 55, 58, 178, 180, 182.
nouns, 17, 32, 33, 139, 148, 157, 166, 227, 228, 236.
verbs, 79, 99, 190, 211, 242.
instrument, ablative, 78:26.
īnsum, takes *in* with abl., 377.
interjection, definition, Pg. V.
interrogative adjectives, 322, 325.
pronouns, 321, 325.
intersum, takes *inter* with accu., 377.
intransitive verbs, definition, Pg. III.
take dative case, 410.
used impersonally, 410.
iō-verbs, third conjugation, 242.
list and principal parts, 243.
ipse, declension, 303.
compared with *suī* 304.
for emphasis, 304.
ir-nouns, third declension, 141.
irregular adjectives, 261.
comparison of adjectives, 272.
comparison of adverbs, 283.
verbs:—*eō*, 355; *ferō*, 346, *fīō*, 356; *possum*, 372; *prōsum*, 373; *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, 367.
is, declension, 312.
compared with *hīc* and *ille*, 313.
use, 313:4.
used in place of third personal, 287.
is-nouns, third declension, 141.
iste, declension, 310.
use, 313.
iter, declension, 138:18.

J

judex; declension, 157.
Juppiter, declension, 138:19.
jus, declension, 148.
juvenis, gen. pur. **um,** 130.

L

l-nouns, third declension, 168.
lapis, declension, 139.
latus, declension, 148.
laus, declension, 148.
legio, declension, 157.
levis, declension, 180.
adjectives like *levis*, 184.
locative case, 78:33.
loquor, conjugation, 326.

M

māgnus, comparison, 272.
mālō, conjugation, 367.
malus, comparison, 272.
manner, *cum* with abl., 78:25.
manus, gender, Pg. 116, foot-note.
mare, declension, 166.
masculine, rule of gender, 12:1 and 3.
means, ablative case, 78:26.
meus, declension, 29:3.
mīles, declension, 139.
mīlle, declension, 339.
use, 339.
miser, declension, 55.
miseret, rule, 409.
mixed-stems, 131, 132, 133
moneō, conjugation, 99.
moods, defined, Pg. III.
mōs, declension, 148.
mulier, declension, 166.
multitūdō, declension, 157.
multus, comparison, 272
mute followed by a liquid, 10, note.

N

nē, after verbs of fear, 431.
as negative in commands and appeals, 443.
in negative clauses of purpose, 420.
-ne, enclitic, Pg. 4, foot-note
neuter, declension, 263.
niger, declension, 58.
nōlō, conjugation, 367.
nomen, declension, 157.
nominative case, 13.
subject of finite verb, 78:1.
predicate nominative, 78:3.
expressed only for emphasis in pronouns, 288.
nōs, declension, 287.
noster, declension, 295.
nouns, definition, Pg. I.
gender, 12.
first declension, 14, 15, 16, 17, 61.
second declension, 30, 31, 32, 33, 42, 43, 44.
third declension, 122.
fourth declension, 226.
fifth declension, 235.
noun in predicate, 78:3.
rules of gender, 12.
ns-nouns, third declension, 168.
nūbēs, declension, 130.
nūllus, declension, 262.
number, sing. and plur., Pg. IV, also 13.
numerals, table of, 335.

O

o-nouns, third declension, 159.
o-stems, (o-declension), 30, 31, 32, 33, 42, 43, 44.
object, direct, 78:17.
indirect, 78:9.
or-nouns, third declension, 168.
Orātiō Recta, 363.
Oblīqua, 363.
orator, declension, 166.
order of words in a Latin sentence, Pg. 6
ordinals, definition, 335.
table, 335.
declension, 340.
os-nouns, third declension, 150.

P

paenitet, rule, 400.
parts of speech, Pg. I.
participles, agreement, 383.
declension, 384.
future with *sum* forming the periphrastic conjugation, 400.
tenses, rel. to main verb, 383.
time denoted by, 383.
partitive genitive, 78:7.
parvus, comparison, 272.
passive voice, Pg IV.
agent, *a* or *ab* with abl., 78:23.
pater, declension, 166.
penult, 10.
accentuation, 10 and note.
perfect tense compared with the imperfect, Pg. 40, note.
periphrastic conjugations, 306.
synopsis, 400.
person, first, second, third, defined, Pg. IV.
personal pronouns, see pronouns.
pes, declension, 139.
phrase, defined, Pg. V.
place, where, 78:32; whither, 78:33; whence, 78:22; with names of towns, 78:33.
plūs, declension, Pg. 135.
portus, dat. and abl. in -ubus, 229.
possessive adjectives, see adjectives.
possessor, genitive, 78:5.
dative with sum, 78:10.
possum, how formed, 372, foot-note.
conjugation, 372.
potior, conjugation, 376.
takes the ablative, 87:37.
predicate nominative, 78:3.
prepositions, definition, Pg. V.
with accusative, 71.
with ablative, 72.
with accusative or ablative, 73.
principal parts of verbs, Pg. 40.
list and principal parts, 80, 109, 101, 212 243.
principal tenses, 424.
pronouns, definition, Pg. II.
kinds, Pg. II.
demonstrative, 305.
indefinite, 325

intensive, 303.
interrogative, 321.
personal, 287.
possessive, see adjectives.
reflexive, 301, 302.
relative, 317; agreement, 78:37.
aliquis, 325.
ego, nōs, 287.
hic, 305.
idem, 312, note.
ille, 311.
ipse, 303.
is, 312.
iste, 310.
qui, 317.
quidam, 325.
quivis, 325.
quis, 321.
quisquam, 325.
quisque, 325.
suī, 301.
tu, vos, 287.
pronunciation, Roman method, 6.
prōsum, how formed, 373, foot-note.
conjugation, 373.
pudet, rule, 409.
puer, declension, 42.
pugna, declension, 42.
pulvis, declension, 139.
purpose clauses, ut and nē with the subjunctive, 426
ad with the gerund or gerundive, Pg. 184, foot-note.
dative of service, 78:13.
relative pronoun with subj., 426.
supine in *-um*, 417.
not translated by the infinitive, 363, note.

Q

quam, after a comparative, 78:24.
quantity, of vowels and diphthongs, 7.
-que, enclitic, Pg. 4, foot-note.
questions, indirect, 443.
quī, declension, 317. See also Pg. 196, foot-note.
quīdam, 325.
quis, declension, 321.
after *nē* or *sī*, Pg. 196, foot-note.
quisquam, 325.
quisque, 325.
quivis, 325.

R

reflexive pronouns, see pronouns.
regō, conjugation, 190.
relative pronouns, 317.
in clauses of purpose, 426.
result, *ut* or *ut nōn* with the subjunctive, 426.
rēx, declension, 157.
Roman method of pronunciation, 6.
rs-nouns, third declension, 168.
rūrī, locative, 78:33.
rūs, omits the preposition, 78:33.

S

s-nouns, third declension, 168.
sacredos, declension, 148.
sē, compared with *ipse*, 304.
semi-deponent verbs, 328, 329.
senātus, declension, 227.
senex, declension, 138:34.
separation use ablative, 78:22.
sequence of tenses, 424.
sequor, principal parts, 327:23.
sermo, declension, 157.
service, dative of, 78:13.
servus, declension, 32.
solus, declension, 262.
space, extent of, 78:21.
specification, ablative, 78:30.
stem, first-declension nouns, 14.
second-declension nouns, 30.
third-declension nouns 127, 128, 131, 134.
fourth-declension nouns, 225.
fifth-declension nouns, 234.
i-stems, 127.
mixed, 127.
consonant, 127.
adjectives, third declension, 185.
subject, agrees with verb, 78:35.
of a finite verb, 78:1.
of an infinitive, 78:20.
subjunctive mood, 425.
after verbs of doubt, 431.
after verbs of fearing, 431.
appeals, 443.
commands, 443.
conditions, 448.
cum causal, concessive, temporal 436.

hortatory, 443.
how translated, 423.
indirect questions, 443.
purpose, 426.
relative clauses of purpose, 426.
result, 426.
sequence of tenses, 424.
suī, declension, 301.
compared with *ipse*, 304.
sum, conjugation, 65.
list of compounds, 376.
compounds take dative, 377.
supine, definition, 415
in *-ū*, 418.
in *-um*, 417.
not declined, 416.
suus, declined, 293.
compared with *ejus*, 294.
syllables, number of, 9.
division of, 9.
compound words, 10.
names, 10.
when long, 10, note.

T

taedet, rule, 409.
temporal clauses, *cum* w. subjv., 436.
tense, explained, Pg. III.
tenses, difference between imperfect and perfect, Pg. 40, note.
infinitive in indirect discourse, 363, rule.
present system, Pg. 41.
perfect system, Pg. 41.
primary, 424.
secondary, 424.
sequence, 424.
sign of imperfect, Pg. 41.
sign of future, Pg. 41.
terminations, first declension, 17.
second declension, 32, 33.
third declension, 126.
fourth declension, 227, 228.
fifth declension, 236.
the, (definite article), omitted, 21.
third declension, changes to genitive case, 137.
classes of nouns, 127.
time, when or within which, 78:31.
extent, 78:21.
tōtus, declension, 202.
towns, rule, 78:33.
transitive verb, Pg. III.
trēs, declension, 330.
tū, declension, 287.
tueor, conjugation, 326.
tuus declension, 293.

U

u-stems, 225.
-ubus, dat. and abl. plur., 220.
ullus, declension, 262.
ultima, defined, 10.
unus, declension, 262.
ur-nouns, third declension, 168
us-nouns, third declension, 150.
ut-nouns, third declension, 150.
ut, conjunction:
after verbs of fearing, 451.
purpose, 426.
result, 426.
uter, declension, 264.
uterque, declension, 264.
utor, principal parts, 327:25.
takes the abl., 78:37.

V

verbs, definition, Pg. II.
kinds, Pg. II, III.
agree with subject, 78:35.
conjugations, Pg. 40
first conjugation, 79 —list of verbs, 80.
second conjugation, 99. list of verbs, 100.
third conjugation, 190. list of verbs, 191.
third (io) conjugation, 242. list of verbs, 243.
fourth conjugation, 211. list of verbs, 212.
deponent, 326,—list, 327.
forgetting, 78:7.
impersonal, 407, 410, —list, 408.
irregular see eō, fīō, etc.
object, 78:17.
periphrastic conjugations, 399, 400, 401.
personal endings, Pg. 41.

principal parts, Pg. 40.
also sections 80, 100, 191, 212, 243.
remembering, take genitive, 78:7.
semi-deponent, 328.
subject, 78:1.
vescor, takes the ablative case, 78:37.
vester, declension, 295
vetus, declension, 185.
comparison, 272.
virgo, declension, 157.
virtūs, declension, 148.
vīs, declension, 138:39.
vocative case, 13.
use, 78:4.
us-nouns, second declension, 32.
voices, defined, Pg. IV.
volō, conjugation, 367.
vōs, declension, 287.
vowels, 2;
pronunciation, 6.
quantity, 7; short, 2, 3,; long, 2, 3.

OCT 20 1903

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 036 408 9